



1875

C. K. OGDEN



Harold H. Norman.

Bangalore

Jan 1894

---



88000,

# THE SYNTAX AND IDIOMS OF HINDUSTANI,

OR,

PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN TRANSLATION,  
WITH NOTES AND  
DIRECTIONS AND VOCABULARIES.

BY

## M. KEMPSON, M.A.,

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF GONVILLE AND CAIUS, CAMBRIDGE;  
DIRECTOR OF PUBLIC INSTRUCTION, N.W. PROVINCES OF INDIA, 1862-1878;  
FELLOW OF THE CALCUTTA UNIVERSITY;  
SOMETIME PROFESSOR OF HINDUSTANI AT THE ROYAL STAFF COLLEGE.

---

*Scribendi recte sapere est et principium et fons.*—Hor.

---

LONDON:  
W. H. ALLEN & CO., 13 WATERLOO PLACE. S.W.  
PUBLISHERS TO THE INDIA OFFICE.

1890.

(All Rights reserved.)

LONDON :  
PRINTED BY W. H. ALLEN AND CO.  
13 WATERLOO PLACE.

## P R E F A C E .

---

THIS work is intended to meet the want of an Introductory Treatise for beginners, in a form suited to the previous training of educated Englishmen, and, in accord with the views expressed in a recent Manifesto of the Imperial Institute, aims at the promotion of a scholarly and appreciative cultivation of the most important of the Indian Vernaculars *ab initio*.

The method adopted is that of the best books of the kind now used in our Public Schools, and may be shortly described as a compendious course of Syntax and Idioms, with *Model Exercises* in application step by step. Each Exercise in its turn explains and illustrates some new point or points of *Usage*, till the subject is exhausted, and a fairly complete view of the quality and resources of the language placed before the student. The application of the ordinary principles of clause-analysis to the diction of Hindustani, which occupies the Second Part of the Exercises, is indispensable to the formation of a correct and idiomatic style, whether in speaking or writing.

The *Model Sentences* are taken from the best modern writers, chiefly from the works of Maulavi Nazîr Ahmed, the author of the *Taubat* (see note on p. 127 below), and

from the Letters of the late Mirza Nausha (Galib), both Dehli men and of undisputed authority in native literary circles. Use has also been made of the generally excellent Urdû version of part of the *Alf-Laila*, which was published in Lucknow a few years before the Annexation.

Thus, in addition to their more immediate function, the Hindustani Sentences serve as a Delectus or Introductory Reader. To give them in lithograph in the written character, *which alone is of practical value*, was unfortunately an impossible undertaking in this country; but they may be published separately in this form hereafter if the demand arises.

Part III. contains a series of Lessons in Translation, which are drawn up on the principle that the simplest and shortest way to teach this kind of work is to show how it is done; and as there is no part of his preparatory course in which the learner needs more and usually receives less help, no apology is made for the fulness of the instructions.

M. K.

Uley, 1889.

---

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

### EXERCISE I.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB.

Introductory Suggestions.—Gender.—Tense Nomenclature.

Paras. 1-7, pp. 1-6

### EXERCISE II.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Order of the Words.—Particles of Inference and Emphasis.

Paras. 8-13, pp. 6-10

### EXERCISE III.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Plural of Nouns in *šh* or *žh*.—Persian and Arabic Plurals.—

Order of the Persons.—Plurality of Subjects.

Paras. 14-21, pp. 10-13

### EXERCISE IV.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Nouns in the Construct State.—*Izâfat* and its Signs and Uses.

Paras. 22-30, pp. 14-19

### EXERCISE V.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Postpositional Verbals.—Mode of expressing 'have.'—Apposition

tion . . . . . Paras. 31-37, pp. 19-23

### EXERCISE VI.—THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB IN COMPOUND FORM.

The Verbs *ânâ*, *jânâ*, *rahnâ*.—*Ko*, the Sign of the Remote Object.—Usage of the Reflexive Pronoun *apnâ*

Paras. 38-47, pp. 23-27

### EXERCISE VII.—USAGES OF THE VERBAL NOUN INFINITIVE OR GERUND IN *nâ*; NOUN OF AGENCY.

The Intransitives *parnâ*, *mîlnâ*, *lagnâ*.—The Locative Affixes *men*, *par*, *tak* . . . . . Paras. 48-54, pp. 28-33

### EXERCISE VIII.—USAGES OF THE GERUND—*continued*.

The Separative Affix *se*.—Comparison of Adjectives.—The Affix *sâ* of Similitude or Comparison.

Paras. 55-63, pp. 33-37

**EXERCISE IX.—TRANSITIVE VERBS.**

The Sign of the Near Object, *ko*.—The Past Conjunctive Participle.—The Aorist Tense . . . Paras. **64-71**, pp. 38-42

**EXERCISE X.—CAUSAL VERBS.**

Intensive, Potential, and Completive Compound Verbs.—Inceptive, Acquisitive and Permissive Verbal Compounds.  
Paras. **72-79**, pp. 43-47

**EXERCISE XI.—TRANSITIVE VERBS (COMPLETED ACTION).**

*Ne*, the Sign of the Agent.—Formation of the Past or Perfect Participle . . . . Paras. **80-87**, pp. 47-52

**EXERCISE XII.—THE VERB *dená* IN COMBINATION WITH CAUSAL VERBALS IN *í*, ETC.**

Forms of the Imperative.—The Verbal *cháhi'e*.  
Paras. **88-94**, pp. 53-57

**EXERCISE XIII.—USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.**

(1) Substantival . . . . Paras. **95-100**, pp. 57-60

**EXERCISE XIV.—USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.**

(2) Adjectival . . . . Paras. **101-105**, pp. 61-64

**EXERCISE XV.—USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.**

(3) Adverbial . . . . Paras. **106-112**, pp. 64-68

**EXERCISE XVI.—USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.**

Supplementary . . . . Paras. **113-117**, pp. 68-72

**EXERCISE XVII.—THE PARTICIPLES IN COMBINATION WITH *jáná*.**

(1) Progressives. (2) Passives. Paras. **118-125**, pp. 72-76

**EXERCISE XVIII.—THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE IN COMBINATION WITH *karná* FORMS A CONTINUATIVE COMPOUND VERB—WITH *cháhná*, A DESIDERATIVE.**

Subsidiary Verbal Compounds with *jáná*, *dená*, etc.  
Paras. **126-133**, pp. 76-80

## PART II.—THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

**EXERCISE XIX.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.**(1) Relative . . . . Paras. **134-140**, pp. 81-85**EXERCISE XX.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(2) Predicative . . . . Paras. **141-146**, pp. 86-90**EXERCISE XXI.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Adverbial: viz. *a.* Temporal; *b.* Local; *c.* Modal.  
Paras. **147-153**, pp. 91-95**EXERCISE XXII.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Adverbial: viz. *d.* Final; *e.* Causal.  
Paras. **154-160**, pp. 95-98**EXERCISE XXIII.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Adverbial: viz. *f.* Conditional.  
Paras. **161-167**, pp. 99-102**EXERCISE XXIV.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Adverbial: viz. *f.* Conditional—*continued.*  
Paras. **168-174**, pp. 102-106**EXERCISE XXV.—SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Adverbial: viz. *f.* Conditional (*Concessional*).  
Paras. **175-179**, pp. 106-109**EXERCISE XXVI.—CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES.**(1) Appositive or Collateral. Paras. **180-185**, pp. 109-113**EXERCISE XXVII.—CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(2) Adjunctive . . . . Paras. **186-190**, pp. 113-116**EXERCISE XXVIII.—CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(3) Alternative . . . . Paras. **191-196**, pp. 116-120**EXERCISE XXIX.—CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—continued.**(4) Adversative. Paras. **197-201**, pp. 120-123

PART III.—SELECTED PASSAGES FOR  
TRANSLATION INTO HINDUSTANI.

---

<i>INTRODUCTORY REMARKS</i> . Paras. 1-6,	pp. 124-127
<i>Suggestions for Guidance</i> . . . Para. 7,	pp. 127-132
SECTION I.—FABLES AND APOLOGUES .	pp. 132-154
SECTION II.—EASY NARRATIVES FROM INDIAN HISTORY.	pp. 155-176
SECTION III.—MISCELLANEOUS PIECES .	pp. 177-203
SECTION IV.—H.M.'s PROCLAMATION (1858)	pp. 204-212

---

APPENDIX A.—ARABIC DERIVATIVES CURRENT IN HINDUSTANI . . . . .	p. 214
APPENDIX B.—TENSE-SYSTEM OF THE HINDUSTANI VERB. . . . .	p. 222
APPENDIX C.—ON TRANSLITERATION .	p. 224

---

VOCABULARIES . . . . .	p. 227-278
------------------------	------------

---



# EXERCISES IN HINDUSTANI.

---

D A N T

A Key to these Exercises, in the Roman character, will be published by the Author, to whom reference should be made.

... Hindi, Persian, and Arabic respectively, so that the words in which they occur reveal their own origin. In course of time, the student will find that the look of a word is a sufficient indication.

(2) A second step is the study of the forms and classes of Arabic verbals which have come down to Hindustani through Persian. A tabulation of these forms, with examples, provides a key not only to the spelling and vocalisation of a large and most important class of words, but to their meaning and interconnection, which is in-

**PART III.—SELECTED PASSAGES FOR  
TRANSLATION INTO HINDUSTANI.**

---

*INTRODUCTORY REMARKS* . Paras. **1-6**, pp. 124-127

*Suggestions for Guidance* . . . Para. **7**, pp. 127-132

**SECTION I.—FABLES AND APOLOGUES** . pp. 132-154

---

**VOCABULARIES** . . . . . p. 227-278

---

# EXERCISES IN HINDUSTANI.

---

## PART I. THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

---

### EXERCISE I.

#### THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB.

Introductory Suggestions.—Gender.—Tense Nomenclature.

1. (1) A first step to *scholarship* in Hindustani is ability to distinguish between the various constituents of the language. Certain letters and combinations of letters are peculiar to Hindi, Persian, and Arabic respectively, so that the words in which they occur reveal their own origin. In course of time, the student will find that the look of a word is a sufficient indication.

(2) A second step is the study of the forms and classes of Arabic verbals which have come down to Hindustani through Persian. A tabulation of these forms, with examples, provides a key not only to the spelling and vocalisation of a large and most important class of words, but to their meaning and interconnection, which is in-

valuable. See Appendix A for a specimen form of tabulation, in which the examples given are taken from the words used in these Exercises.

2. The following two summary rules for the determination of the conventional gender, or, as the French call it, the *sexe fictiv*, of things inanimate should be remembered.

*Rule I.*—Hindi nouns in \ and , are generally masculine; but Persian and Arabic nouns in \ and Persian nouns in , are generally feminine.

Nouns ending in ع are generally feminine, whether Hindi, Persian, or Arabic.

*Rule II.*—Nouns ending in a consonant are generally masculine, excepting chiefly—(1) Arabic verbals in ع servile, and Persian verbals in ش servile; *e.g.*, *musibat* ‘misfortune,’ *parwarish* ‘cherishing.’ (2) Arabic verbals of Form II.—تفعيل—in which ت and ع are both servile. (See App. A.) (3) Hindi and Persian verbal bases, when used as nouns; *e.g.*, *mâr* ‘beating,’ and *âmad* ‘advent.’

3. The tense-system of the Hindustani verb is set forth in Appendix B. In this the *designations* adopted by the native grammarians are combined with the *order* usually followed by English scholars, from Gilchrist upwards, except in one important particular. There are no Moods in the Hindustani verb, and, properly speaking, no Passive Voice. But of this more hereafter.

4. Translate the following sentences into English:—

[N.B. The Hindustani sentences are a key to the translation of the English sentences which follow them; and this plan holds good throughout Parts I. and II. of this work. Study (1) the meaning and construction of the words used; (2) *the way in which the thought is put in each example.*]

- (1) آپ کون ہیں (2) ارے تو کون ہی (3) وہ  
 کونسا مکان ہی (4) یہ کون کون آدمی ہیں (5) یہ  
 کیا بات ہی (6) یہ کیا ہوا (7) مزاج کیسا ہی  
 (8) ڈاک گھر کہاں ہی (9) دہلی کتنی دور ہی  
 (10) کتنا دام ہی (11) کی سوار حاضر ہوتے  
 ہیں (12) کھانا کب طیار ہوگا (13) وہ مگرا  
 کیوں تھا (14) یہ کیونکر معلوم ہی (15) آپ  
 یہاں کہاں

### 5. Notes.

(1) *Āp* 'self,' 3rd p. pl., like the German *Sie*, is to be translated here 'you.' This pronoun is nothing more than a courteous recognition of respectability, like our word 'Sir.'

(2) This question may be taken as addressed to a stranger of doubtful appearance. *Are* is a vocative particle, and is often used to attract the attention of a person at a distance; as *are Mohan!* or *Mohan re!* *Abe* is contemptuous, like our 'Sirrah!'

(3) *Kaunsa*, as compared with *kaun*, expects an answer in detail.

(4) *Yeh* and *woh* are plural as well as singular. The grammatical plurals, *ye* and *we*, are discarded in modern Hindustani. The repetition of *kaun* is an example of one of the commonest and most effective idioms of the language. The sense varies with the context. Here it is distributive, and the questioner asks, not who the men are as a whole, but individually. With this understanding, translate 'What men are these?'

As regards the transliteration of *yeh* and *woh*, see App. C.

(5) *Bāt* is a word of many uses, like the Latin *res*, which has been called 'a blank cheque, to be filled up from the context to the requisite amount of meaning.' The question here implies surprise or indignation, and corresponds to our 'What is the meaning of this?' or 'What is this I hear?'

(6) This question is something of the same nature as the foregoing—'What's the matter?' 'What's all this?' 'What has happened?' etc.

(7) A customary form of greeting, like our 'How do you do?' or 'How do?' with pronoun suppressed. *Āp kaise hain?* 'How are you?' or *Āp achchhe hain?* 'Are you well?' are often used. Take care to sound the doubled letter in the last phrase.

(8) *Dāk-ghar* or *dāk-khāna* 'post-house.' Observe in this example the different ways in which *h* is printed in *دک* and *دکان*, according as a vowel does or does not intervene between it and the consonant preceding.

(9) *Kitnī dūr*, lit. 'How much distance?' that is, 'How far?' So, too, *bart dūr* 'very far'; *thorī dūr* 'a little distance'; *dūr nahīn* 'not far'; *chandān dūr nahīn* 'not so very far.'

(10) *Dām*, the name of the smallest copper coin (native), used in the sense of 'price,' and appropriate to small purchases. *Mol* indicates the purchasing 'value,' and *qīmat*, the fixed 'price' of things in general. *Bahā* is 'value,' and *bhā'o* and *nirkh* the market 'rate of sale.'

(11) *Kai* is a form of *kyā*, used to mean 'how many?' *Hāzīr hotē hain* 'are in attendance,' or 'on duty.' See App. A, Form I. The participle *hotā* always refers to *status (hāl)*.

(12) *Tayyār*: the duplication of the middle radical in this Arabic verbal must be fully enunciated.

(13) *Thā* 'was,' at some particular time. If *hū'ā* had been used, the emphasis of the query would have rested on *magrā*.

(14) *Ma'lām hai* 'is known'; *ma'lām hotā hai* 'is in process of being known,' hence, 'seems to be.' See App. A, Form I. For the romanization of the letter 'ain, and the effect which this letter exercises on the adjacent vowel, see App. C.

(15) An idiomatic question which denotes surprise at a person's presence, like our 'How do you come to be here?' 'Who would have thought of seeing you here?' 'You here! and why?'

## 6. Translate into Hindustani:—

[N.B. The student will probably find it convenient to write out his version of the following sentences in the Roman character to begin with; but he must be extremely careful and consistent in the use of this vehicle, or bad spelling will be the inevitable result. Correct spelling in Hindustani is a matter of eye, not ear, to the European, and therefore the sooner and the oftener he uses the native character the better.]

The best way to form the hand is to watch a native scribe, and to copy from a good lithograph. Books used in native schools are the best for this purpose.]

- (1) Where is the telegraph-office? (2) How far off is the ferry? (3) What is the toll? (4) How much money is due? (5) When will breakfast be ready? (6) What book is this? (7) Who is this woman? (8) How did this mistake occur? (9) Why were you absent? (10) Why such delay? (11) Where were you? (12) What river is this? (13) What is the reason? (14) What sort of arrangement is this? (15) Who is the master-of-the-house?

### 7. Directions.

(1) 'Telegraph-office' is neatly expressed in Hindustani by *târ-ghar* 'wire-house.' See 4. 8.

(2) *Ghât* 'landing-place,' is the usual term for 'ferry'; *utâr* or *utrâ* 'the crossing,' is another common term, and these mean 'ferriage' as well.

(3) 'What' is here *kitnâ*, though *kyâ* may be used. *Mahsûl* is the official term for 'toll.' The breathing sound of the Arabic *h* must always be fully given. It is one of those letters which modify the adjacent short vowel. The effect here is a hardening of the *zabar*. See App. C.

(4) *Rûpaya* is 'money' in general, as well as a 'rupee.'

(5) The word used by Europeans for 'breakfast' is *hâzirî*, which lit. means 'attendance,' hence, a 'muster,' or 'gathering.'

(6) Use the pronoun of 4. 3.

(8) 'Occur,' 'happen,' 'come to pass,' etc., are sufficiently translated by the substantive verb.

(9) 'Absent' *gair-hâzir*, that is, 'not present,' lit. 'other than present.' Other privatives are *lâ* and *nâ*, used in Persian and Arabic words; and the Hindî *a* or *an* is occasionally met with.

In writing *the*, take care to use the form of the final letter shown in *hote*, 4. 11. This mode of distinguishing between *thî* and *the*, and all words of similar termination, is exceedingly useful, though

neglected by native scribes, who use whichever form best suits their idea of symmetry in relation to the adjoining letters, and to the linear space at their command.

(10) 'Such,' *itnf*, not *aist*, agreeing with *derf* or *der*. Omit the verb as in English. Let the interrogative stand last.

(14) The question is depreciatory. The Persian compound *bandobast* is an every-day word for 'arrangement.' *Intizâm* is 'order,' or 'administration'; and *tajwîz*, *tadbîr*, etc. are used for 'plan,' 'contrivance,' 'expedient,' etc.

## EXERCISE II.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued.*

Order of the Words.—Particles of Inference and Emphasis.

8. It will be noticed in the examples of the previous Exercise that the subject stands first, then the interrogative adverb, and then the verb. In the affirmative sentence adverbs of time, place, and manner generally precede the subject. As a rule, *Time*, in whatever way it is expressed, takes precedence in the order of ideas in the Hindustani sentence.

9. The particle *to* is a colloquial expletive in constant use. It is inferential and allusive, but often so delicately as to be untranslatable. It adds point to dialogue without burdening the expression.

*Bhî* 'even' or 'too,' when added to an indefinite pronoun, corresponds to our 'at all.'

*Hî* italicises, as it were, the word it follows. In combination with the demonstrative pronouns, *yeh* and *woh*, the *h* is dropped, and their meaning becomes 'this very,' 'that same,' etc.



## 10. Translate into English :—

- (1) کل تم بھی حاضر ہو (2) کل تو بڑا تماشا ہوا  
 تھا (3) کچھ پروا نہیں (4) یہاں تو کچھ بھی پانی  
 نہیں (5) کچھ کچھ روٹی توھی (6) اور کوئی  
 نوکر نہیں (7) وہاں تو کوئی دوسری لڑکی انتھی  
 (8) کوئی سو ڈیڑھ سو روپیہ موجود ہی (9) ہاں  
 وہی شخص تو تھا (10) اب تو وقت بہت ہی تنگ  
 ہی (11) یہاں کپاس کبھی نہیں پیدا ہوتی  
 (12) کہیں پتا انتھا (13) کوئی نہ کوئی بنگلا خالی  
 ہوگا (14) کہیں نہ کہیں بارش ہوئی ہوگی (15)  
 آج تو خاک بھی اثر نہ ہوا

## 11. Notes.

(1) *Kal* means 'to-morrow' or 'yesterday,' according to the context. The Persian *fardâ* 'to-morrow' is also current.

(2) The Arabic *tamâshâ* (see App. A, Form VI.), the gender of which is exceptional (see 2, Rule I.), means 'amusement' of any kind, and the exact sense is determined by the context. It may be translated here 'a bit of fun.' *Hââ thâ* is the Past Remote, and does not necessarily mean 'had been.' Translate here 'happened,' and see 7. 8.

(3) The substantive verb in the present tense is inherent in the strong negative *nahîn*. The sentence is the 'couch perwamy' of a former generation: 'It does not matter.'

(5) The repetition of the indefinite pronoun gives the sense of deficiency: *kuchh kuchh* 'some little'; *koî koî* 'some few.'

(6) *Aur koî* or *koî aur* 'some other,' 'another'; *aur kuchh* or *kuchh aur* 'some more.'

(7) *Dâsrî* 'second' is here used in the sense of 'other.' Observe that the negative is printed in combination with the verb, a common custom in writing.

(8) *Rûpaya* 'rupees' is constructed as a noun of multitude with

the verb in the singular. *Sau derh sau* 'a hundred or a hundred and fifty,' lit. 'a hundred, one and a half hundred.' Hindustani dispenses with the alternative conjunction, for the numbers mentioned are not really alternative. *Derh* is one of several fractional numerals with which the student cannot too soon make himself familiar. That he should commit to memory the cardinals from one to a hundred goes without saying. For *manjûd* see App. A, Form I.

(10) 'There is very little time indeed left now.' *Tauj* lit. means 'tight.'

(11) Persian adjectives are indeclinable. *Hotî* or *hotî hai*, not *hai*, because the idea is that the soil is unsuitable for the growth of cotton. *Hai* would mean that it is not grown, though it might be.

(13) *Koî na koî* 'one or another'; *ek na ek* is used in the same sense. *Khâli*, like *bâqi* (7. 4), is an Arabic noun of quality in the form of the Agent, and is indeclinable. This word is sometimes used adverbially in the sense of 'only.' *Hogâ* is here Presumptive, not Future.

(14) 'Somewhere or other.' *Hûi hogî*, the Past Presumptive.

(15) The Persian *khâk* 'dust' is idiomatically used for *kuchh* in the sense of anything valueless or of small account. Translate, 'To-day not the slightest effect was produced.'

## 12. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Is anyone here? (2) It was not at all hot here yesterday. (3) This mare seems to be extremely vicious. (4) What a nice garden! (5) Is the Munshî ill to-day? (6) This was the very thing. (7) There is not the slightest cause. (8) Some mistake or other must have been made. (9) It is of no consequence. (10) Some two hundred and fifty rupees are wanted just now. (11) The fort is a full *kos* distant. (12) Mind you are in attendance to-morrow. (13) The Pandit is very ready-with-his-answers. (14) Is this stream fordable? (15) There must be a *bazar* somewhere or other.

## 13. Directions.

(2) Turn this: 'There was not heat,' etc. The idiom of the language is to use nouns instead of adjectives if possible. *Dháp* 'sun' is often used for 'heat,' and is feminine.

(3) See 5. 14.

(4) *Kaisá* not *kyá*. The translation of such a variously used word as 'nice' requires consideration. The over-tasked *achchhá* is, of course, the easiest resource, and '*umda* 'excellent' is another handy adjective; but it would be strange if the language of Persia, a country of gardens, had not supplied an equivalent to our idea of 'nice' in this connection. The following Persian compounds are applicable, viz., *khúsh-numá*, *khúsh-rá*, *dil-pasand*, *dil-kushá*, *dil-rubá*, of which the first two denote what pleases the eye, and the others the mind.

(5) The tone of voice is sufficient to mark a question of this kind, but it is often well to preface it by *kyá*. In using appellatives, take care to add the appropriate term of respect, viz., *sáhib* with words of Persian or Arabic origin, and *jî* with Hindî. *Munshî sáhib* is better than *Munshî jî*, and *Pandit jî* than *Pandit sáhib*. See the proverb quoted at 182. 1.

(6) 'Thing' here means 'thing spoken of,' *bát*.

(7) See 10. 15.

(8) See 10. 14 for the verb.

(9) Either 10. 3; or use the Arabic *muzáyaqa* in place of the Persian *parwá*.

(10) 'Wanted,' *darkár* or *matláb*, the first for preference in this connection. 'Just now,' *abhî to*, with reference to something said before.

(11) 'A full *kos*,' *kos bhar*, better than *ek kos bhar*. *Ek* acts as an indefinite article when perspicacity requires it. It cannot be used in 4 above, and is unnecessary in 15 below.

(12) This is really a compound sentence. Turn, 'Take care; be certainly in attendance to-morrow.'

(13) 'Ready-with-his-answers,' *házir-jawáb*, an instance of the terseness which is effected by the use of compound words. 'Very' is generally *bahut*, as in 10. 10, but the adjective *bará*, in agree-

ment with the noun qualified, is often preferable. Translate, *Pandit jī bare hāzir-jawāb hain*. Comp. 4. 1.

(14) *Hotā hai*, rather than *hai*, the state of the stream, as generally fordable or not, being intended.

(15) See 10. 13 and 14.

### EXERCISE III.

#### THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Plural of Nouns in *āh* or *ēh*.—Persian and Arabic Plurals.—Order of the Persons.—Plurality of Subjects.

**14.** Persian and Arabic nouns in *āh* or *ēh*, of which a large number are current in Hindustani, are conventionally supposed to form their plurals in the same manner as Hindī nouns in *ā*, viz., by changing that termination into *é*; but there is no real necessity for this adaptation either in speaking or writing.

*Sab darwāzah* (or *darwāzeh*) *band hain* ‘all the doors are shut,’ is quite as correct as *sab darwāzé band hain*. The tendency of modern Hindustani is to dispense with the inflection, just as, even in the Hindī pronouns *yeh* and *woh*, the old plural forms *yé* and *wé* have dropped out of use (5. 4).

Persian and Arabic adjectives in *ō* or *ah* invariably retain these terminations in the plural.

**15.** The use of original Persian and Arabic plurals in Hindustani is a literary conventionalism rather than a grammatical necessity. They partake of the character of borrowed phrases, for occasional use, in formal conversation and correspondence, and in dealing with the technicalities of law. The student is advised to note the various forms

as they occur; and to this end he cannot do better than consult Platts's *Grammar*, § 125 *seqq.*

**16.** There is a difference of idiom between English and Hindustani in the order in which the 'persons' are mentioned. The first person (*mutakallim* 'speaker') takes precedence of the second (*mukhâtab* 'spoken to'), and both of the third (*gâ'ib* 'absent'). Hence, 'you and I' is *main tû* or *ham tum*, a conjunction being considered unnecessary, as the speaker and the person spoken to are in proximity; but 'he and I' or 'he and you' are *main aur woh* or *tû aur woh*, because personal contiguity is not necessarily implied.

**17.** (1) Two or more subjects require the predicate to be plural. If the subjects, whether singular or plural, are of one gender, the predicate is of that gender; if of different genders, the predicate is masculine for choice.

(2) Allied subjects do not require a conjunction, but are conveniently summed up by the introduction of a collective term; and with this term the predicate agrees.

(3) Where conjunctions are used and the subjects are thus mentioned in severalty, the predicate agrees with the subject nearest to it.

**18.** Translate into English:—

- (1) مان باپ لڑکے لڑکیاں اکٹھے ہوئے (2) اکثر  
 (3) ہندی فارسی عربی کتابیں سستی ہوئیں  
 چچاس ایک سپاہی روانہ ہوئے ہونگے (4) کچھ کچھ  
 فالتو اسباب بھی ہی (5) کھار لوگ سب بھوکھے  
 ماندے ہوتے ہیں (6) تینوں چور گرفتار ہوئے  
 (7) بادشاہی صوجات ابتر ہوئے ہونگے (8) خیر

ہم تم شریک ہونگے (9) میں اور وہ دونوں تازہ  
 وارد ہیں (10) آٹا دال گھی نمک وغیرہ سب مہیا  
 ہونگے (11) نیم اتیس سہاگا کھار ایسی ایسی  
 دیسی دوائیں کارآمد ہوتی ہیں (12) یہاں تو نیل  
 اور تنباکو اور کپاس بھی پیدا ہوتی ہی

### 19. Notes.

(2) The Arabic *aksar* means 'most' or 'many,' as in *aksar auqât* 'many times' or 'often.' It is also used as an adverb in the sense of 'mostly' or 'generally.' *Hotin* or *hotî hain*, not *hain*, because the statement is general and not particular.

(3) *Pachâs ek* 'about fifty,' one more or less being a matter of no consequence. Not *rawâne*, see 14.

(4) *Fâltû* 'spare' or 'extra'—an anomalous adjective of Hindi origin. *Asbâb* is an example of an Arabic 'broken' plural in everyday use as a noun singular. The singular is *sabab*.

(5) *Kahâr* is the appellative of the bearer caste. The word *log* 'folk' is added to words of this class to form the plural. *Sab* is the Latin *omnis*; *sârâ* is *totus*. The Arabic *tamâm* or *kull* are frequently used in the sense of *sârâ*.

(6) *Tinon* 'all three,' the plural of totality.

(7) *Sâbajât*, not *sûbe* (15.). *Abtar hote hongê* 'must be in a ruinous condition.' The Present Presumptive.

(8) See 16.

(9) *Donon* 'both,' the plural of totality again. *Tâza-wârid* 'recently arrived,' 'new-comers,' a Persi-Arabic compound.

(10) *Wa-gaira, et cætera*. See 7. 9. The form of the verbal *mohayyâ* shows that it means 'available' by arrangement, or 'provided,' as compared with the verbal used at 10. 8. See App. A, Form II.

(11) The repetition of *aisî* gives the sense of 'many such.' The Arabic *dawât*, being a feminine, takes *en* in the plural. The Arabic plur. *adwiya* is sometimes used.

(12) An illustration of the rule given in 17. 3.

### 20. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Several Thags must have been captured. (2) Pole, pegs, *qanâts*, etc., are all right. (3) The printing and the

paper and the binding are good. (4) Are you fellows satisfied? (5) Well, you and all of us alike are men. (6) All the office-people must be distracted and unhappy. (7) Mr. and Mrs. Smith and the children started yesterday. (8) All the Zemindars are dissatisfied. (9) The North Western Provinces are extensive. (10) Such qualities as common sense, manliness, and modesty are rare. (11) Hundreds of rupees have been squandered there. (12) All four of you are deserving men.

## 21. Directions.

(1) 'Several,' *ka'î ek* or *kitne ek*, on the principle of **18. 3.**

(2) *Qanât* 'the canvas wall of a tent.' 'Right,' in the sense of 'in good order,' is *thîk* or *durust* or *ba-hâl.*

(3) On the model of **18. 12.**

(4) Preface by *kyâ.* 'You fellows,' *tum-log.*

(5) Turn this: 'Well, we you all alike men are.'

(6) 'All the office-people,' *sab daftar-log*, or *sab daftar-wâle*, or *sarâ daftar*, or *kull 'omala.* The last word is the plural of '*âmil* 'employé,' and is vulgarly pronounced '*omla*, and used as singular or plural. The tense is that of **18. 7.**

(7) 'Smith' is written and sounded *Ismî* to suit the native ear. *Ismî Sâhib aur mem sâhib aur bâbâ-log.* *Mem* is an abbreviation of 'Madam.'

(9) The N. W. P': *mamâlik magrabî o shimâlî.* Never mind the Persian *izâfat*, which theoretically follows *mamâlik.* It is rarely pronounced in Hindustani, except after *â.* For 'extensive' the Arabic word *wasî'* is sufficiently common to be unpedantic. The ordinary Hindî *barâ* would be incongruous.

(10) For 'common sense' '*aql* is perhaps as good as any other word. Translate on the model of **18. 11.**

(11) 'Hundreds of rupees,' *saikron râpayâ,* the plural of totality. 'Squandered' has a good representative in the Persian *bar-bâd* 'ou the wind.'

(12) Turn this: 'You all four men,' etc.—the plural of totality.

## EXERCISE IV.

THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued.*

Nouns in the Construct State.—*Izâfat* and its Signs and Uses.

**22.** There are no declensions of nouns in Hindustani. The *hâlat* or construct *state* of a noun is indicated by post-positional affixes or 'signs'; and there is, therefore, no reason why a change or inflection should take place in the noun itself. No doubt in one particular class of Hindî nouns in *â* that vowel becomes *e* in the construct state, but this change is euphonic and not grammatical; euphonic, because the accent in these words being on the penultimate, as a rule, the effect of the affix is still further to lighten the sound of the final vowel. Take, for instance, the word *khânâ*. The accent being on the first syllable, the final *â* has the half-sound of *a* or *e*; and this softening of the vowel is still more apparent when an affix is attached; hence, *khâne kô* rather than *khânâ ko*.

It will be observed, too, that Persian and Arabic nouns in *â* are uninflected before an affix. This may be due to the circumstance that they are foreign vocables, and that the accent falls, as a rule, on the final syllable; but the fact remains that the affix is a sufficient indication of the construct state, and that no ambiguity is caused by the absence of inflection in the noun. These remarks are equally applicable to Persian and Arabic nouns in *ah* (14.), and, as a matter of fact, the best modern writers \*

---

\* Maulavi Nazîr Ahmed, the best representative of the Dehli school of writers, rarely inflects nouns of this class before an affix.



omit the inflection as unnecessary, except when the affix is dropped, in which case the change from *ah* to *e* may be a useful indication that the noun is in the construct state.

Plural nouns in the construct state invariably take *on* before an affix.

**23.** When the relation between two nouns is such that one is the complement of the other, the complementary noun receives the sign of *izâfat* 'annexure,' viz., one or other of the affixes *kâ*, *kî*, or *ke* in agreement with the noun of which it is the complement. For example, in the Hindustani idiom 'the road to Dehli' is *Dehli kâ râsta*; 'authority for this statement,' is *bât kî sanad*; 'the Raja's sons,' *Râjâ ke bete*; 'fear of death,' *maut kâ khauf*; 'wanting in wit,' *aql kâ mohtâj*; 'a horse worth a thousand rupees,' *hazâr rūpaya kâ ghorâ*; 'a gold watch,' *sone kî gharî*, etc. Obviously the relation expressed by *izâfat* is more comprehensive than that of the Genitive case in English.

**24.** The sympathetic changes of the sign of *izâfat* show that the complementary relation is adjectival. This is very clearly seen in such expressions as *ranj kî bât* 'a sad affair'; *balâ kâ gussa* 'violent anger'; *gazab kî nâ-insâfî* 'terrible injustice,' in which the metaphorical use

---

The MS. of his best work, the *Taubat*, was in my hands in 1873, and the absence of inflection duly noted in this and in the first Edition of the work which was lithographed at Agra in the same year. The second Edition was entrusted to a Lucknow publisher, who thought proper to supply the inflections. See *Taubat*, IV., 1.

In the Lucknow translation of the *Alf Laila*, which was the work of a Mir Munshî of the Foreign Office after his retirement, the inflection is general.

Newspaper writers, who are not always the best of scholars, inflect or not at their own sweet will.

of the English adjectives can be represented in this way only.

*Ranjida ádmí* is 'a sad man,' but *ranjida bát* is inadmissible. On the other hand, to say *barú gussa* or *barí nú-insáfi*, though correct enough, would not be a translation of the English epithets.

**25.** The sign of *izáfat* is occasionally used to connect the same nouns or adjectives by way of completing or intensifying the idea conveyed by the single word, as *dúdh ká dúdh, pání ká pání* 'the real article,' 'unadulterated'; *kahání kí kahání* 'a tale and nothing else'; *sab ke sab* 'the whole lot'; *kumbe ká kumba* 'the whole family.'

**26.** It is also used to connect nouns and pronouns with postpositions, such postpositions being viewed as nouns in the construct state, as *per ke tale* 'under the tree'; *uske áge* 'before him'; *unke sáth* 'with them,' etc. When the postpositional noun is feminine, as in *shahr kí taraf* 'towards the city,' if the order of the words is changed, so that *taraf* stands first, the sign of *izáfat* loses its gender, and we have *taraf shahr ke*.

**27.** Translate into English:—

- (1) انسداد اس فساد کا کیسا ہوا (2) تیری  
 اس بات کی کیا سند ہے (3) تم تو ایک بڑے  
 عزتدار کے پوتے ہو (4) آگرہ کی سڑک کونسی ہے  
 (5) غلام حضور کی مہربانیوں کا بہت شکرگزار ہے  
 (6) یہ کالی گھوڑی کتنے کی (7) آج کل سرشتہ کا  
 کام بھاری تو ہے (8) غضب کی نالصافی ہوئی

ہوگی (9) آپ کی \*بیچ کی انگلی کھردری کھردری  
 کیون ہوتی (10) اس قدر فضول خرچی کا کیا فائدہ  
 (11) سب کے سب میری بدنامی کے خواہان ہیں  
 (12) ہنر اور سلیقہ کے آگے مال و دولت ہیچ ہی  
 (13) ڈاک بنگلا ریل کے پاس ہی ہی (14) ہر ایک  
 مانند میرے اور تیرے آدمی تھا (15) پیدل اور سوار  
 کا کیا ساتھ

### 28. Notes.

(1) The usual order of the nouns is reversed by way of emphasizing the word *insidâd*, for which see App. A, Form VII. Translate 'How was this emeate put down?'

(2) *Terî is bât*, not *is terî bat*, on the principle laid down in 16.

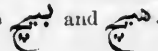
(3) Observe that *pote* 'grandson' is in rational agreement with the plural pronoun *tum*, which is addressed to an individual.

(4) *Agra* instead of *Agrâ*. In either form inflection is out of place, for the word is a proper noun.

*Sarak*, as compared with *râsta*, is 'a made road'; *pakké sarak* is 'a macadamised road'; *kachchî sarak*, a made road but not macadamised. The Persian *râh* is also current, but is mostly reserved for the metaphorical use of 'way,' as in the phrase *râh o rasm* 'manners and customs.'

(5) Here an inferior speaks of himself by the depreciatory term 'slave,' in the 3rd sing., and addresses his superior as 'the Presence.' Note the connection between *hâzîr* and *huzâr*.

(6) The pronominal interrogative is here used substantively. For the translation, see 29. 8.

\* The attention of the student is drawn here, once for all, to a defect in the type fount, the reproduction of which he must carefully avoid in writing. This consists in the faulty manner in which final letters of the *ح* form are united with the preceding letter. The point of junction is the left, not the right, end of the horizontal limb. Thus, بیچ and ہیچ in this Exercise should be  .

(7) Āj kal 'now-a-days.' *Bhārtī* is an example of a numerous class of Hindi adjectives of quality, formed by adding *ī* to a noun.

(8) See **24**.

(9) Bīch kī unglī 'the middle finger' (**24**.); also called *daint unglī* 'witch-finger.' The repetition of the adjective gives the sense of 'so rough' (from sewing).

(10) The sign of *izāfat* is dropped after *is-qadr* as an encumbrance; *is qadr (kī)* is equivalent to *itnī*.

(11) For *sab ke sab* see **25**.

(12) The meaning of *āge* 'in front of' is here metaphorical, viz., 'in comparison with.' By way of variation, the Arabic conjunction is used between the second couple of nouns.

(13) The word *rel* for 'railway' is quite naturalised. *Āhanī sarak* (*chemin de fer*) was the first attempt, but this was soon found to be too cumbersome. *Pās hī* 'very near' or 'close by.'

(14) *Mānind mere* or *merī mānind* 'like me,' **26**.

(15) A proverbial expression, in which *sāth*, which is generally used as a postposition, is a noun. Translate, 'What companionship is possible between a footman and a horseman?'

### 29. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) What is your father's name and caste? (2) This is no laughing matter. (3) In whose charge is the arrangement of supplies? (4) The shape and colour of this horse are good. (5) There are two miles to a *kos*. (6) Where does this road lead to? (7) Three days' leave of absence was sanctioned. (8) How much for this pony? (9) An order to this effect is current. (10) An elephant, and also two camels, were with him. (11) My house is close to the Court. (12) There was a very severe famine last year. (13) It is the shop of some Baniya or other. (14) What profit accrued this year? (15) How old are you?

### 30. Directions.

(1) Put the sign of *izāfat* in agreement with the nearest noun, and let the verb be in the singular.

- (2) See **24**.
- (3) Turn this: 'Of supplies arrangement whose charge (*zimma*) is?'
- (4) As in (1), the sign of *izâfat* agrees with the nearest noun; and by **17. 3**, the predicate agrees with the nearest noun also.
- (5) The Hindustani idiom is, 'Of two miles one *kos* consists (*hotâ*).'  
Our word 'mile' is naturalised, but is pronounced *meel*.
- (6) Turn 'This road whereof is?'
- (7) *Tîn din kî chhuttî*, or *tîn din chhuttî*—never *dinon* in connection with a numeral.
- (8) Exactly as in **27. 6**.
- (9) The word used for 'effect' in **10. 15** is inapplicable here; *mazmûn* (App. A, Form I) 'contents' answers the purpose.
- (10) The indefinite article must be translated by *ek* here, to avoid ambiguity.
- (11) *Kothî* best describes the kind of 'house' intended. A native would say *garîb khâna* 'humble abode.'
- (12) For 'very severe' use the idiom described in **24**.—*balâ* with the sign of *izâfat*. 'Last year,' *pârsâl*; 'this year,' *imsâl* or *sâl-hâl*; 'next year,' *sâl-âyanda*.
- (13) See **10. 13**. *Baniya*, as an appellative, should be indeclinable in the singular, and take *log* in the plural.
- (14) For *kitnâ* use *kis qadr*, **27. 10**. 'To accrue' *hâsil honâ*; and note the etymological connection between this verbal and that used for 'toll' in **6. 3**.
- (15) The Hindustani idiom is 'Your age how much?' See **13. 2**.

---

## EXERCISE V.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB—*continued*.

Postpositional Verbals.—Mode of expressing 'have.'—Apposition.

**31.** Some few Arabic verbals, such as *qâbil*, *mutâbiq*, etc. act as postpositions, and are constructed in the same way by the use of the sign of *izâfat*, *ke*; as *'tibâr ke qâbil* 'deserving of confidence.'

**32.** 'Have' is expressed by the substantive verb in combination with the postposition *pās* 'by,' 27. 13; but chiefly when the property is movable, as *kunjī kis ke pās hai?* 'Who has the key?'

The verb *rakhnū* means 'having,' in the sense of 'keeping' or 'holding,' and is best reserved for such phrases as *ikhtiyār rakhnā* 'to have authority,' *aziz rakhnā* 'to hold dear,' etc.

**33.** Apposition occasionally supersedes the use of *izāfat*; e.g. *ek shakhs Durgā nām* 'a person of the name of Durga,' *pānch rūpaya mahînā* 'five rupees a month.' On the other hand, in some cases where apposition is the English idiom, Hindustani requires the sign of *izāfat*; as 'the word river,' *daryā kū lafz*.

### 34. Translate into English:—

- (1) آپکی احتیاط قابل تعریف کے ہی (2) اس سرشتہ کی کارروائی ضابطہ کے مطابق ہوتی (3) ہر کارروائی زبانی یہ خبر آشکار ہوتی (4) نواب صاحب کے یہاں شادی درپیش ہی (5) آج میرے یہاں برادری کی دعوت ہوگی (6) سانس کے پاس کچھ بھی خرچ نہیں (7) میز چوکی فرش وغیرہ سب چیز ہمارے پاس ہیں (8) اونکے عتاب کی کوئی وجہ ضرور ہوگی (9) جلاہوں کی نادانی خلاف قیاس ہی (10) کوئی باہر کا صاحب حضور کی ملاقات کا مشتاق ہی (11) زمین آسمان کا فرق ہی (12) خدا کی قسم میں تو اس فعل کا مرتکب نہیں ہوں (13) یہاں تو فعل کا لفظ بامعاورہ

ہی (14) ایک بوڑھا آدمی درگا نام باہر کھڑا ہی  
 (15) طالب علموں کے واسطے ایک وظیفہ بیس روپیہ  
 مہینے کا مقرر ہی

## 35. Notes.

(1) 'Circumspection' is the best rendering of this verbal (of which the gender is exceptional) with reference to its origin. See App. A, Form VIII. Other current words from the same root are *hâtâ* 'enclosure,' *muhît* 'circumference.' *Qâbil* belongs to Form I., and *ta'rif* to Form II. See App. A.

(2) *Kâr rawâ'i* 'work-procedure' or 'procedure,' *rawâ'i* being a derivative from the Persian *raftan* 'to go.' See 18. 3 for another verbal from the same verb. For *mutâbiq* see App. A, Form III.

(3) *Zabânî*, used as a postposition, 'by the tongue of,' or, as we say, 'by the mouth of.'

(4) *Nawwâb sâhib ke yahân* 'at the Nawwâb's,' an every-day use of the adverb of place. *Hân*, for *chân*, is often used in this connection for *yahân*.

(5) *Mere yahân* 'chez moi'; *Birâdarî* 'brotherhood,' in a concrete sense; *bhâ'ibandon kî* might have been used.

(6) *Sâ'is*, Arabic verbal, Form I.; see App. A. *Kharch* or *kharcha* means 'money for expenses' generally. *Fuzûl-kharchî* 'excessive expenditure,' 'extravagance' occurs in 27. 10. *Râh-kharch* is 'travelling-money.'

(7) Compare 18. 10. The regular plural *chîzen* is seldom used.

(8) *Êtâb*, see App. A, Form III. *Wajh* 'ground,' in the sense of *primâ facie* reason. The word generally means in Arabic 'face' or 'surface.'

(9) *Khilâf-qiyâs* 'inconceivable.' The ignorance of the weaver caste is proverbial. Both verbals belong to App. A, Form III.

(10) For *mulâqât* see App. A, Form III.; and for *mushtâq*, App. A, Form VIII. *Bâhar kâ* 'of outside,' that is, 'not of the family,' 'a stranger.'

(11) The sign of *izâfut* here has the sense of 'between.' The phrase is proverbial, and means 'an enormous difference.'

(12) *Khudâ kî qasam* 'by heaven!' lit. 'God's oath.' *Murtakîl nahîn hûn* 'I do not venture to commit'; the verbal literally means 'mounting on,' 'venturing on.' See App. A, Form VIII.

(13) See **33**. *Bá-muháwara* 'idiomatic,' opposed to *be-muháwara* 'unidiomatic,' App. A, Form III.

(14) See **33**.

(15) *Tálib-ilm* 'a seeker after knowledge,' 'a student.' For *muqarrar* see App. A, Form II.

### 36. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) How much cash have you? (2) This is the wondrous story of the mechanical horse. (3) I have no vacancy at present. (4) The plaintiff's claim is good. (5) The Dehli idiom is current here. (6) Daily quarrelling is never pleasant. (7) An indiscreet person is unworthy of confidence. (8) The compound wall wants mending. (9) What is the literal meaning of the word *wajh*? (10) This anonymous petition is the work of a rascal. (11) This box is a specimen of the local talent. (12) Certainly your nephew deserves promotion. (13) A beggar of the name of Shâh Alî, blind of one eye, is standing before the gate. (14) In the opinion of some the Government plan is a mistake. (15) This District seems to be very lightly assessed.

### 37. Directions.

(1) See **32**.

(2) The *kal kâ ghorâ* of the *Alf-Laila*, *kal* meaning 'machine.' *Kal kâ ghorâ* might mean 'yesterday's horse,' or 'the horse ridden yesterday.' Both noun and adverb are Hindî words.

(3) In reply to an *ummedwâr* or applicant for employment. Turn 'In my office (*mere yahân*) no place is vacant.'

(4) 'Good,' that is, 'good in law,' *jâ'iz*.

(5) 'Dehli' must have the sign of *izâfat*. 'Current,' *murawwaj*.

(6) *Rozâna*, *rozîna*, and *rozmarra* all bear the sense of 'daily,' but the idiom *roz roz kâ* 'of every day' is here intended, and is most suitable. We shall come across another equally idiomatic phrase in connection with the participles.

(7) An 'indiscreet' man is a man 'without discretion'—*be-tamîz*,



a form of compound adjective, which is extremely useful in Hindustani. See 35. 13.

'Worthy of confidence' is *e'tibâr ke qâbil* (31.), but the Hindustani idiom does not admit of *e'tibâr ke nâ-qâbil*, though *nâ-qâbil* alone is a good rendering of 'unworthy.' We must say *e'tibâr ke qâbil nahîn*.

(8) For 'wants mending,' an impossible expression in Hindustani say 'is repair-wanting,' *marammat-talab hai*. *Hâtâ* (for *ehâtâ*) is an 'enclosure' of any kind, from a 'compound' to a 'Presidency.'

(9) *Lugawî* 'literal'; *asli* 'radical.'

(10) *Gum-nâm* 'lost name' is the regular word for 'anonymous'; *be-nâm* 'without a name' may be used also.

(11) 'Local talent' may be expressed as 'the workmanship of the people here,' *yahân ke logon kî kârîgarî*.

(12) *Bhatîjâ* 'the son of one's brother,' *bhânjâ* 'of one's sister.' A knowledge of the terms of family relationship is indispensable; and it is a good plan to tabulate these in the form of a pedigree from a man's grandsire to his grandson.

(13) In the Hindustani version 'blind-of-one-eye' (*kânâ*) may stand before 'beggar' as a qualifying adjective.

(14) 'In the opinion of some,' *ba'zon ke nazdik*, lit. 'near some.' The Arabic *ba'z* acts as a plural of the indefinite pronoun *koî*.

(15) Turn this: 'The revenue-settlement (*bandobast*) of this District seems to be very soft.'

## EXERCISE VI.

### THE SUBSTANTIVE VERB IN COMPOUND FORM.

The Verbs *ânâ*, *jânâ*, *rahnâ*.—*Ko*, the sign of the Remote Object.—  
Usage of the Reflexive Pronoun *apnâ*.

**38.** The substantive verb is often idiomatically combined with nouns in such a way that noun and verb, taken together, act as a single intransitive; for instance, 'the tale began' is *dâstân shurû'-hûî*, not *dâstân kâ shurû' hûî*. Chiefly Arabic verbal nouns are utilized in this kind of

phrase ; and the compound is a valuable addition to the verb vocabulary of Hindustani.

**39.** The compound ho-jânâ, in which the base of the substantive verb is united with *jânâ* 'to go,' is in constant use in the sense of 'become' ; and it may be observed that the verb *jânâ* in composition conveys the idea of completeness or finality : *â-jânâ*, for instance, is to 'arrive,' *rah-jânâ* 'to stay where one is' or 'be left behind.' *Ho-ânâ* occasionally occurs in the sense of 'accompanying' ; *ho-rahnâ* is the continuance of a state.

**40.** As we have seen (23.) the sign of *izâfat* marks the complement of a noun ; the affix *ko*, on the other hand, marks the complement or object of a verb, whether intransitive or transitive, and is therefore called the Sign of the object. In other words, when the relation between two nouns is conveyed by a verb, the second noun takes the affix *ko*, if necessary for the avoidance of ambiguity ; for example, in the sentence *main Agra (ko) jâtâ hûn* 'I am going to Agra,' *ko* marks the object of the journey, but is not necessary, for the sense is obvious without it.

Under certain circumstances *ke* is used instead of *ko* to mark the person affected by the action of an intransitive verb ; but this will be reserved for notice farther on (see 52. 15).

**41.** In combination with the substantive verb the affix *ko* is used to denote the possessor, when the thing possessed is ideal rather than actual ; and thus we have another means of translating the verb 'have.' For instance, 'I have leisure' is *mujhko fursat hai*, not *mere pûs fursat hai*, as in 32.

**42.** The same particle is likewise used for marking

time, as an adverbial adjunct of the verb ; as, *do pahar ko* 'at noon,' *Pir ko* 'on Monday,' *is waqt ko* 'at this time,' etc.

**43.** The reflexive pronoun *apnâ* refers back either to (1) the grammatical subject of a sentence ; (2) the subject of discourse ; or (3) the speaker.

*Apne ta'in* is preferred to *apne ko* 'oneself' as the object of a verb ; *apne ûp ko* 'one's own self' is a common variation ; *apne* is also used substantively in the plural to mean 'one's own people.'

**44.** Translate into English:—

- (1) میں رخصت ہوتا ہوں (2) مجھکو ہمیشہ  
 اپنی مصیبتیں یاد ہیں (3) اوسی وقت اپنا وطن  
 اور مان باپ یاد آے (4) آج کے دسویں دن دسہرا  
 کی تعطیل شروع ہوگی (5) یہ سڑک کہاں گئی  
 (6) کوئی آدھ سیر دودھ باقی رہا ہوگا (7) غلام  
 کی کل کائنات چوری ہوگئی (8) چند روز کے بعد  
 آپکی استعداد پوزی ہو جائیگی (9) ریل تو کب کا  
 آگیا ہوگا (10) اس وقت مجھکو فرصت کہاں  
 (11) ہر ایک کو اپنی اپنی چال ڈھال ہی (12) یہ  
 طریقہ فراموشکاری کا مجھے پسند نہ آتا (13) میں  
 خود آپکے ہمراہ ہو آتا ہوں (14) کل میرا سبق  
 نا تمام رہ گیا (15) اپنوں کی پرورش شرط انسانیت  
 ہی

**45.** Notes.

(1) 'I am taking leave,' said by a visitor on rising to end an interview.

(2) Here *apnâ* agrees with the grammatical subject of the verb *yâd-hain*, and refers to the speaker also.

(3) In this sentence *apnâ* agrees with the nearest noun, and

the verb *yâd-â'e* agrees with the nearest noun also. The particle *ko* is omitted after *usî waqt*.

(4) *Âj ke daswen din (ko)* 'on the tenth day from this.' Note here the difference of idiom. The connection between present and future time, being unbroken, is denoted by *izâfat*. Thus 'to-night' is *âj kî râ't* or *âj râ't*. The *n* in *daswân* is nasal, and the word is therefore inflected as if it were an adjective in *â*.

(5) 'Where does this road go?' The Hindustani idiom is more exact than the English. See back to 29. 6 for another mode of asking the question.

(6) See 33. *Bâqî*, Arabic noun of quality in form of Agent, App. A, Form I.

(7) For *kull* see 21. 6. *Kâ'inât*, an Arabic feminine plural, meaning 'existences,' used as a singular in Urdû, in the sense of 'effects,' 'property,' etc. *Chorî-hojânâ* 'to be stolen,' 38.

(8) For *istê'dâd* (the gender of which is exceptional) see App. A, Form X.

(9) Translate 'The train must have come in some time ago.' The *kâ* in *kab kâ*, or as it is often written *kabhî kâ*, agrees with the subject of the verb. The interrogative form of the phrase implies that the question which led to it was unnecessary.

(10) The same thing is observable of this example: 'I have no leisure now. Why ask?'

(11) The repetition of *apnî* is distributive, as in the example at 4. 4. *Châl-dhâl*, a compound of two verbal bases, of which the first means 'gait,' and the second 'mould,' may be translated 'manner of life,' 'manners,' 'fashions,' etc. The expression is proverbial, and means that no two men are alike.

(12) *Farâmosh-kârî* 'obliviousness.' In this sentence the writer complains of his correspondent's neglect to answer inquiries.

(13) *Main khûd* 'I myself.' *Hamrâh* is here used postpositionally; hence *ke*, not *kâ*.

(14) *Shart-i-insâniyat* 'a condition of humanity,' which amounts to a moral obligation.

#### 46. Translate into Hindustani:—

- (1) He took leave yesterday evening. (2) His oily tongue offends me. (3) The Commissioner will return at noon to-day. (4) I remembered my folly. (5) After some

days all his servants were dismissed. (6) A *darbár* will be held at the Collector's on the 25th of the present month. (7) All of you go home. (8) Some day or other you will remember my advice. (9) The style and contents of your letter pleased me. (10) The result of this fault will soon become plain to you. (11) How much revenue was collected? (12) The examination will begin at the same time on Monday. (13) I generally enjoy good health here. (14) Who resides here? (15) When was this new dodge of yours invented?

#### 47. Directions.

(1) 'Yesterday evening,' *kal shám ko*.

(2) Turn, as in **44.** 12, 'His oiliness-of-tongue does not come pleasant to me.'

(3) The Commissioner, as the chief civil officer of a Division, is known as the *Bare Sâhib* (pl.). *Do pahar* means 'noon,' because the second of the four watches into which the day is divided by native reckoning ends then.

(4) Use the compound verb given in **44.** 3.

(5) 'Servants,' *naukar châkar*. The duplication of synonyms is a favourite method of denoting plurality. 'Were' should be here translated as 'became.'

(6) Turn this: '25th date month present (*mâh hâl ko*) at the Collector's (*Kalektar Sâhib ke yahân*),' etc.

(7) Turn this: 'to your respective homes,' *apne apne ghar*.

(8) Some day or other,' *ek na ek din (ko)*.

(9) See the hint given at **30.** 4.

(11) 'To be collected,' *wusâl honâ*.

(12) Begin with 'on Monday at this very time,' etc., and for the verb see **44.** 4.

(13) For 'generally' see **19.** 2. Turn, 'I remain well' (*tandurust* or *bhalâ changâ*).

(14) Translate 'who,' *kaun sâhib*, with verb in plural.

(15) Ironical. For 'dodge' use *hikmat*, which means 'wisdom,' 'skill,' etc.

## EXERCISE VII.

USAGES OF THE VERBAL NOUN INFINITIVE, OR GERUND  
IN *ná*; NOUN OF AGENCY.

The Intransitives *parná*, *milná*, *lagná*.—The Locative affixes  
*men*, *par*, *tak*.

**48.** The verbal ending in *ná* is called by native scholars the *masdar*, or 'source' from which the other parts of the verb are derived, and is represented in the dictionaries by the English prepositional infinitive. *Rahná*, for instance, is 'to remain'; but the truer signification is that of our verbal in *-ing*; e.g. *merá wahán rahná munásib hai* 'my remaining there is proper,' not *mujh ko*. The verbal approaches most nearly to the English infinitive when it is inflected after verbs of motion, the affix *ko* being suppressed; as, *rotí kháne jâtá hín* 'I am going to eat bread.'

A certain similarity is observable with the Latin gerund, but the Hindustani verbal is more flexible. It is inflected like other nouns which end in *á*, and may be plural as well as singular. It may be qualified by an adjective and be itself used adjectively in agreement with common nouns.

**49.** The addition of *wáílá* to this verbal personifies, so to say, the state or action which is denoted. For instance, from *rahná* 'dwelling' we have *rahne-wáílá* 'dwelling-person' or 'dweller,' in which the unaccented *á* of the verbal is softened to *e*, as described in **22.** before the affix.

In verbs of motion or action this compound often supplies the want of a future participle active ; as, *jāne-wālā kaun hai, Quis iturus est ?* ' Who is about to go ?'

Occasionally the base form of the verb takes this affix ; as, *rakhwālā* ' a keeper.'

**50.** (1) The affix *men*, in which the long vowel is softened to *ǔ*, and the *n* is nasal, covers most of the meanings of the English prepositions ' in,' ' into,' ' among' ; sometimes it answers to ' between,' and sometimes to ' on' or ' round.' For example, ' a chain on the foot' is *pāon men zanjīr*, ' a ring on the finger' *unḡlī men angūthī*, etc. ; the reason of this difference of idiom being that the idea of ' on' in Hindustani is chiefly applicable to articles which are easily removed.

This affix is frequently dropped, especially in the case of participial nouns, as will appear hereafter. The noun remains in the construct state, and serves as a postposition (see **26.**), or as an adjective ; e.g. *gusse* ' angry,' for the inflection of which see **22.**

(2) *Par* corresponds to our ' on' or ' at,' and is an abbreviation of *ūpar* ' over.'

It is also used to mark the object of an emotion, and thus answers to the English prepositions ' with' or ' to' in such phrases as ' angry with,' ' merciful to.' This particular difference of idiom is a great puzzle to our native friends.

(3) *Tak* means ' to,' ' up to,' ' even to,' ' as far as,' and so forth, according to the context.

The sign of *izāfat* may follow all these affixes after the manner of the English idiom ; e.g. *is men ká pānī* ' water out of this,' etc.

## 51. Translate into English:—

- (1) اوسکا یوں دہلی میں رہنا مصلحت نہیں  
 (2) کتنی دیر تک مجھکو یہاں رہنا پڑیگا (3) تھوڑی  
 دیر میں پانی پڑیگا (4) اس میں اور اس میں بڑا  
 فرق ہی (5) حضور کا عنایت نامہ مجھکو ملا  
 (6) ٹھیکے دار کو ڈھائی سو روپیہ پیشگی ملیگی  
 (7) بھائی تم اوس پر ایسے غصے کیوں ہو (8) یہ  
 دانت کو نکلنا کچھ اوسکا نیا نکلنا نتھا (9) روپیہ تو  
 آئی جانی شی ہی (10) اتنے میں مہمانوں کی  
 ڈولیاں آئی شروع ہوئیں (11) اس مثلک میں اب  
 ضلع پر کا مربع آج ضلع پر کا مربع کے برابر ہی  
 (12) مجھکو یہاں تک کا ارادہ ہی بس (13) اب تک  
 ایک بھی مچھلی میرے ہاتھ نہ لگی (14) مفت  
 کا مال کسکو برا لگتا (15) اوسکے زخم کاری لگا

## 52. Notes.

(1) The verbal *maslahat* has here the adjectival sense of 'advisable' or 'expedient.' See App. A, Rem. 5 (3).

(2) *Kitnī der tak* or *kabtak* or *kahān tak* 'how long?' The verb *parnā*, which literally means 'falling' or 'lying,' is used in a variety of idioms. Here it gives to *rahnā* the obligatory sense of the Latin gerund in *-dum* 'Shall I have to remain?' *Mujhko rahnā hogā* means much the same thing.

(4) 'Between this and that.' Compare the example at 34. 11, where *farq* follows the sign of *izāfat*.

(5) The verb *milnā* is not a transitive like our 'receive'; hence the Hindustani idiom in this example, 'received to me,' the verb being always in agreement with the thing received. '*Ināyat-nāma* corresponds to our word 'favour' in the sense of letter. Translate, therefore, 'I was favoured by your letter.'

(6) See 33.

(7) *Bhā'ṭ* means 'mate' or 'friend,' as well as 'brother,' and is often used when the object is to soothe.



(8) *Ṇayâ nikalnâ* 'a new going-out,' 'a new departure,' or 'novelty.' This example shows clearly the great difference between the so-called 'Infinitives' in Hindustani and English or Latin.

(9) This proverbial expression illustrates the adjectival usage of the verbal in *nâ*. *Ānî jānî shai* 'a thing that comes and goes,' otherwise, *āne jāne kî shai*.

(10) Similarly *dâliyân ānî*, where *ānî* agrees with *dâliyân*, and both with the verb *shurâ'*-*hâ'în*, is equivalent to *dâlîyon kâ ānâ*.

(11) A scrap of Euclid, which illustrates the exactness of expression attained by the use of the double affix. For *musallas* and *murabba'* see App. A, Form II. Figures expressed by three and four (sides) respectively.

(12) Idiomatic sentences of this kind cannot, of course, be translated literally. The meaning is, 'I mean to go (or work, or read, etc.) thus far and no farther. For *irâda* see App. A, Form IV. The word was *iraâd*, and the dropping of the *a* is compensated for by the affix.

(13) The intransitive *lagnâ* is a word in constant use in many idioms. The general idea is external attachment, adhesion, application, etc., according to the context. Here, *hâth lagnâ* means 'to be handled,' like *hâth ānâ* 'to come to hand.'

(14) Proverbial. An assertion interrogatively put, as in **44.** 10. The idiom *burâ lagnâ* corresponds to our phrase 'come amiss.'

(15) Translate 'He was fatally wounded,' or 'he received a fatal wound.'

The propriety of *ke* instead of *ko* in this example is apparent from the consideration that *usko zahhm lagâ*, in accordance with the usage of the intransitive *lagnâ*, as illustrated in the two preceding texts, would mean, 'a wound was attached to him,' as if it were something tangible and removable. A wound after infliction is part and parcel of the injured member, and thus *uske* is the logical resource. *Uske sâ'î chubhî* 'the needle pricked her,' in which *chubhî* is an *intransitive*, may be quoted as another illustration of the same refinement.

### 53. Translate into Hindustani :—

(1) Government interference in religious matters is inexpedient. (2) He was very angry with me indeed.

(3) I mean to read as far as the eighth chapter and no farther. (4) Where is this kind of cloth to be got? (5) It is right you should join in this assembly. (6) I had to go to Agra the next day. (7) Anonymous petitions began to arrive. (8) You got this place a bargain in my opinion. (9) No one was hurt. (10) There is a great difference between theory and practice. (11) Your son came out first in the half-yearly examination. (12) Without interest no one obtains employment in this State. (13) It is forbidden to drink water from this well. (14) The key does not fit the lock. (15) We are bound to obey the canon-law.

#### 54. Directions.

(1) 'Religions,' *mazhabî*, used in Upper India without respect to creed. The form of the Arabic *mazhab* is that of a *mîm*-ated noun of action, and the literal meaning is 'passing' or 'passage.'

(3) Exactly on the model of 51. 12, omitting the verb 'read.'

(4) Turn this: 'Where is cloth of this kind received (*milnâ*)?'

(5) Turn this: 'Your joining in this assembly is right.'

(6) See 51. 2. 'The next day,' *ûske agle din (ko)*. *Aglâ*, properly speaking, is 'prior,' that which is 'before,' *âge*; hence the idea of 'future' in respect of time. The sign of *izâfat* marks the close connection between the present and immediate future.

(6) See 51. 10.

(8) See 36. 14. *Merî râe men* or *merî dânist men* will do equally well. 'Bargain' is *khûsh-kharîd* 'pleasant-purchase.'

(9) Translate with attention to 51. 15.

(10) See 51. 4: one *men* only is required. 'Theory' is *علم* and 'practice,' *عمل*. The contrast is proverbial, and is heightened in the original by the fact that the same letters are used in both words.

(11) 'To come out first,' *awwal nikalnâ*. The Arabic numeral carries with it a certain amount of dignity as compared with *pahlâ*. 'Half-yearly' is 'six-monthly' in the Hindustani idiom.

(12) 'Without interest,' *be sâ'î o sifârish*, in which the first

member of the compound phrase means 'effort,' and the second, 'recommendation.' This kind of compound is often useful in the translation of single terms of complex meaning. Compare *châl dhâl* as explained in 45. 11. 'In this State' stands first in the Hindustani sentence.

(13) Use the double affix, as in 50, *sub fin.* 'Forbidden' (by the rules of religion or caste), *harâm*, which is, strictly speaking, a Mahomedan word. 'Well,' *kunwân* or *kû'â* by the elision of the nasals. Sometimes the first nasal alone is dropped, and sometimes the second.

(14) *Tâlâ, tâli*, are the Hindî words for 'lock and key,' and *qufl* and *kunjî* (or *châbbî*) the Urdû.

(15) Turn this: 'Obedience (*pâ-bandî*, lit. 'foot-binding') of the canon-law-of-Islam (*shari'at*) is an obligation (*farz*) on us.'

## EXERCISE VIII.

### USAGES OF THE GERUND—*continued.*

The Separative Affix *se.*—Comparison of Adjectives.—The Affix *sâ* of Similitude or Comparison.

**55.** The verbal in *nâ* is constantly used as a jussive: *tum jânâ*, for instance, means 'go you'; and this usage is akin to, if not an abbreviation of, the gerundial form *tumko jânâ hai* 'you are to go.' *Na jânâ* is the corresponding prohibitive; but the use of *mat* also is sanctioned by the best authorities.

**56.** A rare usage of the verbal is that in which it takes the sign of *izâfat* in agreement with the subject of a negative sentence, and thus acts as a finite verb, with the force of a strong future, or *non-possumus*. The following proverb is an example: *Yahân tumhârî tikkî nahîn lagne kî* 'Your bit of bread shall not be put here,'

'cannot be baked in this oven,' i.e. 'It is of no use your coming here.'

**57.** The affix *se* marks the separated object in space or time, and so far corresponds with the English preposition 'from'; and since 'from' includes the idea of origin or cause, the sense of instrumentality denoted by the English 'by' likewise belongs to *se*. Again, the notion of looking *from* one object *to* another implies association of ideas, intercommunication, comparison, etc.; and thus *se* covers the meanings of the preposition 'with.'

**58.** In its meaning of comparison 'with,' *se* corresponds with the English 'than' after an adjective in the comparative degree. Thus, *is se tez* 'swift in comparison with this' translates the English 'swifter than this'; and, similarly, *sab se tez* is 'swifter than all' or 'swiftest.'

Other modes of comparison will be illustrated below.

**59.** The affix *sî* of similitude or comparison is not a case-affix like those we have been considering, although, like the sign of *izîfat*, it is adjectival and agrees in gender and number with the noun which it precedes. It corresponds generally with the English adjectival terminations '-like' and '-ish.' We had an example of the use of this affix in 4. 4, where *kaunsâ* means 'what-like?' and expects a descriptive answer. So, too, *thorâ sâ pâni* means 'a smallish quantity of water,' or 'only a little water,' whereas *thorâ thorâ pâni* would mean 'a very little water.' *Bahut se âdmî* means a 'largeish number of men,' or 'a comparatively large number of men,' which accounts for the popular usage of the phrase in the sense of 'a great many men.' As applied to the

personal pronouns, instead of *yeh-sa* and *woh-sa*, we have *aisâ* and *waisâ*, and instead of *main-sâ* and *tû-sâ*, *mujhsâ* and *tujhsâ*.

### 60. Translate into English:—

- (1) کل دو پہر شفاخانہ پر حاضر ہونا (2) کوئی  
 امر آپ کی مرضی کے خلاف نہیں ہونے کا (3) میں  
 تو لڑکپن سے بلا کا سونے والا تھا (4) افسوس اوس  
 وقت اپنے باپ کے دیدار سے محروم رہا (5) کیا  
 تجھ سے اور سرشتہ دار سے کچھ رشتہ نانا ہی (6) تمام  
 جہان میں اس سے چھوٹی چریا نہوگی (7) آپ کے  
 یہاں سب سے اچھا گھوڑا کون (8) بنسبت اورون  
 کے یہ کمیت مادیان تیز رفتار ہی (9) سید سب  
 مسلمانوں کے بزرگ ہوتے ہیں (10) کپتان صاحب  
 میرے ساتھ اخلاق سے پیش آئے (11) اس ہاتھی  
 کے پائوں میں لوہے کی زنجیر ہی (12) اس زمانہ  
 میں مجھ سے کوئی شاعر نہیں (13) انارژوں کا سا  
 تلفظ اوسکا ہی (14) بنگالیوں جیسی ہمت تیری  
 بھی ہوتی (15) آج بہت سے مسافر اجنبی سرائے  
 میں داخل ہوئے

### 61. Notes.

(2) See 56. The example is taken from the *Alf Laila*, in which the word *amr* is constantly used in the general sense of 'thing,' like *bât*. It will be noticed that all three forms of the sign of *izâfat* occur in this short sentence. For *marzî* see App. A, Form I.

(3) *Balâ kâ sonewâlâ* 'a terrible sleeper.' See 24.

(5) *Rishta-nâtâ*, a Persi-Hindî compound, which includes all the various degrees of family connection and kinship.

(6) Note, with reference to **3**, Rule I., that Hindi diminutives in *iyâ* are always feminine.

(7) *Âp ke yahân* 'in your stable.'

(8) *Ba-nisbat auron ke* 'in relation to the rest,' a very common mode of denoting the superlative. Another idiomatic phrase of the same meaning is *auron kî nisbat kar*.

(9) From Gâlib. The Sayyids claim descent from the Prophet. The other three great classes of Mahommedans are Shekh, Mughal, and Pathân. Instead of *ke* we might have had *men*, without alteration of the meaning.

(10) *Pesh-ânâ* 'to come before' usually means 'to treat' in this construction. *Akhlâq se* 'courteously' or 'kindly.' *Se*, used in this way with abstract nouns, supplies a large class of adverbs of manner, otherwise lacking in the language.

(11) See **50**, for the usage of *men* here. *Pâ'on*, for *pânon* by elision of the first nasal. Another common form of the word is *pânw*, in which the second nasal is dropped. *Gâ'on* or *gânw* 'village' is another common word of similar form. Compare **54**. 13.

(12) *Sâ*, after the sign of *izâfat*, is a very convenient turn for the English 'like that of.' The word *talaffuz* is understood after *kâ*, so that the full meaning is 'His pronunciation is like the pronunciation of rustics.' *Anârî* 'un-Aryan' or 'ignoble,' a word with a history. The radical connection between *talaffuz* (see App. A. Form V.) and *lafz*, **34**. 13, should be observed.

(13) *Jaisî* here replaces *kî sî* without derangement of the construction.

(14) For *musâfir* see App. A, Form III.

## 62. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) His disposition is angelic. (2) A considerable number of these merchants have come from Kabul. (3) Hazârî Mal is a banker of a thousand. (4) This Arab is the quietest horse in my stable. (5) This person's appearance undoubtedly matches the description given in the passport. (6) These three letters to your Honour's address have come from the office. (7) There is no better rough-rider than Pîr Khân in the whole neighbourhood.

(8) I got this pair a bargain at the Hardwar fair. (9) I shall not come at your call. (10) For God's sake do not enter this quarter of the town. (11) Do not remain idle. (12) Who is the best writer in the school? (13) My friend was not at home yesterday. (14) I like railway travelling. (15) He had a silver belt round his waist.

### 63. Directions.

- (1) On the model of **60.** 13.  
 (2) Turn 'Out of these merchants a largeish number,' etc.  
 (3) Turn 'Of a thousand bankers H. M. is one banker.'  
 (4) *Garīb* 'poor,' stands for 'quiet' in the native idiom, whether it refers to men or animals. 'In my stable,' *mere yahān*.  
 (5) Begin with the adverb, and for 'matches' use the intransitive *mīlnā*. The nearest term for 'passport' is *chālān*, which means 'descriptive roll,' 'invoice,' etc., according to the context.  
 (6) 'To your honour's address,' *huzūr ke nām kī*, the *kī* being in agreement with the feminine noun for 'letters.'  
 (7) On the model of **60.** 6.  
 (8) See **54.** 8.  
 (9) The idiom explained in **56.** is applicable here.  
 (10) 'For God's sake,' *Khudā ke wāste*. See **55.**  
 (12) For 'writer' use the Persian compound *khūsh-navīs*. The best word for 'school' here is *maktab*, which means literally 'place of writing'; *madrāsa* is a 'place of reading,' and is generally applied to a higher type of school than *maktab*. See App. A, Rem. 5. (3).  
 (14) Turn 'Riding on rail comes pleasant to me,' as in **44.** 12.  
 (15) See **50.** 1.
-

## EXERCISE IX.

## TRANSITIVE VERBS.

The Sign of the near Object, *ko*.—The Past Conjunctive Participle.  
The Aorist Tense.

**64.** The verb *karnâ* 'acting,' as opposed to *honâ* 'being,' plays an important part in idiomatic Hindustani.\* It is specially useful in combination with nouns on precisely the same principle as that described in **38**, with regard to *honâ*. The noun and verb taken together act as one transitive verb; in fact, the noun thus used is *verbalized* by the addition of *karnâ*. For example, *apnâ hâl* 'arz-kartâ hûn' 'I represent my condition,' not *apne hâl kâ* 'arz kartâ hûn.

**65.** There is no Accusative case in Hindustani, for, as remarked in **22**, there is no declension of nouns or system of case-endings. Hence, after a transitive verb the direct object is unaltered by its position; e.g. *apnâ hâl* in the example above; but, inasmuch as both subject and object precede the verb in the Hindustani idiom, it is sometimes necessary, in order to avoid possible confusion, to mark the latter by the sign of the object, *ko*. When a person is the object, *ko* is always necessary. Let the student, then, bear in mind that he is to use *ko* with an object of a transitive verb (1) when, for one reason or another, it is necessary to particularise the object; (2)

---

\* Fallon specifies more than thirty different usages of this verb. The clue to these is in the context, for, as is often the case in Hindustani, the meaning of the word varies with its surroundings.



when the object is a personal pronoun or a proper name or appellative.

**66.** The duplication of the predicate in such expressions as 'he went there and stayed' is avoided in Hindustani by using the base form of the first verb, *wahán já rahá*; and this base form is called the Past Conjunctive Participle by English writers. The native term is Past Defective, that is, a Past which fails to indicate number or person, except by reference to the context. By way of greater distinctness the designative suffix *kar* or *ke*, or even *karke*, is added to this base form.

The Past Conjunctive Participle is in rational agreement with the grammatical subject of the sentence, as in the above example, but, as was observed of the reflexive pronoun *apná* in **43**, it may also refer to the subject of discourse, or to the speaker. It is occasionally constructed independently, and in this form corresponds *pro tanto* with the Latin Ablative Absolute.

**67.** A finite verb in the Aorist Tense denotes uncertainty or hesitation in the mind of the speaker; as *kyá karún?* 'What shall I do?' or 'what am I to do?' Even in such phrases as *Khudá jáne* 'God knows,' the uncertainty still resides with the speaker. This accounts for the use of the Aorist in proverbial expressions, which are generally and contingently, not axiomatically, true.

**68.** Translate into English:—

- (1) کیا خاک بولوں (2) کیا منہ لیکے اپنے باپ  
 سے ملاقات کروں (3) یہ نیا ڈھنگ دیکھ کر اونکے  
 کان کھڑے ہونگے (4) تمکو اتنی بڑی ہو کر شرم نہ

آتی (5) جمناندى گنگا مين جا ملي (6) نو اور  
 اٹھارہ اور ستائیس ملکر کی ہوئے ہیں (7) روبکار  
 لکھکر حکم ہوا (8) ایک چھوڑ دو حکیم میرے  
 دیکھنے کو آئے تھے (9) ہماری بندوق خوب صاف  
 کر کے لاؤ (10) اوسکو ہر جگہ تلاش کر کے ڈھونڈھو  
 (11) یہاں کے دھنے والے گھوڑے پر زین لگام باندھکر  
 سوار نہیں ہوتے (12) مختصر کر کے سنہ ستاون  
 کے عذر کا سبب بیان کرو (13) گوشہ نشین آدمی  
 عکس کی تصویر اتارنے والے کو کہاں ڈھونڈھوں  
 (14) قلم سیاہی کاغذ یہاں سے کون لیگیا (15) چور  
 کو چور ہی پہچانے

### 69. Notes.

(1) This sentence occurs in the *Bâg-o-Bahâr*, and may be translated 'What shall I say at all, at all?' M. Adalat Khan, who published a version of this romance some years ago, has the ingenious rendering, 'What on earth shall I say?'; but *khâk* does not mean 'earth' in this sense. See II, 15.

(2) *Kyâ munh leke*, lit. 'having taken what mouth,' or, as we say, 'with what face.'

(3) Here *dehkar* agrees with the subject of discourse and not with the grammatical subject *kân*.

(4) *Itni barti hokar* 'so old'—in our idiom, 'at your age.' The Past Conjunctive Participle refers to the woman spoken to, that is, to the subject of discourse.

(5) *Jâ milî* 'falls' into, lit. 'went and mixed' with. The idiom of the Past tense here is identical with that of *ga't* in 44. 5.

(6) *Milkar* 'combined' or 'summed up.' The 'sum of two or more numbers is *jor* 'union' in Hindi, and *jama'* 'collection' in Urdû.

(7) *Râ-ba-kâr likhkar* 'the proceedings having been recorded.' The Past Conjunctive Participle is here absolute. The text is an

official formula which connects the *précis* of a case with the order passed on it.

(8) The Past Conjunctive Participle *chhor* 'having let go' is a similar usage. Translate 'Let alone one—two doctors,' etc.

(9) *Lânâ* is a contraction for *le-ânâ*, and though it takes an object by virtue of the first member of the compound, is an intransitive verb.

(10) *Talâsh-karnâ* 'to search.' See **64**.

(11) The negative is attached to the second instead of the first verb as in the English idiom.

(12) *Mukhtasar karke*, lit. 'having made abridged.' Another way of putting it is *mukhtasar taur par* 'in an abridged fashion,' or more pedantically *more Arabico, mukhtasaran*. For the form of the word see App. A, Form VIII.

(13) From Galib. 'The taker down of a reflected picture' is, of course, 'a photographer.' *Taswir* (App. A, Form II.) is the delineation of a shape (*sûrat*).

(14) *Le jânâ*, like *lânâ*, is an intransitive.

(15) See **67**. Translate 'Thief knows thief,' which is the counterpart of a well-known English proverb.

## 70. Translate into Hindustani:—

- (1) Nine, nineteen, and twenty-nine make fifty-seven.  
 (2) Some rascal must have gone and carried off my shoes.  
 (3) Who brought this letter? (4) Put all these books in order on the table. (5) How am I to deal with these rebels? (6) The river Indus falls into the Indian Ocean.  
 (7) I am fond of taking the air in the evening. (8) Briefly describe all your adventures. (9) Find out the exact state of the case and write me word. (10) How am I to ascertain the real cause of this emeute? (11) Not one but three snakes came out of this very drain. (12) With what face shall I encounter my elder brother?  
 (13) Never abuse a man behind his back. (14) I went home and took fever. (15) I admit the force of the Maulavi's objection.

## 71. Directions.

(1) On the model of 68. 6.

(2) There are plenty of words for 'rascal' in Hindustani. The Arabic word *makkâr*, which is a favourite with poets and women, will answer the purpose here.

(3) *Yeh chitthî*, not *is chitthî ko*. The student must learn to do without the *ko* with due regard to the rule in 65.

(4) 'In order,' *tartīb se*. See 61. 10.

(5) 'How?' *kis tarah se* may be used as a variation of *kyûnkar*. For the form of the sentence see 60. 10. The word used for 'rebels' in the Mutiny was *bâgî* or *bâgî-log*. Another Arabic verbal *mufsid*, which signifies the doer of *fasâd*, 27. 1, is frequently used.

(6) See 68. 5. Sindh, originally Hindh, is the Indus.

(7) Turn this: 'Fondness (*shauq*) of eating air is to me.' In India one *eats* air and *drinks* smoke, or, as we say, 'imbibes.' Compare the *fumum bibere* of Horace.

(8) For 'briefly' see 69. 12.

(9) 'The exact state of the case,' *haqiqat-hâl*. 'To write word,' *likh-bhejnâ*; 'to send word,' *kahlâ-bhejnâ*.

(10) 'Emente,' either *fasâd* alone or *dangâ-fasad*, in which *dangâ* describes the 'row,' and *fasâd* the 'mischief.'

(11) On the model of 68. 8.

(12) See 68. 2. Instead of *mulâqât karnâ use milnâ*.

(13) 'Behind the back,' *pîth-pîchhe*. See 50. 1. 'To abuse' is idiomatically *burâ bhalâ kahnâ* 'to speak evil and good,' with *se* to mark the person referred to.

(14) Turn this: 'To me, having gone home, fever came,' the Past Conjunctive Participle being in rational agreement with the person speaking.

(15) Use *taslîm-karnâ* for 'admit,' which will render the translation of 'the force of' unnecessary. Mark the object in this sentence by *ko*.

## EXERCISE X.

## CAUSAL VERBS.

Intensive, Potential, and Completive Compound Verbs.—Inceptive, Acquisitive, and Permissive Verbal Compounds.

**72.** Causal verbs are a speciality of the language, not less useful than elegant. Theoretically, every simple Hindî verb is capable of producing, as it were, two secondaries, the first of which is a causal of the simple, and the second a causal of the causal, or a double causal of the simple. The normal mode of formation is the insertion of *â* between the base of the simple verb and the suffix *nâ* for the first causal, and similarly of *wâ* for the second. For example, *ûthnâ* is 'to rise,' *uthânâ* 'to cause to rise,' or 'raise,' *uthwânâ* 'to cause to raise.' In this instance the initial long vowel of the simple is shortened in the causals; and this and other forms of euphonic modification are easily reduced to system. Instances will be noticed as they occur below.

**73.** (1) The addition of *jânâ* to the base of verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, supplies a class of intransitive compound verbs, known as Intensives, because the state or action denoted by the simple verb receives a more forcible expression. See **39**.

(2) To this class also belong the intransitive compounds, of which the second member is *ûthnâ* 'rising up,' and *parnâ* 'falling down,' or 'lying.' As might be expected, the characteristic of the action portrayed by the first set is *suddenness*. The nature of the state or action in the case of the second set may be appropriately characterised as *casual*.

(3) Similarly contrasted Intensives are those of which the second member is *denâ* 'giving,' and *lenâ* 'taking.' Stated generally, the action denoted by the first concerns others, and that denoted by the second, oneself. Both forms are very common in causal verbs.

*Denâ* is occasionally replaced by *dâlnâ* 'throwing,' of which the effect is vehemence or completeness.

**74.** Potentials and Completives are formed by the addition of the otherwise unused verbs *saknâ* 'to be able,' and *chuknâ* 'to be finished,' to transitive and intransitive bases. Obviously, when the base is transitive, these compounds take an object after them, but they are logically and grammatically intransitive, because *action* is not predicated by the second member.

**75.** Inceptives, Acquisitives, and Permissives are compound phrases in which the gerund in the construct state (*ko* suppressed) is followed by the verbs *lagnâ* 'setting to,' *pâná* 'getting,' and *denâ* 'giving,' respectively.

The first two of these forms are logically and grammatically intransitive, because beginning to act and acquiring the right to act are not acting. The third form, on the other hand, is transitive, because verbs of giving have two objects, and the permission to act, denoted by the compound phrase, *passes on* to the person who receives it.

It may be taken as a principle of the verb system of Hindustani that the meaning rules the construction.

**76.** Translate into English :—

- (1) زر خرید آپ کے پاس کس طرح سے بھجوادوں  
 (2) ذرد بھیتڑ بکری بغیچہ سے نکال دو (3) وہ تو

کبھی کا اپنے گھر پہنچ گیا ہوگا (4) طبابت سے  
 ہیصہ کا علاج نہیں بن پڑتا (5) آپ کے حضور میں  
 اوسکا اسطرح بول اوتھنا خلاف ادب تھا (6) میرا تو  
 اس معاملہ میں بس نہیں چلتا (7) اپنے بیٹے کا  
 سمجھا لینا چندان دشوار نتھا (8) گاؤں والوں سے  
 پوچھ پوچھ کے رستہ دریافت کر لینا (9) علالت کے  
 سبب سے آپ کے خط کا جواب نہیں لکھ سکا  
 (10) بھلا ہم کیونکر ہامی بھر سکتے ہیں (11) وہ  
 تو رخصت ہو کے جا چکا (12) اسکے بعد ادھر  
 ادھر کی باتیں ہونے لگیں (13) زہار افشا اس راز  
 کا نہ ہونے پاوے (14) صحن سے باہر کوئی عورت نہ  
 جانے پائی (15) بلا سے اومکو آنے دو بس

### 77. Notes.

(1) *Zar-kharîd* 'purchase-money.' Note that the long vowel of the simple verb *bhejnâ* becomes the homogeneous short vowel in the causal.

(2) *Nikâlnâ*, for *nikalânâ*, is the causal of *nikalnâ*. By the addition of *denâ* the verb becomes Intensive, and means 'drive out.'

(3) Refer to 45. 9.

(4) *Ban-parnâ* 'to be effected' or 'managed.'

(5) For *huzûr* see 27. 5. *Bol-ûthnâ* 'to exclaim.'

(6) A very common idiom—'my power does not move,' that is to say, 'I have no power to move,' etc. *Mo'âmala* (see App. A, Form III.) is an affair in which two or more persons are *mutually* interested.

(7) For *chandân* see 5. 9. The force of the Intensive may be expressed by translating 'to make my son understand (*what I wanted*),' etc.

(8) The duplication of the Past Conjunctive Participle denotes persistence.

(9) *Nahin likh-sakā*, better than *likh nahin sakā*, 'I could not write.'

(10) The peculiar phrase *hāmī bharnā* means 'to assent' or 'say yes to.' See *Taubat*, V., 55, for a note on the origin of the phrase.

(11) The force of the compound verb may be given by translating it 'has already gone.'

(12) This idiom cannot be literally translated; our phrase 'talk about this and that' is the nearest approach.

(13) Translate 'Beware! let not this secret be divulged.' For *ifshā* see App. A, Form IV.

(14) The *sahn* is the inner court of a native house. Consult the house-plan given in App. A of the *Taubat*.

(15) *Balā se*, an expression of impatience, like our 'Bother take it!' 'Hang it!' etc. For *bas* see 51. 12. Translate here 'and have done with it.'

### 78. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) I cannot answer your question off-hand. (2) I could do nothing, and that's all about it. (3) The cat must have drunk up the milk. (4) Pitch the tent to the north of that tope. (5) He finished his work before my arrival. (6) The cultivators began to complain of hard times. (7) There is no harm in admitting him. (8) Let no one be allowed to go outside the compound. (9) Make an exact copy of this document. (10) Shall I enter a report of the insanitary condition of this village in my diary? (11) Don't let there be any contention among you. (12) Have the cricket-ground watered the first thing in the morning. (13) Hang it! chuck this rubbish into the waste-paper basket. (14) He will have come through the bazar. (15) Have all the horses shod tomorrow.



## 79. Directions.

(1) 'To answer a question' is, in Hindustani, 'to give an answer of a question.' 'Off-hand,' *sar-i-dast*, lit. 'tip of hand,' or, as we say, 'finger-tip.'

(2) See 76. 4 or 6. The second clause may be translated *bas*, as in 76. 15.

(3) Place the object first, with *ko*. 'To drink up,' *pî-jânâ*.

(4) 'To pitch a tent' is 'to make it stand,' *kharâ kar-denâ*. 'To the north' in the Hindustani idiom is 'in the north.' In addressing servants or villagers Hindî words are more likely to be understood than Persian or Arabic; *uttar* is therefore better here than *shimâl*.

(5) 'Before my arrival,' *mere âne se pahle*, in which *se* marks the lapse of an interval.

(6) 'To complain of hard times,' *zamâna kî shikâyat karnâ*.

(9) 'Exact' is to be rendered as 'according to the original,' *mutâbiq-asl*.

(10) 'Insanitary condition,' *nâ-sâfi*. 'To enter,' *darj kardenâ*.

(11) 'Among you,' *âpas men*.

(12) 'A cricket-ground,' *gend-khelne kâ maidân*—'an open space for ball-playing'; *gend-ghar* or *gend-gâh* is used for a 'racquet-court.' There are several expressions for 'the first thing in the morning,' such as *tarke*, *fajar ko*, *savere*, or *munh andhere* 'when it is too dark to distinguish a face.'

(13) See 77. 15. 'Into the waste-paper basket,' *raddî men*.

(14) 'Through the bazar,' *bâzâr hoke*.

(15) Turn this: 'Have the shoeing of all the horses done to-morrow' (*karwâ denâ*).

## EXERCISE XI.

## TRANSITIVE VERBS (COMPLETED ACTION).

*Ne*, the Sign of the Agent.—Formation of the Past or Perfect Participle.

80. The affix *ne* marks the Agent of a transitive verb in those six of its tense-forms which are derived from the

Perfect Participle, and which therefore denote a perfected action. Under all circumstances, no matter what the gender or number of the subject is, agreement with the verb is barred by the presence of this affix. The verb agrees with what in our idiom is its object; as, *ham ne yeh kitáb parhí thí* 'we had read this book.' When, however, such object has the affix *ko*, in accordance with the reservations of 65., concord is again barred, and the verb becomes independent and absolute; as, *ham ne Gulistân ko parhá thá* 'we had read the Gulistan.'

The first of the above examples illustrates the general usage; the second is a particular variation.

**81.** In the case of two verbs, viz., *bolná* 'to speak,' and *bhúlná* 'to forget,' the subject is not marked by the sign of the Agent, because the meaning of the first verb is really 'utterance of a sound,' which may or may not be intelligible; and, as to the second verb, 'forgetting' is distinctly an intransitive idea, for there is nothing to pass on. The verb *samajhná* 'to understand' is both transitive and intransitive, according to the context; and by some authors *sochná* 'to think' is viewed in the same way.

**82.** The six tense-forms which are derived from the Perfect Participle are: (1) the Past Absolute; (2) the Past Proximate; (3) the Past Remote; (4) the Past Presumptive; (5) the Past Dubious; (6) the Past Conditional Remote. See App. B. The last two will be illustrated under the head of Subordinate Clauses in Part II.

**83.** Rules for the formation of the Perfect Participle: (1) When the base of a verb ends in a consonant,

the Past Participle is formed by adding *â*. There are two exceptions, viz., *kiyâ* (*karnâ*) and *mûâ* (*marnâ*), instead of *karâ* and *marâ*, though these latter forms occur.

(2) When the base ends in *l* or *y*, the same augment is used, but *y* euphonic is interposed; and *hamza* replaces *y* when the participle is in the construct state, or is plural or feminine; e.g. *khâyâ*, *khâ'e*, *khâ'î*, *khâ'in*. *Gayâ* from *jânâ* and *hûâ* from *honâ* are exceptional. (3) When the base ends in *ى* (*e* or *î*), the insertion of *y* between the base and the augment is unnecessary, because the long vowels *e* and *î* are equivalent to *iy*; consequently, *lenâ* has for its Past Participle *liyâ* and *lî'e*, and in the feminine, *li* and *lîn* (contracted); and in the same way *pînâ* has *piyâ*, *pî'e*, *pî*, *pîn*.

#### 84. Translate into English:—

- (1) مجبور ہو کر میں نے تین دن کی رخصت لی
- (2) آپ کے اقبال سے میں نے یہ مکان بنا لیا ہے
- (3) عقل ہنر لحاظ سب صفتیں خدا نے اونکو بخشی
- (4) ضرور آپ نے اوسپر نالش کر دی ہوگی
- (5) انگریزوں نے چرسا بھر زمین سے سارا ہندوستان
- (6) بے چوہے کو ہم نے فتحگڑھ میں
- (7) اونہوں نے رهنمائی کے دو چوکیدار
- (8) آپ کے خط کے آنے نے میری آبرو
- (9) خواجه بدرالدین خان میرے بہتیجے
- (10) بھائی
- (11) تم نے
- (12) کمترین نے اونسے نسخہ مستعار لیکر اپنی سب

کتابیں صحیح کر لیں (13) میں نے تمہارا خط بابو  
کالی چرن کے نام کا اونکے پاس بھیجا ہی (14) آپ  
کے انتظار میں میں نے مقدمہ ملتوی کر رکھا (15) اوس  
نے کوئی بات کہنے سے اٹھا نہ رکھی

### 85. Notes.

(1) Translate 'I was forced to take,' etc. The Arabic verbal means one who is under pressure or force, *jabr*. See App. A, Form I.

(2) *Ap ke iqbal se* 'by your good fortune' is the ordinary reply to a complimentary remark. For *iqbal* see App. A, Form IV.

(3) The verb is in agreement with the collective term. See 17. 2.

(4) *Nálísh karná (par)* is the technical term for 'putting into court,' or 'prosecuting.'

(5) *Charsá bhar zamín se* '(starting) from a hide of land,' which means in India, as much as a pair of bullocks can irrigate in a day. See 73. 3 for the force of *kar-lená*.

(6) The object is here particularised in answer to a question; hence it stands first with *ko*. The full form of *mol-lená* 'to purchase' is rarely used. A *be-chobá* is a tent without a centre-pole. The name of the town here mentioned is one which it is difficult to transliterate. Pedantically written it should be *Fathgarh*, but this would convey no notion of the pronunciation to an ordinary reader. A former generation wrote it 'Futtyghur'; and perhaps the most intelligible compromise is 'Fatehgarh.'

(7) *Rah-numá't*, shortened from *ráh-numá't* 'road-showing.' *Ta'inát karná* 'to appoint' or 'tell off for duty' (64.). The vowel *zabar* before *ain* sounds almost as *á*. Observe *کئے* not *کیئے* as it is often printed. 83. 3.

(8) From Galib. The use of the gerund as an agent is an illustration of its flexibility (48.). The meaning of the sentence corresponds with that of 51. 5.

(9) Galib again. *Urdú men likhá hai* 'has translated into Urdú'; *ulatná* 'to turn' is another expression; *tarjuma karná* is, perhaps, the commonest. The *Bostán-Khayál* is a voluminous Persian romance, and the translation spoken of is well written.

(10) *Bhā'ī bahinon* 'brother and sister'—a compound in the Rational Plural.

(11) Translate 'What led you to, etc?'

(12) Again note the force of the compound *kar-līn*. For *musta'ār* see App. A, Form X.

(13) 'Your letter to the address of B. K. C.' The proper name and the pronoun (*ūnke*) change places in the English version.

(14) *Ap ke intizār men* 'in expectation of your coming,' which is what we call the 'Objective Genitive.' For *multawī* see App. A, Form VIII.

(15) The idea of the verb is the 'taking up a thing, and not putting it down till it is done with.' Translate 'He left nothing unsaid.'

### 86. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) I got myself laughed at to no purpose. (2) My companions made this compact among themselves. (3) A Baniya of the name of Ram Lal has caused a false complaint to be laid against me. (4) I bought two country-bred mares at Hardwar for my own use. (5) You have written about many subjects in your report. (6) My mother-in-law gave me no share at all in the house-keeping. (7) What made you let the gentleman go? (8) You undertook a very risky business. (9) I found it hard to make both ends meet on twenty rupees a month. (10) Old age has made me useless. (11) The sick man asked after the whole family one by one. (12) Why did you omit this particular item in the account? (13) The agents collected corn, grass, straw, and everything for the regiment. (14) He shot four tigers in quick succession. (15) You have treated me with great consideration in this matter.

87. *Directions.*

- (1) 'To get oneself laughed at,' *apnī hanśī karānā*.
  - (2) The phrase used in 79. 11 is equally applicable here.
  - (3) See 33. ; also 84. 4.
  - (4) 'For my own use (or riding),' *apnī*, or *khūd apnī*, or *nij kī sowārī ke li'e*. *Desī* is generally 'country-bred,' as opposed to *wildiyati* 'foreign,' which describes English horses and 'Walers.'
  - (5) Omit the word 'about,' and translate 'subjects' by the Arabic masculine plural of *matlab*, viz., *matālib*.
  - (6) The Hindustani idiom has 'entrance' (*dakhl*) instead of 'share' (*hissa*).
  - (7) See 84. 11.
  - (8) 'A risky business,' *jokhim* or *jokhon*. Use the Past Remoto.
  - (9) This idiom cannot be literally translated. Turn 'With difficulty on twenty rupees I made sufficiency.'
  - (10) 'Useless' is here *nikammā* 'do-nothing.'
  - (11) 'One by one,' *ek ek karke*, that is, 'specifying each in turn.' Omit the word 'after,' as in (5) above.
  - (12) 'This (particular) item' is *raqam ko*, the position and construction both being *particular*. 'To omit' is here *qalam-andāz karnā* 'to throw aside the reed,' as opposed to *qalam-band*.
  - (13) For the form of this sentence see 84. 3.
  - (14) 'In quick succession,' *ūpar tale*, lit. 'over and under,' 'one on the top of the other.' 'To shoot,' *bandūq mārñā*, in which the *se* is elided.
  - (15) 'To treat with consideration,' *qadr-dāñī farmāñā*.
-

## EXERCISE XII.

THE VERB *denâ* IN COMBINATION WITH CAUSAL VERBALS  
IN *î*, ETC.

Forms of the Imperative.—The Verbal *châhî'e*.

**88.** The verb *denâ*, in combination with causal verbals in *î*, has the intransitive sense of 'admit of,' as *dikhâ'î denâ*, 'to admit of being shown,' that is, 'to be visible.' Hence the subject cannot be constructed with *ne*. This appears very clearly in the following example from the *Prem Sâgar*: *Krishn âp hî bandhâ'î diye* 'Krishn let himself be bound.'

The same intransitive idea attaches to the compounds *sâth-denâ* 'to accompany,' lit. 'to give one's company to,' and *chal-denâ* 'to move on,' 'start off,' etc.

*Ho-lenâ* 'to accompany' is another example of an intransitive compound, of which the second member is transitive.

Compare the remarks made in **74. 75.**

**89.** In addition to the regular form of the Imperative, which demands immediate action, Hindî provides the termination *iyo* for an action which may be deferred; also *iye* and *iyegâ* for the intimation of a request or suggestion. In these latter *Hamza* replaces the letter *ye* in Hindustani when the base of the verb ends in a consonant, as *چلے chali'e* 'pray come.' When the base ends in *\* and *,* *hamza* separates the base and the termination, as *لائیے lá'iye* 'please bring.' Lastly, when the base ends

in *i* or *e*, the letter *jim* is inserted between base and termination, as ليجئے *lijî'e* 'please take.'

The precative of *honâ* is *hújî'e*, from an older base. The use of these forms in subordinate clauses will be considered in Part II.

**90.** The verbal *châhî'e* is in all probability a survival of the Prakrit passive in *ijja*, so that the true meaning is 'desired' or 'to be desired,' as an obligation or duty, which is the sense of the verbal in Hindustani.\* Thus the phrase *yûn hî châhî'e* means 'that's as it should be,' etc.; *tumko koshish karnî châhî'e thî* 'you ought to have tried,' in which *châhî'e thî* agrees in gender and number with the gerund.

The use of this verbal as the first member of a compound sentence will be noticed in Part II.

### 91. Translate into English:—

- (1) بڑی دور سے ایک چور جہاز دکھائی دیا (2) مطلق
- آوازیں سنائی نہ دین (3) یہ گھوڑے چھوٹکر کب
- پکڑائی دینگے (4) وہ تو آپ ہی آپ میرا ساتھ
- دیا (5) میں تو گھبرا کر چور دروازہ سے چل دیا
- (6) زمین مجھکو اصلہ دکھائی نہ دینے لگی (7) میرا
- نام لیکے میان جی سے لغت کی کتاب مانگ لائیو
- (8) ذرہ آپ اس مسودہ کو ترمیم کر دیجئے (9) فلوی
- کے غریب خانہ میں حضور شریف فرمائیے
- (10) آپ خفا نہ ہو جئے (11) پھر آپ چلے گیگا

\* See Kellogg, § 610, who quotes *sardhiye* 'it is praised,' from the Ramâyan.



کہاں (12) دوسروں کو مبتلائے آفت دیکھکر ہمکو  
 نصیحت پکڑنی چاہئے (13) آپ کو درباری کپڑے  
 پہننے چاہئیں (14) تجھکو اپنی خطا کا اقرار کرنا  
 چاہئے تھا (15) بہر حال آرام طلب نہ ہونا چاہئے

## 92. Notes.

(1) *Chor-jahâz* 'a pirate-ship.' Compare *chor-darwâza* (5) 'a secret door' or 'postern.' Synonyms for *dikhû'î denâ* are *nazar ânâ* or *nazar parnâ*, the latter of which conveys the sense of a sudden or unexpected appearance.

(2) *Âwâz*, the sound of voices of men or animals; *âhat*, the sound of steps. For *mutlaq* (adverb) see App. A, Form IV.

(3) *Chhûtnâ* 'being loose' is the simple verb of which *chhornâ* 'setting loose' is the first causal, by change of *ṭ* to the cognate *ṛ* (both cerebrals), and modification of the long vowel of the base. The second causal is *chhurânâ* 'causing to set loose,' 'liberating.'

(4) *Âp hî âp* 'of his own accord'; *merâ sâth* 'companionship with me' (objective genitive). *Merâ sâth denâ* is therefore much the same thing as *merc sâth ânâ*.

(6) *Aslân*, an Arabic accusative, used adverbially in the sense of 'entirely,' 'radically.' *Mutlaq* (1) might have been equally *mutlaqân*.

(7) *Merâ nâm leke* 'in my name,' like the phrase used at 68. 2. *Mâng-lânâ* 'to ask for and bring.'

(8) *Musawwada* 'draft of letter,' etc., conveniently pronounced *musawda*. This verbal, like *muqaddama* (84. 14) belongs to App. A, Form II. In these cases the participle is nominalized by the addition of *ah*.

(9) The inferior speaks of his house as a 'poor' house in the usual self-abasing style; in *tashrif farmâ'iye*, *tashrif* means 'honouring by a visit'; and the sentence may be translated, 'Please, your excellency, do me the honour of entering my humble abode.' Similarly, *tashrif lândâ* means 'to come,' *tashrif le-jânâ* 'to go' in native etiquette.

(11) 'Then, where will you be-pleased-to-go?' the position of the interrogative implying there is nowhere to go.

(12) Note here the form of the Persian *izâfat* after a word end-

ing in *á*. *Pakarní* 'to grasp,' where we use the milder expression 'take.' For *muhtalá* see App. A, Form VIII.

(13) *Darbári kapre*, to a native, is 'full-dress.'

(14) See the example given in 90.

(15) *Ba-har-hál*, lit. 'under all circumstances' or 'in every way.'

In the English idiom the negative is joined to the adverbial phrase. Compare with this the idiom of 68. 11.

### 93. Translate into Hindustani:—

- (1) The sails of a ship were visible ten miles off.
- (2) He took leave and departed. (3) He accompanied us half-way. (4) Please wire me information of his approach.
- (5) He ought to have taken warning from his brother's punishment. (6) Their language was quite unintelligible to me. (7) Explain to me the author's meaning. (8) Be good enough to write down your instructions in detail.
- (9) Kindly honour me with a visit to-morrow or the next day. (10) The guns were audible at a distance of forty *kos*. (11) The advance-guard of the enemy came in sight across the Satej. (12) Pray be not out-of-heart.
- (13) In no case ought you to treat the people harshly. (14) Pray make no ceremony about entering the courtyard of my house. (15) There should be no *parda* between relations.

### 94. Directions.

(1) Turn this: 'At a distance (*fásila*) of ten miles,' etc.

(2) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle for first verb, and see 44. 1.

(3) 91. 4. 'Half-way,' in the idiom of Hindustani, is 'up to half distance.'

(4) Turn 'By means of wire send me,' etc. 'Approach,' *tashrif-áwari*, which is the Persian original of the phrase *tashrif lána*,

92. 9.

- (5) On the model of 91. 12 with due regard to tense.
- (6) Use the idiom explained in 88.
- (7) 'Meaning' has several representatives in Hindustani according to the context, such as *ma'nî*, *matlab*, *irâda*, *manshâ*, of which the last is best here. 'To explain' or 'expound,' *tashrîh-karnâ*.
- (8) Prefix the phrase *mehrbânî karke*. 'To write down,' *tahrîr farmânâ*.
- (9) Use the verb of 91. 9. Omit the conjunction 'or.'
- (10) See 91. 2; but say 'voice of guns.'
- (11) The 'vanguard' of an army is *pesh-lashkar*; the 'rear-guard,' *pas-lashkar*. 'Across the Satlej,' *Satlaj pâr*. For the verb use *nazar-parnâ*.
- (12) See 91. 15. 'To treat harshly,' *ziyâdatî karnâ (par)*.
- (13) Turn 'Honour me by entering without ceremony,' etc.
- (14) Turn this interrogatively: 'What *parda* is wanted (*châhî'e*) among relations?'

## EXERCISE XIII.

## USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

## (1) Substantival.

95. The Participles, to use the Latin term, play an important part in idiomatic Hindustani; and familiarity with their usage and construction is a test of scholarship. Native grammarians treat them as verbal nouns, a term which includes adjectives, and have adopted the Arabic terms *ism-fâ'il (nomen agentis)*, and *ism-maf'ûl (nomen patientis)* for the Imperfect and Perfect Participles respectively. As compared with other nouns, they convey the idea of *status*, more or less lasting and continuous; and this is heightened by the addition of the auxiliary *hûâ*. See 5. 11.

There is no difference in the Participles in the matter of construction, and they will be treated together in the following sections in the order of usage, as, (1) Substantival; (2) Adjectival; (3) Adverbial.

**96.** As verbal nouns, the Participles may stand alone in a concrete or abstract sense, but are oftenest used in the construct form before an affix or postposition; as, *jâgte men* 'in a waking state' or 'while awake'; *sunte ke sâth* 'concurrently with hearing' or 'immediately on hearing'; *kahe se* 'by order,' etc.

The Perfect Participle, in combination with the prepositions *bin*, *be*, *bagair*, etc., all of which mean 'without' privative, supplies a specially useful idiom in such forms as *be mere âe hûe* 'without my having come'; *be khâe* 'without having eaten,' etc.

In all these cases the verbal and the postposition or preposition taken together are adverbial phrases. The strictly adverbial construction, in which the governing particles are suppressed, belongs to the third head. See Exercise XV.

**97.** Translate into English:—

- (1) مرتا کیا نہیں کرتا (2) لڑتوں کے پیچھے  
 بھاگتوں کے آگے (3) فقیر جوگی گسائیں وغیرہ راہ  
 چلتوں کے سر ہوتے ہیں (4) علام آپ کا بلایا ہوا  
 حاضر ہی (5) مجھکو جاگتے میں وہی جن نظر آیا  
 (6) سنتے کے ساتھ اوسکا جی للچایا (7) کہے سے  
 کوئی کوئے میں نہیں گر پڑتا (8) سرتے سے اوتھکر  
 ضرور بیمار کے پیاس لگیگی (9) سمجھائے سے

شاید دو روپیہ پر راضی ہو جائے (10) جوان ہوئے پر  
 کچھ اس سے زیادہ صورت نکل آئیگی (11) مرض  
 کی تشخیص بغیر دیکھے ہوئے مریض کے کیونکر ہو  
 سکتی (12) جامع مسجد کے منار کو بے گز بے  
 رسی اور بے اوپر گئے کون ناپ سکے

### 98. Notes.

(1) A proverbial expression—'What will not a dying man do?' that is, a man will do anything when driven to extremities.

(2) Also proverbial; descriptive of a coward.

(3) *Râh-chaltâ*, exactly our 'way-farer.' *Sir honâ*, for *sir par honâ* 'to pester,' 'sit upon,' etc. As regards the gentry spoken of, it is quite unnecessary to translate the appellatives in detail. 'Religious mendicants' will answer the purpose.

(4) Literally, 'Slave, having been called of you, is in attendance,' that is, 'I am present at your summons.'

(5) *Jâgte men* 'as I lay awake.' *Jinn*, the 'Genius' of the *Alf Laila*.

(6) *Sunte ke sâth* 'immediately on hearing (of it).'

(7) Proverbial. *Kahe se* 'by order.'

(8) *Sote se* 'from a state of sleeping' or 'sleep.' The Past Con-junctive Participle agrees with the subject of discourse (66.). For the idiom of *ke* here see 52. 15.

(9) *Samjhâe se*, 'by having been made to understand,' but the sentence cannot be translated literally. For *râzî* see App. A, Form I.

(10) *Jawân hâe par*, lit. 'on having grown up,' that is, 'when he is grown up.' *Sûrat* is 'personal appearance,' generally in the sense of 'good looks.'

(11) *Bagair dekhe hâe mariz ke* 'without a sight of the patient.'

(12) *Be âpar ga'e* 'without having ascended it.'

### 99. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) My fingers are not under my control on account of their trembling. (2) Grief at my departure is still felt

by them. (3) Give the carmen the usual return-hire. (4) His proficiency will be first-rate when he is grown up. (5) How can you know the drift of the petition without reading it? (6) He departed without taking leave. (7) On my checking the accounts the treasurer's dishonesty was exposed. (8) Who can tell the breadth of the Ganges without crossing it? (9) Mere disgust will be caused by such familiarity. (10) He will agree to take service if he is made to understand its advantages. (11) We have come at your summons only. (12) I shall have to give the broker his commission.

### 100. Directions.

- (1) 'Under my control,' *kahe men*. Omit the pronoun 'their' also.
- (2) 'Grief at my departure,' *mere ga'e kâ qalaq*. 'To be felt,' *dil men lagnâ*.
- (3) 'Return-hire,' *phirtâ*.
- (4) 'When he is grown up' see **97. 10**. Instead of the word for 'proficiency' used at **44. 8**, which means rather 'preparedness,' choose here *mahârat* 'skill' or 'expertness.'
- (5) On the model of **97. 11**.
- (6) For the verb see **88**.
- (7) Use the form given in **97. 6**, and express the 'my' by *mujhko* placed after the adverbial phrase. 'To check accounts,' *hisâb sentnâ*. 'To be exposed,' *khulnâ*. The student will have noticed by this time the constant use of neuter verbs in Hindustani where the Passive Voice is the English mode.
- (8) 'Without crossing it,' *be pâ'r hu'e*.
- (9) 'By such familiarity,' *is tarah munh-lagâ'e se*. The idea of the term here used is something like that of our 'cheek by jowl.'
- (10) Use the phrase given in **97. 9**, omitting in translation 'its advantages.' 'To agree to take,' *qabûl kar-lenâ*.
- (11) As in **97. 4**.
- (12) For the form of verb see **51. 2**. 'Commission,' *dhartâ*, which lit. means 'putting something down.'

## EXERCISE XIV.

## USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

## (2) Adjectival.

**101.** (1) As attributive adjectives the Participles agree with the nouns they qualify, whether subject or object; and in this usage the idioms of English and Hindustani are very similar, but in the case of the Imperfect Participle the English adjectival use of such transitives as 'interesting,' 'amusing,' etc., cannot be imitated in Hindustani. Recourse is had to Persian or Arabic verbals, or to the adjectival use of nouns with *izâfat*, as explained in **24**. Thus, 'an interesting book' may be translated *dilchasp kitâb* 'a heart-clinging book,' or *maza kî kitâb* a 'book of flavour.'

(2) As predicative adjectives also the Participles may agree with the nouns to which they refer; as, *woh hanstâ hûû phirtâ hai* 'he goes about laughing'; but when the Participle thus used has an adverbial sense, as in the example given, where 'laughing' might be read 'laughingly,' Hindustani, like English, has an alternative method of construction. This will be explained in the next Exercise.

**102.** Translate into English:—

- (1) چادان میں پھوٹا پانی بہر دو (2) دنیا میں  
 آنکھوں دیکھی بات کا سب سے برہکر اعتبارھی  
 (3) بڑوں کی خدمت میں دلی زبان سے بولنا  
 (4) چلتی کسر کی تعریف لکھو (5) اب دئی

ہوئے خط مستقیم پر ایک مثلث بناؤ (6) میں نے  
ایک مٹھور بھسے سے بھری ہوئی گودام میں رکھی  
ہوئی دیکھی (7) غول کمرے میں فرش بچھا ہی  
(8) کیا تیرے پائوں میں مینہدی لگی ہی (9) خاصکر  
سینا بڑی پتاماری کا کام ہی (10) لڑکا ہنستا  
ہوا کولھے پر چڑھ بیٹھا (11) یہ پلنک پر پڑا ہوا  
آدمی کون ہی (12) آئے دن کا جھگڑا روز روز کی  
لڑائی گویا اس گاؤں کی پھٹکار ہی

### 103. Notes.

(1) *Phátá* 'broken,' that is, 'boiling.' Note the difference of idiom in the use of the word 'fill.' In (6), on the other hand, the idioms of the two languages correspond.

(2) *Ánkhon (kí) dekhí bát* 'an eye-witnessed affair,' in other words, 'the report of an eye-witness.' *Sab se barhkar*, an adverbial use of the Past Conjunctive Participle, 'more than all,' equivalent to *ziyáda*.

(3) Here the adjective *bará* is used substantively in the sense of 'elder.' *Khidmat men*, lit. 'in the service of,' is a conventional phrase for 'to.' *Dabí zabán se* 'with depressed tongue,' that is, 'quietly' or 'gently' or 'with bated breath.'

(4) *Chaltí kasr* means 'a progressive fraction,' that is, 'a recurring decimal. *Ta'rif* 'definition,' our word 'tariff.' For pronunciation of the *a* see 85. 7.

(5) *Dî'e*, the Hindustani form of *dîye*. See 83. 3. For *mustaqîm* see App. A, Form X.

(6) Translate *rakhí hú'í* 'standing,' so as to avoid the ambiguity of 'placed' in the English sentence.

(7) *Gol-kamará* 'company-room,' generally used for our term 'drawing-room.' *Bichhá (hú'á) hai*, not a Past Tense of the intransitive, though in many cases it is very difficult to distinguish between the usages.

(8) A proverbial expression—'Have you got *henna* on your feet (that you are afraid of moving) ?'



(9) Illustrative of **101**. *Pittā-mārī kā kām* 'a spleen-striking job,' which may be translated 'irritating (or vexatious or tiresome) work.' *Khāskar* 'especially,' not a Past Conjunctive Participle, but an adjective with designative particle *kar* attached.

(10) *Kothā*, the flat roof of Oriental houses.

(12) *Āe din kā jhagrā* 'quarrelling every day that comes,' that is, 'daily quarrelling.' See **37**. 6.

### 104. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Just silence that barking dog. (2) I received this thriving business by inheritance from my forefathers. (3) He presented me to-day with a talking-bird in a cage. (4) All men eat the bread given by God. (5) The cloth is laid. (6) In illustration of this, I remember a very amusing anecdote. (7) These made-up speeches are disagreeable to me. (8) Fill the bucket with boiling porridge. (9) The coward in alarm retraced his steps. (10) A large number of interesting books are in the library. (11) The army in retreat reached the frontier with much difficulty. (12) Proceeding through the market he receives and returns the salutations of the people.

### 105. Directions.

(2) Turn 'In inheritance from forefathers to me,' etc. 'A thriving business,' *chaltā kārkhāna*.

(3) 'In a cage' must be expanded in Hindustani to 'placed or fixed in a cage,' *pinjre men lagī hūī*.

(4) 'By' must be translated here by the sign of *izāfat*, as in **97**. 4.

(5) As in **102**. 7.

(6) For the verb see **44**. 3.

(7) 'Made-up speeches,' *bandī hūīn bāten*. See also **44**. 12.

(8) For 'boiling' use here *khaultâ hûâ*.

(9) 'In alarm,' *khauf khâkar*, i.e. 'having absorbed fear.' Compare 71. 7. To 'retrace steps' is *ulte pâ'on (se) phirnâ*.

(10) See 101.

(11) 'In retreat,' *bhâgtî hû't*, in agreement with *fauj*. 'With much difficulty,' *barî mushkil se, barî barî mushkilon se, hazâr mushkilon se*.

(12) 'Proceeding through the market,' *bâzâr hotâ hû'â*. See 79. 14. Omit 'and returns,' because the word *lenâ* includes this. He who does not return a *salâm* is supposed not to receive it.

## EXERCISE XV.

### USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

#### (3) Adverbial.

**106.** The Adverbial construction is that in which the Participle is in the construct form with postpositional affix *men* suppressed. Thus, to recur to the example given in 96, instead of *jâgte men* 'in a waking state,' we might have *jâgte hûe* or *jâgte jâgte* 'while awake,' the latter form having sometimes an intensive and sometimes a continuative sense.\*

Similarly, an alternative phrase for *sunte ke sâth* is *sunte hî men*, or, adverbially, *sunte hî* 'immediately on hearing'—a form of expression so frequently employed that Platts makes it an integral part of his verb scheme.

Precisely in the same manner, the predicative Participle *hanstâ hûâ*, in the example given in 101. (2), may be

\* Examples of Participial adverbs in English are 'lovingly,' 'devotedly,' etc., and in Latin, *libenter, concisè*, etc.

adverbially constructed as *hanste hûe* 'laughingly,' or *hanste hanste* 'continuously laughing.'

**107.** (1) When the subject of a transitive verb takes the sign of the agent *ne*, concord with a predicating Participle is disallowed, and the Participle must be adverbially constructed. In this case the Participle generally stands before the agent with *ne*. As, *chalte hûe Begam ne mujhse kahâ*, 'as she was going, the Begam said to me.'

(2) Similarly, when the object of a transitive verb takes *ko*, concord with a predicating Participle is barred, and the Participle is either constructed adverbially, or absolutely, without inflection, as, *main ne úsko rote (or rotâ) pâyâ* 'I found him or her weeping.' *Main ne úsko bairthe hûe (or bairthâ hûû) dekhâ* 'I saw him or her seated.'

In these examples, and generally, the absolute construction is preferable, as being unambiguous.

**108.** When the predicating Participle has an object of its own, the adverbial construction is indispensable. For example, (1) *main takrâr karte hûe (or karte karte) thak-gayâ* 'I was tired with wrangling.'

Alternative, but not equally exact, renderings of the English expression would be, *main takrâr karne se thak-gayâ*, or *main takrâr kar-karke thak-gayâ*.

(2) *Woh bahâna ki'e hû'e thâ* 'he was pretending,' all along, not at some particular time, which would be *kartâ thâ*.

**109.** Translate into English:—

(1) دیکھتے ہی اوس نے اپنے بھائی کے دستخط

پہچانے (2) ہوتے ہوتے کل انتظام ملکی و مالی

- ہمارے ہاتھ لگا (3) اوسکو دن بھر روتے گذرا ہی  
 (4) میرے رھتے تجھکو ان باتوں میں کیا دخل  
 (5) ناحق بیٹھے بٹھے اپنی ہنسی کرائی کیا ضرور  
 ہی (6) خط لکھتے لکھتے معلم نے ہیضہ کیا  
 (7) ظالم نے مجھکو اور میری بی بی کو غافل سوتا  
 پاکر دریا میں ڈال دیا (8) اپنے گھوڑے کو میخ سے  
 باندھا ہوا چھوڑ آیا ہوں (9) ضرور پھٹے ہوئے بادلوں  
 میں آپ نے چاند کو بھاگتے ہوئے دیکھا ہوگا (10) دو  
 لونڈیاں چراغ لئے ہوئے اندر سے نکلیں (11) لڑکی  
 کل اسی وقت کا کھائے ہوئے ہی (12) وزیر نے ڈرتے  
 ڈرتے دے پائوں آکے دیکھا

### 110. Notes.

(1) *Dekhte hī* 'as soon as he saw it.' *Dast-khatt* is here used as a plural.

(2) *Hote hote* 'gradually.' For the verb see 51. 13.

(3) Translate 'He or she passed the whole day (in) weeping.'

(4) *Mere rahte (men)* 'while I am here.'

(5) See 87. 1. *Baithe-bithāe (men)*, lit. 'seated and making others sit,' for an explanation of which see *Taubat*, VII. 73. The general sense of the phrase is 'doing nothing.' The particular shade of meaning must be determined from the context. Translate here, 'without an effort to avoid it.'

(6) *Khatt likhte likhte* 'as he was writing his letters.' *Haiza karnā*, 'to be seized with cholera.' For *mo'allim* see App. A, Form II.

(7) *Gāfil sotā* 'sound asleep.' Compare the English phrase 'sleep of forgetfulness.' *Be-khabar* is synonymous with *gāfil* in this connection.

(8) *Mekh se bāndhā hū* 'tethered to a peg,' in our idiom.

(9) This sentence (from Nazir Ahmed) illustrates both the adjectival and adverbial usage. *Bhāgte hū* or *bhāgtā hū*, 107. 2, 'scudding.'

(10) *Chirāg līe hū* 'lamp in hand' or 'with a lamp.' *Līe hū*

even corresponds with our 'with' in such a phrase as 'a man with a lion-like face,' *sher kâ sâ munh lî'e hâ'e*. Comp. **68**. 2.

(11) From the *Taubat*. *Khânâ* is understood after *kâ*. Translate 'the girl has eaten nothing since this time yesterday,' for a literal version is out of the question.

(12) This short sentence illustrates three participial forms. *Dabe pâon (se)* 'with subdued or gentle tread,' or, as we put it, 'on tiptoe.' See **102**. 3.

### 111. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) It is a vexation at my age to be learning the alphabet. (2) Small and great have eaten nothing since this time yesterday. (3) Who is that person with the lion-like countenance? (4) I found only this shop open in the market-place. (5) As she was going away the Begam offered me a gold mohur. (6) The Afghans conquered the Panjab by degrees. (7) Unseen by others the women were exposing their heads from inside the zenâna. (8) The whole of them were left gazing at each other's faces. (9) A Maulavi, with prayer-mat spread, was engaged in his devotions inside the mosque. (10) I had made up my mind that this valley was my tomb. (11) As soon as he heard the rumour, he was dismayed. (12) While I am here, do not speak of bribery even by mistake.

### 112. Directions.

(1) See **68**. 4. 'To be learning the alphabet,' *alif-be parhte hâe*.

(2) On the model of **109**. 11. The adverbial construction of the Participle is independent of gender and number.

(3) See **110**. 10.

(4) 'Open,' *khulâ hââ*.

(5) 'As she was going away,' *chalte hâe*. 'Offered' may be here

idiomatically translated *dene lagfn* 'began to give,' the verb being Pl. Fem.

(6) See **109. 2.**

(7) 'Unseen by others,' *ánkh bachá*, lit. 'having escaped the eye.' Use the idiom of **108. (2)**, *sir nikále thán*, for the idea is that the women were continuously peeping out at some unusual sight.

(8) Use the idiom described at **25.** for the subject, and also for the participial phrase 'gazing,' *dekhte ke dekhte*.

(9) 'With prayer-mat spread,' *jáe namáz {bichháe*. The 'devotions' of a Moslem are known as *sijda*, and *masjid* is the 'place of *sijda*.' See App. A, Rem. **5. (3)**.

(10) 'I had made up my mind,' *samjhe húe thá*, because descriptive of the state of despair the speaker felt at the time. *Alf Laila*.

(11) Use the adverbial form of **109. 1.**

(12) See **109. 4.** 'Even by mistake,' *bhúlkar bhí*.

## EXERCISE XVI.

### USAGE AND CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

#### Supplementary.

**113.** This exercise is reserved for illustration of the usage of the Participles in connection with time and its measurement.

The old method of dividing day and night into eight *pahar* and again the *pahar* into eight *gharí* is still current, especially in the country districts and in native States.\* Rude water-clocks (*jal-yantrá*) still mark the *pahar*, which is sounded (*bajnú*) by the *pahrí* 'watch-

\* The expression *áth-pahar* or *áthon pahar* 'the whole eight watches,' often occurs in the sense of 'day and night,' 'the twenty-four hours,' etc. *Chausath gharí* is used in the same way. *Ath-pahrí* is a watchman employed day and night.

man,' on a gong (*ghantá*). Modern Hindustani appropriates the word *gharí* for a 'watch' or 'clock,' and *ghantá* for 'hour,' according to the English reckoning, and *bajá* or *baje* for 'o'clock.' Thus, *do pahar* 'noon,' 47. 3, becomes *bárah ghante baje* or *bárah baje* 'twelve o'clock'; and the quarters are *sawá bárah*, *sárhe bárah*, and *paune ek* ('quarter less than one'), respectively. *Derh bajá* is 'half-past one.' The word 'minute' منٹ is used, and occurs first, in literature, in the Urdú version of the *Arabian Nights* (1847), *ka'í minit ke ba'd* 'after several minutes.'

#### 114. Translate into English:—

- (1) کوئی دو تین گھڑی دن چڑھتے چڑھتے شہر میں
  - (2) دن ڈبے ڈبے رانی کا پنکھا
  - (3) کوئی پھر سوا پھر دن چڑھے جاگا
  - (4) وہاں گئے مجھکو تین ساڑھے تین مہینے ہو گئے
  - (5) کیوں اتنی رات گئے تم آئے (6) بہت سویرے
  - (7) کچھ رات رہے سے اوٹھا (7) میری آنکھیں کچھ
  - (8) دن رہے سے بند ہونے لگتی ہیں (8) دو پھر پڑے
  - (9) پڑے گذر گئی۔ کروت تک نہیں بدلی (9) توپ
  - (10) دغی سے پہلے گاڑی جو تو (10) فجر ہوتے ہی
  - (11) میرا کوچ کرنے کا قصد ہی (11) کمبخت مرے دم
  - (12) تک بھی اپنی شرارت سے باز نہ آیا (12) ایک پاؤ
  - (13) گھنٹے میں تو بیماری دوا دعا جانکنی مرنا سب
  - (13) کچھ ہو چکتا تھا (13) کی جے ہیں - اب تو پونے
  - (14) آٹھ جے ہیں (14) ڈیڑھ جے سے لیکر شام تک
  - (15) مباحثہ لگا رہا (15) تیرے گھڑی گھڑی کی بلا
- دور رہے

## 115. Notes.

(1) *Din charhnâ* 'ascending day,' that is, *ante meridiem* time from sunrise: the repetition of the Participle marking the gradual progress of time, 'the course of the morning.' *Do tîn gharî* is 'about an hour' of our time; and, as literal translation is out of the question in idiomatic sentences of this kind, we may render the whole phrase 'about an hour after sunrise.'

(2) Similarly, *din dubnâ* or *din dhalnâ* is 'declining day,' that is *post meridiem* time till sunset. 'The Râni's *pankha*' is the local name of a breeze which always springs up towards evening in a gorge near Ranibagh, where the 'Kâth-godown' dâk-bungalow used to stand, on the road from Bareilly to Nainî Tâl.

(3) Note the variation in the Participle as compared with (1): and translate 'the forenoon was well advanced when he awoke.' By our reckoning the phrase would mean 'between nine and a quarter to ten.'

(4) A very useful and common mode of expressing lapse of time. The meaning is obvious.

(5) 'Why have you come so late at night?' The construction is *itnî râ't (ke) ga'e (se)*.

(6) Similarly, *kuchh râ't (ke) rahe (se)* 'while it was yet night.'

(7) *Mutatis mutandis*, translate as in (6).

(8) This may be freely translated, 'noon passed as he lay on and on—he did not even turn in his sleep.' *Tak* is adverbially used in the sense of 'so much as,' or 'even.' *Karvat* means 'lying on one side,' and *karvat badalnî* is 'changing to the other side.'

(9) *Top dagî* is the morning 'gun-fire' in Indian cantonments. *Gârl joto* 'put the horses to (the carriage),' literally, 'yoke the carriage.'

(10) *Fajar hote hî* 'as soon as the day breaks.' Comp. 109. 1. *Barî fajar*, like *bahut savere* (6), means 'very early.'

(11) *Marte dam tak* 'up to the time of his death.' For 'after death,' so exact are these usages, the Perfect Participle would be necessary, as *mare pichhe uskî sharârat khulî* 'his wickedness was exposed after his death.'

(12) From Nazir Ahmed's graphic description of the cholera in the *Taubat*.

(13) *Kai baje hain* 'what o'clock is it?'—*lit.* 'how many hours have sounded?' The answer follows.



(14) The Past Conjunctive Participle is here adverbial, and, if translated at all, corresponds to our 'counting.'

(15) *Tere gharî gharî kî balâ dâr rahe* 'for thee may the evil of every *gharî* be remote,' that is, 'May you be hourly blessed'—a common benediction. *Tere*, not *tujhe*, on the principle explained in 52. 15. This sentence is peculiarly interesting as the first bit of Hindustani recorded by an Englishman, and that so far back as the reign of Jelhangir, in whose son's time Urdû is said to have first taken shape as a vernacular. Terry writes the sentence *tere gree gree kee bulla doore*, as it sounded to him. See *Voyage to India*, p. 216. He records two other words only, viz., *ca-ca-ta* (sic), by which he meant *kyâ kahtâ* 'what does he say?' This interesting work has long been out of print.

### 116. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) At what o'clock will the train leave? (2) It is some twenty days yet to the examination. (3) It must be a month since he went on tour. (4) Why do you leave off work so early? (5) Why did you get up so late? (6) Office-work goes on from ten till five. (7) Our regiment reached the camping ground before daylight. (8) Who can have come to see me so late at night? (9) As the morning advanced an island began to be visible in the distance. (10) As day declined an adverse wind began to blow. (11) Do not strike the hour without my giving you the signal first. (12) The moon rises at eleven to-night. (13) Will you not see him when you start? (14) After having been admonished he coolly committed another bit of villainy. (15) I shall not forget your kindness as long as I live.

### 117. Directions.

(1) *Rel* stands for 'train' as well as 'railway.' The right word here for 'leave' is *chhûtnâ*. See 92. 3.

(2) Turn thus: 'As yet of the examination some twenty days

are lying (*pare hain*).' For the use of the sign of *izôfat* compare the phrase given at **54. 6**. The idea of *pare hain* is that the days are lying unspent as yet.

(3) As in **114. 4**. The tense of the verb will be Past Presumptive.

(4) 'So early,' *itnâ din rahe se*. **114. 7**.

(5) 'So late,' *itnâ din charhe*. **114. 3**.

(6) See **114. 14**. *Das baje se lekar pânch tak*. 'To go on,' in this sense, *jâri honâ*.

(7) See **114. 6**.

(8) See **114. 5**. 'To come to see,' *mulâqât ko ânâ*. Use the Past Dubious tense.

(9) See **114. 1**. Also **91. 6**.

(10) See **114. 2**. 'Adverse wind,' *ultî hawâ*, or *bâd-i-mukhâlif*.

(11) 'Without my,' etc., *be mere ishâra dîe hûe*. See **96**.

(12) The rising of the moon may be picturesquely rendered *khet karnâ*, of which the idea is the gradual clearance of the sky and land from the previous darkness. Otherwise the common verb *nikalnâ* suffices.

(13) 'When you start,' *chalte waqt*. *Milnâ* is the proper expression for 'see' here, as in (8) above, where *mulâqât* is equivalent to *milnâ*.

(14) 'After having been admonished,' *tambîh hûe pîchhe*. For 'coolly' use the adverbial expression explained at **110. 5**. 'Another bit of villainy,' *ek aur sharârat*.

(15) 'As long as I live,' *jîte jî*.

## EXERCISE XVII.

### THE PARTICIPLES IN COMBINATION WITH *jânâ*.

- (1) Progressives.      (2) Passives.

**118.** The addition of the tenses of the verb *jânâ* to the Imperfect Participle in predicative concord with the subject of a sentence supplies a verbal combination,

which is called by some grammarians a Progressive Compound verb. Thus, *woh kahtâ gayâ* 'he went on saying.'

The verb *rahnâ* may be used in the same way, and is perhaps preferable when the Participle is intransitive, but there is little to choose between them, just as in English, 'to go on sleeping' or 'to remain sleeping' are much the same thing.

We may notice here the curious combination *jâtâ rahnâ* 'to remain going' till the vanishing point is reached; hence, 'to vanish.'

**119.** Similarly, the addition of the tenses of *jânâ* to the Perfect Participle of transitive verbs supplies the verbal conjugation known to us as the Passive Voice: as *woh mâre jāenge* 'they will be struck.' Native grammarians have borrowed the Arabic term *majhûl* 'unknown' for this form of the verb, because the agent is not specified, in opposition to *ma'rûf* 'known,' our Active Voice.

Except in translations from English, which even in native hands are too apt to follow the English idiom, the use of the Perfect Participle in this construction is comparatively infrequent in Hindustani, for, in addition to Hindî intransitives of passive signification, the language has been enriched by a large store of Persian and Arabic verbals, which combine with the substantive verb *honâ* in a passive sense. To take an example, 'to be conquered' is no doubt capable of being rendered *jîtâ jânâ*, from *jîtnâ* 'to conquer'; but *hârnâ*, *shikast khânâ*, *maglûb honâ*, etc., are best suited to the idiom of the language.

**120.** Again, though the patient in the passive construction poses as the subject of the verb, it is still the

object of the act; and in recognition of this the Hindustani idiom admits the use of the sign of the object with pronouns and proper names (comp. 65.), in which case the passive become impersonal, as, *úsko dekhâ jáegâ* 'he shall be looked to.' Hence the use of *dekhâ jáegâ* in the general sense of 'the matter shall be seen to.'

A similarly impersonal usage is observable in negative expressions which convey the idea of impossibility, such as, *qismat se larâ nahín játú* 'there is no fighting against fate.' Compare with this the construction explained in 56.

121. A curious but common idiom is the addition of the verbs *jánâ* and *ánâ* to the Perfect Participles of intransitive verbs of motion, in a progressive or completive sense according to the context; as, *sab log chale gae* 'all went away'; *larkî daurî átí hai* 'the girl comes racing along,' etc.

### 122. Translate into English :—

- (i) آو ہم سب باری باری سے اپنا نام اور اپنے  
 مان باپ کا نام بتاتے جائیں (2) تعلیم نسوان میرا  
 ذمہ بڑھتی اور پھیلتی جائیگی (3) وہ اسی طرح  
 ہر ایک سے پہچان پہچان گلے ملتا گیا (4) اب  
 تم ایک سرے سے سب کچھ کو دیکھتے جاؤ  
 (5) باوجود چشم نمائی کے گستاخ اور شریر ہوتا  
 گیا (6) آنکھ کھولکے ریل کو آتے جانے دیکھتا رہا  
 (7) اس قدر اصراف سے سارا مال جاتا رہیگا  
 (8) مقدمہ کا ملتوی کیا جانا اونکو سبب ناگوار ہوا  
 (9) دہلی کے محاصرہ میں قریب دس ہزار آدمی

- مارے گئے (10) محتمم اخبار کو تلاش کیا جائے  
 (11) کرایہ داروں سے مجھکو سیکڑوں روپیہ ماہواری  
 چلا آتا ہی (12) منہ اندھیرے آدمی حکیم کے  
 پاس دوڑا گیا

### 123. Notes.

- (1) *Bārt bārt se* 'each in turn'; the repetition is distributive.  
 (2) *Ta'lim-i-niswān* 'female education.' *Merā zimma* 'my warrant for it,' or 'I warrant,' is parenthetic.  
 (3) *Pahchān pahchān* 'as he recognised them in turn'; *har ek se* depends on *gale miltā gayā*, 'he went on embracing.'  
 (4) He was to begin at one end of the row of oil-skins and inspect each. From the story of the Forty Thieves.  
 (5) *Hotā gayā* 'he grew more and more,' etc.—very different from *ho-gayā* 'became.'  
 (6) *Ānkh kholke* 'with eyes wide opened' in astonishment.  
 (7) See 118. *sub finem*.  
 (8) *Multavī kiyā jānā* 'the being adjourned,' 'adjournment.' The verbal *iltiwā*, from the same root, means the same thing. See 84. 14.  
 (9) *Māre ga'e* 'were killed.' *Khet rahe* 'were left on the field' is an alternative expression.  
 (10) 'Let the editor of the paper be searched for'; *talāsh-karnā* being a compound verb. See 120.  
 (11) *Chalā ātā hai* 'comes regularly in.'  
 (12) *Munh andhere*, *lit.* 'when it was too dark to distinguish faces,' that is, before daylight. See the expressions used at 114. 6. and 79. 12. *Daurā gayā* 'ran off.'

### 124. Translate into Hindustani:—

- (1) At the battle of Assaye (*Asāī*) some fifteen hundred men were left upon the field. (2) Let the murderer of this woman be well searched for. (3) He grows more and more saucy and unmanageable every day. (4) From small beginnings such a habit as this grows stronger and stronger. (5) That shall be seen to when we have done

with this. (6) The children were disgusted at the postponement of the story. (7) Keep watch upon him as he comes and goes. (8) I could not restrain myself. (9) Owing to your folly my character too will be lost. (10) One by one the worthless servants were turned off. (11) A kind of numbness creeps over my hands and feet. (12) The wine is oozing from the cask.

### 125. Directions.

- (1) For the verb see 123. 9.  
 (2) See 122. 10.  
 (3) 'Every day,' *roz roz*, or *roz-ba-roz*. See 122. 5.  
 (4) 'From small beginnings,' *thorē se shurū' hokar*.  
 (5) 'When we have done with this,' *is se jārig hokar*, impersonal.  
 See 120.  
 (6) On the model of 122. 8.  
 (7) See 122. 6.  
 (8) See 120. for the idiom. *Mujhse rahā nahīn gayā*.  
 (9) Turn 'my good name will vanish.' 122. 7.  
 (10) 'One by one,' *ek ek karke*, impersonal. Comp. 87. 11.  
 (11) 'A kind of numbness,' *sansantī śī*. 59. For the verb see 122. 11.  
 (12) 'Is oozing,' *niklā atā hai*.

### EXERCISE XVIII.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE IN COMBINATION WITH *karnā*  
 FORMS A CONTINUATIVE COMPOUND VERB—WITH  
*chāhñā*, A DESIDERATIVE.

Subsidiary Verbal Compounds with *jāñā*, *denā*, etc.

**126.** The Perfect Participle as a verbal noun in combination with the tenses of *karnā* denotes continuance

of state or action; and, since the state or action described by the verbal is by the nature of the case incomplete or unfinished (*ná-tamám*), the compound is constructed intransitively in those tenses of *karná* in which the subject ordinarily takes the sign of the agent, *ne*. Thus, *woh* (not *úsne*) *likhá kî* 'she continued writing.' *Likhá kî* is, in fact, just as much a Past Imperfect (*mâzî-ná-tamám*) as *likhtî thî* 'she was writing'; and in this we have another illustration of the principle laid down in **75**. that the meaning rules the construction.

**127.** Similarly, in combination with the transitive *cháhná* 'to wish for,' the Perfect Participle denotes a state or action, which is wished or willed, and therefore possibly imminent; and this compound, which is called a Desiderative, is also, by the nature of the case, intransitive. Thus, *woh likhá cháhî* 'she wished, or was about, to write'; not *úsne likhá cháhá*.

**128.** The Perfect Participle, in the construct state, with object (see **108.**), is occasionally combined with *jáná* or *rahná* in an intermittently continuative sense; as *dawá pilá'e já'o* 'continue giving the medicine (at the proper intervals),' a different thing from either *piláte jáo*, or *piláyá karo*.

**129.** Lastly, the verb *dená*, and sometimes *dálná* (see **73.** 3), is used in combination with Perfect Participles in the construct form, by way of energizing the action denoted by the associated Participle. This quasi-compound is of rare occurrence, and is practically limited to the first person singular of the present tense; as, *main tujhse kahe detá hún*, 'I tell you once for all.'

## 130. Translate into English:—

- (1) بھائی بھائی بیٹھکر بڑے لطف و تپاک سے کھایا  
 پیا کئے (2) میں ہر روز متواتر اوسکے دیکھنے  
 کو نو روز تک جایا کیا (3) میری دیکھا دیکھی وہ  
 بندری ہر روز اپنے بائیں ہاتھ کی نبض دکھایا کی  
 (4) ہم لوگوں کو آپ کا حال کیونکر معلوم ہوا کرے  
 (5) اسکے بعد ادھر ادھر کی باتیں ہوا کیں (6) آپ  
 صرف بالائی انتظام لیلیا کیجیگا (7) تجھکو اپنا  
 متبیلی کیا چاہتا ہوں (8) غضب ہوا چاہتا ہی  
 (9) جنانچہ اسی طرح آپ سے عرض کئے جائونگی  
 (10) سوتے ہوئے بال پر ہاتھ رکھے رہیو (11) میں  
 تو جاکر بچھونا وغیرہ بھیجے دیتا ہوں (12) میں  
 اس شطیر کو ابھی چیڑکر دو ٹکڑے کئے ڈالتا ہوں

## 131. Notes.

(1) The repetition of *bhā'i* here signifies plurality. *Bare lutf o tapāk se* 'with much zest and zeal.'

(2) The Arabic verbal *mutawâtir* 'consecutively,' is redundant. See App. A, Form VI. *Jayâ* is used for *gayâ*, when part of a compound verb.

(3) *Meri dekhâ-dekhtî* 'in imitation of me.' The union of a masculine and feminine verbal in this way generally denotes reciprocity of action, as *mârâ-mârî* 'mutual strife.'

(4) Translate 'How are we to be kept regularly informed of?' etc. See also 67.

(5) See 76. 12. *Hû'â kên* 'was kept up.' *Hotî rahîn* would be an alternative expression.

(6) Translate 'You will be pleased to keep in your own hands the general superintendence only.' *Bâlâ'î*, from the Persian *bâlâ* 'over.'

(7) *Mutabannâ* 'adopted son.' See App. A, Form V.



(8) Translate 'Something awful is about to happen.' *Gazab* has already occurred at **27. 8.**

(9) *Shahrzâd loquitur*, 'I shall go on asking you from time to time,' etc.

(10) *Hâth rakhe rahiyo* 'keep your hand placed.'

(11) *Bheje detâ hûn* 'I will send at once,' etc.

(12) From one of Nazir Ahmed's fables. The man boasts that he will split the beam in two *in a moment* as a specimen of his power.

### 132. Translate into Hindustani :—

(1) Undoubtedly female infanticide is practised in this district. (2) The marriage rejoicings continued for several days in succession. (3) It is on the stroke of twelve. (4) Continue giving the patient iced water. (5) I shall wear this ring on my finger in remembrance of you. (6) She came to and fro to inquire after me every day for a fortnight. (7) I am bringing dinner at once. (8) This criminal ought to be put to death. (9) I forbid you once for all. (10) On hearing the sentence the plaintiff and defendant stared at each other in astonishment. (11) While I am here let this custom be kept up. (12) Pray continue to allow him to come to me as opportunity offers.

### 133. Directions.

(1) 'Female infanticide,' *rasm-i-dukhtar-kushî*. 'To be practised,' *hûâ karnâ*.

(2) 'To continue,' *hûâ karnâ* again.

(3) Turn this, 'It is about to strike twelve'; as in **130. 8.**

(4) For the form of the verb see **128.** 'Iced water' is 'water of ice' in the Hindustani idiom.

(5) Use the same form of verb as in the last sentence, with *rahnâ* instead of *jânâ*. 'In remembrance of you,' *âp kî yâdgâri (men)*. See also **50. (1).**

(6) On the model of **130. 2.** 'To inquire after me' may be

131

translated by the Arabic gerund 'cyâdat, which is the technical word for visiting the sick.

(7) Put the verb in the form given in **129**.

(8) 'Ought to be put to death,' *qatl-kiyâ châhi'e*, in which *qatl-kiyâ* is the grammatical subject of *châhi'e*. The affix *ko* will be required for the person affected.

(9) The verb as in (7) above.

(10) 'On hearing,' *sunkar*, not *sunte hi*, which would be out of harmony with the rest of the sentence, the verb being in the Continuative form. Turn 'the plaintiff and defendant' by 'plaintiff defendant both,' *مدعى مدعا عليه دونون*. These common law terms mean 'the plaintiff and the person against whom the plaint is laid.' For the verbals see App. A, Form VIII. In both cases the augment *t* coalesces under *tashdîd* with the first radical.

(11) See **109**. 4. 'To be kept up,' *hûâ karnâ*.

(12) 'As opportunity offers' may be rendered by the idiomatic *waqt pare par* 'on occasion be-falling.' For the sense of *parnâ* see a remark made in **73**. (2).

END OF PART I.

## PART II.

# THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

---

### EXERCISE XIX.

#### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

##### (1) Relative.

**134.** When a sentence is enlarged by the insertion or addition of explanatory clauses, it is said to be a Compound Sentence, and the additional clauses are called Subordinate.

They may be conveniently classed as (1) Relative, (2) Predicative, and (3) Adverbial. The first of these is the subject of this Exercise.

**135.** Relative clauses are introduced by the pronoun *jo* 'who' or 'which,' and by the pronominal adjectives of quality and quantity, *jaisâ* and *jîtnâ*, for which English has no exact equivalents, and, as a rule, take precedence of the principal or correlative clause to which the noun explained belongs. It is customary, however, in order to avoid the uncertainty which might arise from the deferred mention of the subject of discourse, to transfer the noun to the clause which explains it. Thus: 'The man, who does not know how to read, is ignorant,' *jo âdmî parhnâ nahîn jântâ (woh) nâdân hai*. Some

authors are fond of adding the explanatory particle *ki* to the noun in this position ; as, *jo ádmí ki parhná*, etc.

When the relative clause follows the noun which it explains, as in English, it is a common practice to place this same particle *ki* either before or after the relative pronoun, or to allow it to stand alone, as the Persian representative of *jo*. Thus : *woh ádmí ki jo* (or *jo ki*) *parhná nahín jántá nádán hai*, or *woh ádmí ki parhná*, etc., or *ádmí ki woh parhná*, etc.

**136.** The Hindî correlatives *so*, *taisá*, *utná* are very rarely used in Hindustani. For the latter, the contracted form *us qadr* is chiefly used, as also is *is qadr* for *itná*, and *jis qadr* for *jitná*.

**137.** Translate into English :—

- (1) تم میں سے جو شخص لیاقت آگے چلنے کی رکھتا ہو وہ آگے چلے (2) جس بات سے دلون میں فرق پڑے کیون کی جائے (3) لوگوں نے جو کچھ سمجھا ہو غلط سمجھا (4) جسکو جس چیز کی حاجت ہی دی جائیگی (5) بعد اسکے جو چاہنا پہننا (6) جو امر کہ خلاف معمول اوس سے دیکھیو فی الفور اوسکی اطلاع مجھ سے کیجیو (7) پیشہ قضاتی کا کہ جو میری پشتوں سے چلا آیا ہی کیا کرتا ہوں (8) وہ کیسا آدمی ہی کہ جو نمک نہیں کھاتا (9) تمہاری ماں بہن اسی گھر میں کہ تم ہو ہیں (10) جیسا کہ چاہے اوس نے خمیازہ کھینچا (11) میرے پاس ایسی کوئی کتاب نہیں جو قابل حضور کے ملاحظہ کے ہو (12) ہوا کا جتنا بوجھ آپ بتائے ہیں وہ تو خلاف قیاس ہی (13) میں

جس قدر اوپر چڑھتا گیا اوسی قدر ہوا ہلکی ہوتی  
 گئی (14) جسکی جتنی آمدنی متصور ہی اوسی  
 نسبت سے چندہ وصول ہو جائے (15) غریب آدمی  
 جن میں پردہ کا رواج نہیں اونکی بہو بیٹیاں مردوں  
 کے برابر کھیتوں میں کام کرتے ہیں (16) تمہارے  
 گھر میں آکر جو دیکھا تو دین کا کچھ تذکرہ نہ پایا

### 138. Notes.

(1) *Rakhtâ ho*, the Present Dubious tense—the use of which here implies that one of the persons addressed has the right of precedence, but the speaker is uncertain which.

(2) *Kî jâ'e*, Passive Aorist in agreement with *bât*. *Farq* has the sense here of 'dissension,' *nifâq*.

(3) *Samjhâ ho*, the Past Dubious tense in agreement with *jo kuchh*. See 81.

(4) Indefinite pronouns in a relative clause often take the form of a relative pronoun, notwithstanding the presence of another relative. *Jisko* here stands for *kisî ko*, and should be translated accordingly.

(5) See 55. The Verb in the subordinate clause is assimilated to the jussive in the principal clause. The construction is *jo châhnâ (hai) pahnnâ (hai)* 'it is for you to wear what you wish to wear,' that is, 'wear what you please.'

(6) Another instance from the *Alf Laila* of the same kind of tense assimilation. *Fî'lfaur*, one of a few Arabic phrases in this form which are current in Hindustani. The sense is 'on the instant'; *fauran* 'instantly' is equally fashionable. The Persian *jald* is less forcible. For *ittilâ'* see App. A, Form VIII., and what is said of this word in the *Remarks* attached.

(7) *Pesha* is the object of the continuative *kiyâ kartâ hân* 'I am practising.' *Ki jo* might have been written *jo ki*, or *jo* might have stood alone. Similarly, *ki* might have stood alone, or we might have had *ki woh*. These alternatives exhaust the possibilities of construction in this form of sentence.

(9) *Ki* is here equivalent to *jis men*, and elegantly avoids the repetition of the locative.

(10) Reverse the order of the clauses in translation, and remember that *jaisā* is in concord with *khamyāza*.

(11) *Muldhaza* is the 'consideration' of a thing, as compared with the sister verbal *lihāz* (84. 3), which generally means 'consideration' for. See App. A, Form III.

(12) It was remarked in 135. that English has no exact equivalent for *jaisā* and *jitnā*. *Jitnā bojh* is 'the amount of weight which,' as compared with *jo bojh* 'the weight which'; but the latter is a sufficient rendering of the former, so far as English is concerned.

(13) For the verbs see 118. and translate "The higher I ascended,' etc.

(14) See (4) above. For *mutasawwar* see App. A, Form V.

(15) The construction here is analogous to the old English form, 'Mr. Pepys his diary.' The ordinary phrasing would be *garīb ādmīyon kī bahū-betiyān*; but if this had been adopted, the relative clause could not have been satisfactorily placed. *Bahū-betiyān* is a collective term for the daughters of the house, among whom, in an Indian home, the sons' wives are included.

(16) The speaker means: 'What I observed when I came into your family was, that —' etc.

### 139. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) How miserably passes the time of women who do not know how to read. (2) The girl was some six years old—in short, just the age of our Hamīda. (3) I am that very Sindbad who you suppose is dead. (4) The voices were quite inaudible owing to the cotton with which his ears were stuffed. (5) I have nothing more to say beyond what I have already told you. (6) It is very unkind to forget the past claims of aged servants who can no longer work. (7) We are in the same fix that you are. (8) The more I cherished you, the lazier and idler you became. (9) The wages which are due to anyone will be given him. (10) There is no such verse in the Qoran as you describe. (11) Is there any particular trouble which causes him annoyance? (12) What has

happened is the best for my interests. (13) The price you named was absurd. (14) Send me word immediately of whatever rumours you hear in the bazar. (15) I have no horse in my stable which is fit for you to ride. (16) What I observed when I came to court was that hair-splitting was the fashion.

### 140. Directions.

(1) Turn thus: 'Women who do not know (how) to read,' as in **135**: and insert *unkā* in the correlative clause.

(2) 'In short' may here be idiomatically translated by *bas*, parenthetic. See **51**. 12. 'Just the age of,' *bi-'ainihi jitnī*. The Arabic *bi-'ainihi* lit. means 'in the eye of it,' i.e. 'exactly.'

(3) Place 'that very Sindbad' first, and 'I am' last, with the relative clause between.

(4) Place 'owing to the cotton,' *ba-sabab rū'ī ke*, first; see also **102**. 1 and **91**. 2.

(5) Turn 'Except this which I have,' etc. See **77**. 11.

(6) The construction may be imitated from **137**. 15—'aged servants from whom work is not possible,' etc. 'Very unkind' may be translated 'great unkindness.' See **13**. 2.

(7) On the model of **137**. 9.

(8) On the model of **137**. 13.

(9) On the model of **137**. 4, but use *jitnī* instead of *jo*, in agreement with *tankhwāh*.

(10) Place 'in the Qoran' first, followed by the relative clause. 'Describe,' *batānā*.

(11) Follow the order of the clauses in the original, and begin with *khāsskar*, instead of using the adjective *khāss* 'particular.' The tense in the relative clause is the Present Dubious.

(12) 'To happen,' *zuhār men ānā*; 'for my interests,' *mere haqq men*.

(13) Repeat the verb, as in **137**. 3; thus, 'The price you named (*kahnā*) you named absurd.'

(14) On the model of **137**. 6. 'Whatever' is here best translated by *jo jo*.

(15) See **63**. 4, and **87**. 4.

(16) On the model of **137**. 16.

## EXERCISE XX.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued.*

## (2) Predicative.

**141.** Predicative clauses, that is, clauses which are part of the predicate, and without which it would be incomplete, follow the predicating verb, and are linked to it by the connectives *ki* or *jo*.

The statement, question, order, or whatever it is, by which the predicate is thus completed, is uniformly worded in direct terms (*oratio recta*), whereas in English oblique or indirect forms of expression are preferred, or the addition of a clause is avoided by the use of the infinitive or a participle.

**142.** This difference of idiom is specially puzzling to native students of English. The following examples contrast the variety of oblique expression peculiar to English with the uniformity of the Hindustani mode:—

(1) ‘He sent word that he would come to-morrow,’ *kahla-bhejâ ki kal âungâ*; lit. ‘He sent word that “I will come to-morrow.”’

(2) ‘I am glad that you have come,’ *khúsh hún jo tum â’e ho*. Here *jo*, as compared with *ki*, has the force of ‘in that’ without being distinctly causal.

(3) ‘I regret that I came,’ or ‘I regret having come,’ *pachhtâtâ hún ki main kyûn âyâ*; lit. ‘I regret that “Why did I come?”’ as if the speaker was soliloquising.

(4) ‘I fear that he will come to-day,’ *dartâ hún aisâ*



*na ho ki woh áj á-já'e* ; lit. 'I fear—"let it be not that he come to-day,"' in which the fear is expressed in words.

(5) 'He asked me who I was,' *mujhse púchhá ki tum kaun ho* ; lit. 'he asked me that "Who are you?"'

(6) 'Ask if anyone is here,' *púchho ki yahán koi hai* ; lit. 'Ask that "Is anyone here?"' To an Englishman the temptation to use *agar* instead of *ki* in this form of inquiry is almost irresistible.

(7) 'Tell him to go home,' *ús se kahdo ki tum ghar jáo* ; lit. 'tell him that "you go home."'

(8) 'You ought to go home,' *áp ko cháhí'e ki ghar já'íye*. Here *ghar já'íye* 'pray go home,' is the thought in the speaker's mind.

(9) 'My custom is to read the paper daily,' *merá yeh ma'múl hai ki roz roz akhbár parhtá hún*. Here the speaker states his custom in the predicative clause.

(10) 'I thought of going to Agra to-morrow,' *khayál áyá ki kal Agra já'ún* ; lit. 'the thought came to me that "I go to Agra to-morrow,"' the aorist merely indicating the uncertainty of the speaker's mind.

(11) 'I saw a gorilla advancing from the opposite direction,' *dekhá ki údhar se ek ban-manús chalá átá hai*, or more dramatically still, *kyá dekhtá hún ki údhar se*, etc., 'what do I see? that, etc.'

### 143. Translate into English:—

- (1) ہمارے گھر کے اچھے نصیب ہیں جو تم آئیں  
 (2) اس راہ سے ممکن نہیں کہ وہ نکلا ہو (3) تم نے  
 بے گنے کیونکر جان لیا تھا کہ ساتھ ہیں (4) وہاں  
 جا کے کیا دیکھتا ہوں کہ گرامیوں کی ٹالوں میں آگ  
 لگی (5) اوسکے ہاتھ میں ایک آئینہ دیکے کہا کہ

اب تو اپنے تئیں اور میرے تئیں دیکھ کہ کچھ بھی  
 فرق ہی (6) دل میں لہر آئی کہ ریل پر سوار  
 ہو کے آگرہ جاؤں. (7) آپ نے بڑی جوکھم اٹھائی  
 جو پیدل جا کے شیروں کا شکار کیا (8) امیدوار  
 ہوں کہ حضور تین دن کی مہلت غلام کو عنایت  
 کیجئے (9) قیافہ سے اوسکے یہ احتمال نعتھا کہ وہ  
 فریب دیتا ہوگا (10) حیران ہوں کہ منصرم کے  
 خط کا کیا جواب لکھوں (11) اخبار میں لکھا  
 دیکھا کہ پندرہویں تاریخ ماہ حال کو سورج گہن  
 دکھائی دیگا (12) سرپیٹنے کی بات ہی کہ میں نے  
 اوسکو کیوں اجازت دی (13) آپ کا نام لیکے  
 فرمایا کہ میں اونکے منتظر رہتا ہوں (14) سردار  
 سے پوچھو کہ اب تک صاحب بیدار ہی (15) لوگ  
 ڈرنے لگے ایسا نہو کہ تھانے والے غل منکر اندر  
 گھس آویں

### 144. Notes.

(1) See 142. (2). The words are addressed to a lady visitor. *Nasib* 'fortune' or 'destiny' is treated as a plural in Hindustani.

(2) In reply to a suggestion; hence the Past Dubious tense.

(3) For *be gine* see 96.

(4) See 142. (11). An allusion to the firing of the thatchers' ricks at Allahabad, some years ago, as a cure for incendiarism.

(5) In this example translate the subordinate clause in the *oratio recta*, reserving the oblique form of expression for the clause introduced by the second *ki*. See 142. (6).

(6) See 142. (10). *Lahar* is rather a favourite word of Galib's in the sense of 'idea.'

(7) For *jo* see 142. (2). See also 87. 8.

(8) The subordinate clause here conveys the exact words of the request.

(9) *Ehtimâl* 'presumption,' in correspondence with the tense of the subordinate clause. See App. A, Form VIII.

(10) For *munsarim* 'manager' see App. A, Form VII.

(11) The subordinate clause explains the predicative participle *likhâ* in the exact words of the newspaper. For *târîkh* see App. A, Form II., and see the *Remarks* for explanation of the *â*.

(12) Compare **142.** (3). *Sir pîtne kî bât* 'a matter of head-beating' (in token of sorrow), 'a sad job.' See **24.** On the form of the word *ijâzut*, see App. A. *Rem.* F. IV.

(13) Translate 'He said that he was expecting you,' the phrase *âp kâ nâm leke* being redundant in the English idiom. Where a third party is mentioned, an adjustment of this kind is necessary for the proper understanding of the Predicative clause.

(14) See **142.** (6). The *sardâr* is the chief house-servant, generally a 'bearer.'

(15) See **142.** (4). The Persian *mabâdâ*, preceded by *ki*, is often used for *aisâ na ho*.

### 145. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) I saw it stated in the Oudh Akhbâr that a meeting of Talûqdârs would be held at the Pavilion of the Kaisar Bâg at two o'clock on Saturday. (2) It behoves you to be cautious in the adjustment of this dispute. (3) Ask the witness if he speaks English. (4) Tell the syce to go and wait half-way. (5) You did a very prudent thing in setting him free without security. (6) I am at a loss how to refute this calumny. (7) He boasted that he would mate him without his queen. (8) You did a great service to the Government in putting down the rebels at the very first. (9) I have a strong suspicion that he, too, was concerned with you in this dacoity. (10) I do not approve of your habit of flattering me at every turn. (11) It was his custom to take a stroll in the early morning. (12) The four agreed among themselves

to hunt in company. (13) Knock at the door and ask if the master is at home. (14) He told my son he was coming to my house to-morrow. (15) I entreat you to overlook this my first offence.

### 146. Directions.

(1) On the model of 143. 11. 'Stated' *likhā*, because native papers are lithographed.

(2) As in 142. (8). 'To be cautious' may be picturesquely rendered *dāen bāen dekhnā* 'looking to the right and left.'

(3) 'Do you speak English?' *tumse angrezī ātī*; better than *tum angrezī bolte*.

(4) Turn the subordinate clause 'having gone half-way, sit.'

(5) Turn 'You did great prudence in that, without having taken security, you gave him release (*chhutkārā*).' See 96. for the participial phrase. The sentence is ironical.

(6) On the model of 143. 10.

(7) 'Without his queen,' in the Hindustani idiom, 'having removed the queen,' *farzīn uthāke*.

(8) 'Service to the Government' is here sufficiently translated by *khair-khwāhī* 'well-wishing.' 'At the very first,' *pahle pahal men*.

(9) 'A strong suspicion,' *gumān-i-gālib*. 'Concerned with you,' *terā shāmil-hāl*, lit. 'included in your condition.'

(10) Turn 'I am not approving (*ravādār*) of this custom in that you flatter me at every turn (*har phirkar*).'

(11) See 142. (9). *Thā* may be omitted in the subordinate clause. 'To take a stroll,' *chihal qadamī karnā*, with which compare our phrase 'forty winks' for 'a nap.'

(12) Turn 'They made compact (*ahd*) among themselves that, come, we all four together (*milkar*) will hunt.' See 68. 6.

(13) See 142. (6). Use the Past Conjunctive Participle in the first clause.

(14) Here the *oratio recta* of the subordinate clause is, 'I am going to your father's to-morrow.'

(15) On the model of 143. 8—'I entreat,' *multamis hūn* or *merā iltimās hai*. 'To overlook' or 'pass over,' *darguzar karnā* (*se*).

## EXERCISE XXI.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued.*

(3) Adverbial: viz. *a.* Temporal; *b.* Local; *c.* Modal.

**147.** Adverbial clauses are those which refer to the (*a*) time, (*b*) place, or (*c*) manner, and to the (*d*) ends, (*e*) reasons, or (*f*) conditions of the action of the principal verb. This Exercise deals with the relations of time, place, and manner.

**148.** The construction of clauses of this kind is similar to that of the Relative clauses explained and illustrated in Exercise XX.—that is to say, the adverbial clause, with *jab*, *jahân*, *jidhar*, *jyûn*, or *jaun*, stands first as a rule, and is followed by the chief clause with or without the respective correlatives. In short, the normal shape and order of the clauses are those of the line

Where the bee sucks there suck I.

The particle *ki* may be combined with *jab*, etc., in the same manner as it is with *jo*, *jaisâ*, and *jitnâ* (135.). The same particle also, in cases where the adverbial clause is not initial, may take the place of *jab* or *jabse* 'when' or 'since.'

*Jabtak* 'as long as,' with a negative verb corresponds to our 'until.'

**149.** The relative phrases *jis waqt*, *jis jagah*, *jis taraf*, *jis tarah*, or *jaise*, constantly replace the adverbs named in the preceding section. *Jyûn*, *jaun*, *jon*, are very rarely used, but the phrases *jaun taun* 'somehow,' *jon kâ ton* 'as before,' and *jonhîn* 'precisely as,' or 'pre-

cisely when,' are common enough in colloquial Hindustani.

The correlatives in general use are *us waqt*, *wahán*, *udhar*, *us tarah*, *aise*, etc.

The adverbial combinations, 'before that,' *priusquam* or *antequam*, 'after that,' *postquam*, etc., are represented in Hindustani by *qabl iske ki*, *ba'd iske*, etc.

### 150. Translate into English :—

- (1) جس وقت کہ یہ بات مجھے یاد پڑتی ہے اختیار ہوکے ہنستا ہوں
- (2) میں تو جب سے یہاں آیا اپنے تئیں تندرست پاتا ہوں
- (3) جب تک میں نہ آوں تم برنڈے میں بیٹھ رہو
- (4) میرے والد نے مدت ہوئی کہ قصا کی
- (5) اولکا یہ کہنا تھا کہ میں غیرت کے مارے زمین میں گڑ گیا
- (6) جہاں کہیں نئی قبر بطور گنبد کے دیکھنا تو جاننا کہ وہی دروازہ اوس مکان کا ہی
- (7) جسکو جہاں پر جانا منظور ہی اجازت ملیگی
- (8) ہر ایک نے اپنا اسباب جہاں چھوڑا تھا جسے وہیں پایا
- (9) جس طرف سے آیا تھا اودھر کو چلا گیا
- (10) میں تو یہاں کے رہنے والوں سے جیسا کہ تم تصور کرتے ہو نہیں ہوں
- (11) قبل اسکے کہ ریل چھوٹ جائے ان سب گاڑیوں کو جھاڑ دو
- (12) سوائے اسکے کچھ سمجھ میں نہیں آیا کہ خود جانا چاہئے
- (13) ہم دونوں قریب ہی کہ پکڑے جاویں
- (14) آپ خود اونکو کھاتے ہوئے دیکھ لین تب تو سہی
- (15) جہاں ہزار داغ ہیں ایک ہزار ایک مہی

## 151. Notes.

(1) *Yâd-parnâ*, as compared with *yâd-honâ*, is 'chance recollection.' Compare **73. 2.** *Be-ikhtiyâr*, lit. 'without power,' like *majbur*, **84. 1.** Translate 'I cannot help laughing,' etc.

(3) See **148.** *sub fin.* *Baranda* (Hindî) or *barânda* (Persian).

(4) The collocation is elegant. *Qazâ* is the 'sors suprema.' Comp. the expression *haiza karnâ*.

(5) The action denoted by the gerund with *thâ* is immediately antecedent to the event described in the succeeding clause. Translate 'He had no sooner . . . than,' etc.

(6) See **138. 5.** *Ba-taur gumbaz ke* 'in the manner of a dome,' a pedantic paraphrase of *gumbaz-dâr* 'domed.'

(7) See **138. 4.**

(8) *Bi-jînsihi*, 'intact,' lit. 'in the nature of it.' Compare the similar Arabic phrase given at **140. 2.**

(10) *Tasawwur karnâ* in the modal clause is 'to imagine.' For this verbal see App. A, Form V.; see **68. 13** and **137. 14** for verbals from the same root.

(11) See **117. 1.**

(12) This sentence is very neatly worded. Translate 'The only plan I could think of was,' etc.

(13) *Qarîb hai*, impersonal, equivalent to 'nearly.'

(14) In this example the correlative adverb only is expressed. *Sahî* is one of those idiomatic terms which it is often easier to understand than translate. The original sense of the word is 'endured' or 'allowed' (*sahnâ*), and the clause may be rendered here 'Then you will allow I am right.' See *Taubat*, VII, 69.

(15) Translate 'One more blemish may be put up with where there are a thousand already.' From Gâlib.

## 152. Translate into Hindustani :—

- (1) You have no resource left but to take service.
- (2) I will not leave you till you grant my petition.
- (3) So far as it is possible to prevent it, do not let this secret get abroad.
- (4) It must be more than fifty years since the Queen ascended the throne.
- (5) Sit where my

voice may easily be heard. (6) When you have wasted so many years already, a few more days won't signify. (7) When it was his own turn to suffer, he roared out. (8) The stars were still shining when he rose as usual for morning prayer. (9) His eyes were no sooner closed than he was in another world. (10) Wherever you find any curiosity, bring it me just as it is. (11) He could not have gone five or six steps when he heard a man's voice close by. (12) Go and wait at the place where I first met you. (13) Why should I begin to ill-treat you now, after having treated you so well before? (14) I saw what was in his mind before he could make any complaint. (15) He went out shooting a week ago.

### 153. Directions.

(1) See **150. 12.** 'Resource,' *sûrat*, something like the Latin *modus vivendi*. The word has many meanings, and is a noun of unity from the same root as the verbals noticed in **151. 10.**

(2) See **150. 3.** 'I will not leave you' may be turned by the phrase *pind na chhorûngâ*.

(3) Omit 'to prevent it.' Turn 'Let not a disclosure of this secret take place.' See **76. 13.**

(4) On the model of **150. 4.**

(5) Turn 'Sit (in) such a place that wherefrom my voice may be well heard' (*kân parnâ*).

(6) For the second clause see **150. 15**—*chand din aur saht*.

(7) Turn 'When (misfortune) lighted on (*ân-bannâ*) his own head he squeaked'—*chîn bolnâ* 'the cry of a trapped animal.'

(8) For 'when' use *ki*. 'As usual,' *apne ma'mûl par*.

(9) On the model of **150. 5.**

(10) Remember the hint of **138. 4.** 'Just as it is' may be translated by the phrase noticed at **151. 8,** or by the word *amânat*.

(11) The tense of the first verb is the Past Presumptive. 'When,' *ki*. 'Close by,' *nazdik se*.



(12) 'To meet,' *do châr honâ (se)*. The idiom of two becoming four refers of course to the eyes.

(13) On the model of **150**, II. Use *nekî karnâ* and *burâ'î karnâ* for the verbs.

(14) Construct as in the last sentence. 'What was in his mind,' *mâ fî zamîr*—an Arabic phrase.

(15) Turn 'To him a week was (*hââ*) that he had gone,' etc.

## EXERCISE XXII.

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued*.

(3) Adverbial: viz. *d.* Final; *e.* Causal.

**154.** Resuming from **147**. the present Exercise shows the construction of those adverbial clauses which express the ends or the reasons of the state or action denoted by the principal verb, and are therefore called Final and Causal.

**155.** Final clauses are constructed like Predicative clauses (**141.**), that is to say, they follow the principal verb and are linked to it by *ki* 'that,' 'so that,' 'in order that,' or by *tâ ki* or *ki tâ*, or by *tâ* alone, which is the Persian mode.

Negatively final clauses, which, in English, are prefaced by the conjunction 'lest,' are introduced by the phrase *aisâ naho ki*, which has been already noticed, **142.** (4). in connection with verbs of fearing.

**156.** Causal clauses, on the other hand, generally

precede the principal clause, after the manner of the temporal, local and modal clauses which were the subject of the last Exercise, and are introduced by *jo ki* or *chúnki*, meaning 'since' or 'because,' or by *az-bas-ki*, a Persian compound which signifies 'inasmuch as.'

They may, however, follow the principal clause, and, in this case, are linked to it by the conjunction *kyúnki*, or the phrases *kis lâe ki*, *kis wâste ki*, etc., or by *ki* alone, with an anticipative phrase, such as *is sabab se*, in the leading clause.

### 157. Translate into English :—

(1) باہر سے کوئی دباو پڑ جائے کہ وہ نالش کی  
 پیروی سے باز رہے (2) میرے ساتھیوں نے ارادہ  
 کیا کہ دریا میں جا کر ڈوب مرین تاکہ ایسے برے مرے  
 سے نجات پائیں (3) بھائیوں نے مجھکو ترغیب  
 دی کہ تا میں بھی ہمراہ انکے سفر کروں (4) اس  
 قدر بیان کافی ہی تا تم جانو کہ میں تمہارے حال سے  
 آگاہ ہوں (5) ہاتھ رکھے رہیو ایسا نہو لڑکی سوئے  
 سوئے ڈر کر چونک پڑے (6) چونکہ یہ فعل لازم ہی تو  
 صیغہ ماضی میں علامت فاعل نہیں آتی (7) ازبسکہ  
 میری خاطر تمکو عزیز ہی یثین ہی کہ اس امر  
 میں بھی دریغ نہیں کروگے (8) بہتر ہی کہ یہاں  
 پر بھی پہرا لگائیے کیونکہ یہ نالا گویا چور دروازہ اس  
 مکان کا ہی (9) میں اس سبب سے کہو کہو کہ  
 باز پرس کرتا ہوں کہ لوگ کہتے ہیں کہ یہ شخص  
 متوفی کے عزیزوں سے تھا (10) طرفداری نہ کیجئے  
 کس لئے کہ اوسکا بدکردار ہونا لاکلام تو ہی

## 158. Notes.

(1) The compound *par-jānā* here means 'to be exercised,' or 'brought to bear.'

(2) From the *Alf Laila*, where Sindbad and his companions fall into the hands of a man-eating Polyphemus. *Aise bure marne se* 'from such a cruel death,' or 'way of dying.' See 48. *sub fin.*

(3) The Final clause in this example is easily converted into a Predicative by the omission of *tā*, and the adoption of the *oratio recta*.

(5) See 106. for the duplication of the Participle, and also 130. 10. for the leading clause.

(6) From a native Grammar, to the effect that the sign of the agent is not used when the verb is intransitive. Note use of Persian *izāfat*.

(7) *Merī khâtir* 'obliging me.' *Khâtir* is here equivalent to *khâtir-dârl*.

(8) Translate 'You had better post a sentry,' etc. See 91. 5.

(9) *Khod khodke* 'digging and digging,' the reduplication of the Past Conjunctive Participle denoting persistence. Close questioning is the sense here. Take *is sabab se* and *ki* together, 'because.' For *mutawaffā* see App. A, Form V. The word is of the same form as *mutabannā*, 130. 7.

## 159. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) I should not wonder if he has deceived you, in order to win your good will. (2) Inasmuch as nothing was found against me in the informers' statements, I was not summoned. (3) Write me word of his departure thence, in order that I may set on foot the preparations for his reception. (4) Grease his palm a little lest he put a spoke in our wheel. (5) As this verb is transitive, the sign of the agent is used in the past tenses. (6) You ought to confess your fault, for reconciliation is impossible without it. (7) Chastisement ought to be inflicted,

to the intent that people may see it and take warning. (8) Be careful what you say, for the abuse of others will not advance your own cause. (9) He shook the pot to find out what it was filled with. (10) As he learned English in his childhood, he must be more or less a proficient in the language.

### 160. Directions.

(1) Turn 'What wonder that he may have given deceit that (*tâ*) he may make you satisfied (*râzî*) with himself.'

(2) *Az bas ki* followed by *lihazâ* 'therefore' in the correlative clause. 'Against me,' *meri taraf*. 'I was not summoned,' *talabî nahîn hûî*, *lit.* 'A summons was not (sent me).' The Passive should be avoided when the sense can be expressed without it.

(3) 'To set on foot,' *bar-pâ kar-denâ*. 'Reception,' *istiqbâl*, the technical term for meeting a visitor and escorting him to his destination.

(4) Literal translation is impossible in expressions of this kind, and the idea of 'greasing' the palm would disgust a high-caste Hindû. The nearest equivalent phrase must be sought for, and among other expressions for bribery, *munh mîthâ karnâ* 'the sweetening of the mouth,' will serve the turn here. 'To put a spoke in our wheel' may be rendered 'cast an impediment in our business.' There is, however, a somewhat similar idea in the phrase *pahîe men ot arâ-denâ* 'to put a catch under the wheel.'

(5) On the model of 157. 6.

(6) 'Without it' should be fully rendered *bagair iqrâr kîe*.

(7) Turn 'With this intent (*murâd*) chastisement ought to be given, that people, seeing it (Past Conjunctive Participle) should grasp warning.' See 91. 12.

(8) Turn 'Having controlled (your) tongue, speak, because (*kis lîe ki*) abuse of others will not answer (*pesh-jânâ*) in your interests.' See 140. 12.

(9) 'To find out,' *tâ daryâft ho*.

(10) 'As,' *jo ki*. Turn the correlative clause 'He will be holding (*rakhtâ hogâ*) little (or) much proficiency,' omitting 'in the language' as unnecessary.

## EXERCISE XXIII.

SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued.*

## (3) Adverbial: viz. f. Conditional.

**161.** A Conditional clause conveys the condition or limitation under which the state or action denoted by the principal clause holds good.

It stands or is put forward first (hence the term *protasis*), and is introduced by the conjunctions *agar* or *jo* 'if,' and is followed by the *apodosis*, or consequent proposition, prefaced by the illative particle *to*.

The introductory particles of both *protasis* and *apodosis* are often omitted, when the sense is obvious without them.

**162.** There are two classes of conditions, viz. (1) those which may be or may have been realised; (2) those which might have been, but were not, realised.

The present Exercise deals with the first only. By the nature of the case, the tenses generally used in the expression of conditions of this character are the Dubious tenses, viz. the Aorist and the Present and Past Dubious; but the historic tenses are also employed when the speaker, so to say, begs the question of the realisation of the condition. Thus, for example, (*agar*) *hukm ho (to) jâân* 'If the order is (given), I go'; but, if the realisation of the condition is assumed, as in 'If he gives you the money (which he will do), bring it to me,' we shall have *jo usne rūpaya diyâ mere pás le-âo*. And the same construction is lawful, if the clause is

temporal, that is to say, if instead of *jo* 'if,' we read *jab* 'when.'

**163.** Conditional clauses are on occasion convertible into Predicative by inverting the order of the clauses and using *ki* in place of *agar*; e.g., *kyá khúb hai ki ijázat ho* 'how nice if leave is allowed!' And hence arises the optative form of the Conditional clause, where *kásh* takes the place of the leading clause, with or without *ki* or *jo*; as, *kásh ijázat ho* 'would that leave be allowed!' or, 'if only leave be allowed!'

**164.** Translate into English:—

- (1) ارسطونے یہ مثال لکھی ہے کہ اگر صرف ایک  
 ابابیل نظر آوے تو وہ فصل بہار کے آنے کی دلیل نہیں  
 (2) جو آپ خوب جی لگا کر سیکھتے تو میرا ذمہ چار  
 مہینے میں عبارت پڑھنی آویگی (3) اگر منا چاہے  
 تو میں سرگذشت اپنی بیان کروں (4) بنے تو آج  
 پل طیار ہو جائیگا (5) اگر تمکو اپنی جان عزیز ہی  
 تو میری نصیحت پر عمل کرو (6) اگر اس برس  
 وہ خطرے بچ گیا تو پھر عمر اوسکی بڑی ہی (7) اگر  
 ہاتھ آجاویگی تو وہ ورق بھیج دوںگا (8) اگر  
 میری اوقات شباروزی آپ دیکھیں تو عجب کرینگے  
 کہ یہ شخص جیتا کیونکر رہی (9) اگر مجھ سے سہوا  
 قصور ہوا ہو امیدوار ہوں اوسے معاف فرمائو  
 (10) کاش یہ بیمار تمہارا بھائی غانم ہو

**165.** Notes.

(1) From the *Akhlaqí Násiri*. Compare the English proverb, 'One swallow does not make a summer.'

(2) For *merâ zimma*, see 122. 2. See 137. 6 for the form of the tense in the protasis.

(3) See 127.

(4) (*Agar*) *bane* 'if the thing can be done,' equivalent to (*agar*) *hosake*, or (*agar*) *merâ bas chale*. See 76. 6.

(5) *Hai*, not *ho*, because the love of life is taken for granted.

(6) An astrological forecast, in which the result is stated as certain to follow the fulfilment of the condition. Our idiom requires a present tense in the protasis and a future in the apodosis.

(7) *Warq* is the 'leaf' of a MS. The sentence is from Galib.

(8) *Auqât*, the Arabic plural of *waqt*. The sense of the word here is 'condition.' Comp. our phrase 'hard times.' *Auqât* also means 'wages' (means of living or passing time). Galib, in using the future in the apodosis, evidently looks forward to a visit from his friend.

(9) *Sahvan*, Arabic accusative of *sahv* 'inadvertence,' used adverbially 'inadvertently.'

(10) From the *Alf Laila*. See 163.

### 166. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) If you ask me the truth, I should say he was a fool. (2) I will get him shod somewhere, if possible. (3) If you are not angry, why speak crossly? (4) I shall certainly kill you, if you scream out. (5) Whichever of the three I marry you to, the remaining two will be displeased. (6) Leave off talking nonsense, if you wish to be respected. (7) If an opportunity occurs, I will make good the deficiency to-morrow. (8) How nice if the rains have begun! (9) Oh! that I may get privilege leave! (10) The prevention of bribery shall be contrived, if I can manage it.

### 167. Directions.

(1) Omit *agar* in the protasis, and remember that the Predicative clause after 'say' must be in the *oratio recta*.

(2) The *protasis*, as in **164. 4.** The form of verb in the *apodosis* will be causal. See **79. 15.**

(3) Let *jo* introduce the *protasis*, and turn the *apodosis* 'of cross (*ukhrī ukhrī*) words what is the intention (*garz*)?'

(4) Put the verb of the *protasis* in the Past tense, as the more forcible way of making the person realise the threat.

(5) The *protasis* should be arranged thus: 'If your marriage with whom of these three (*in tinon men se jiske s'āth*) I shall make,' etc., with attention to the principle laid down in **138. 4.**

(6) Turn the *protasis* 'If your honour is dear (*manzūr*) to you,' translating 'your' by the reflexive pronoun.

(7) Omit *agar*. 'To make good a deficiency' may be idiomatically rendered by *kasr nikāl-lenā*, lit. 'to cause the fraction to come out,' 'make up the balance,' etc.

(8) See **163.**

(9) See **163.** Turn 'Would that to me privilege leave be received (*mil-jānā*)!' *Rukhsat ri'āyati* is the technical term.

(10) The third of the phrases mentioned at **165. 4** may be adopted for the *protasis*. 'To be contrived,' *tajwīz-honā*.

## EXERCISE XXIV.

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued.*

(3) Adverbial: *viz. f. Conditional—continued.*

**168.** We now come to the second of the two classes of conditions named in **162.**, *viz.* those conditions which might have been, but were not, realised; in other words, the time for the realisation of which has passed by. Hence the propriety of the native term Past Conditional for those tense-forms of the Hindustani verb which are reserved for use in this connection, either in the *protasis* or *apodosis* of the compound sentence.

The Past Conditional is formed from the Past Imper-



fect by dropping the auxiliary *thá*, or by using *hotá* instead of *thá*. A third form is obtained by using *hotá* instead of *thá* in the Past Remote; and the tense thus formed may be distinguished as the Past Conditional Remote.\*

**169.** But while one or other of these three forms is indispensable in the protasis of conditional sentences of this class, the Past Imperfect is frequently retained in the apodosis, when the substantive verb is used in combination with nouns or adjectives. For example, in such a sentence as 'It would have been well if he had understood the order,' the protasis is either *agar* (or *jo*) *woh hukm samajhtá* (or *samjhá hotá*, if the period spoken of is comparatively remote), but the apodosis may be *to achchhá thá*, as well as *to achchhá hotá*.

**170.** The alternative construction explained in **163.** is equally available in the case of the unrealised condition. Thus we have *kyá khúb hotá* (or *thá*) *ki woh hukm samajhtá* 'how well it would have been had he understood the order.' And similarly for the Past Optative, *kásh woh hukm samajhtá*, 'would he had understood the order!'

**171.** Translate into English :—

(1) اگر میں جواب دیتا تو مجھکو جیتا بھی نہ  
 چھوڑتے (2) حاجت ہوتی ہم بے کہے تمہارے

---

\* On this it may be remarked that the proper place for the Past Conditional in the verb scheme is immediately after the Past Imperfect (See App. B), and not, as English grammars have it, at the head of the tense-forms derived from the Imperfect Participle, as if it were a Present tense.

مدد کرتے (3) اگر وہ اس حکمت کو جانتا ہوتا تو  
 بے تکلف اس سوال کو حل کر لیتا (4) تم نہ  
 آجائیں میں اب تک کبھی کی چلی بھی گئی ہوتی  
 (5) زمین پھٹ گئی ہوتی تو میں سما جاتی (6) اگر  
 تین چیزیں اور اس باغ میں ہوتیں تو یہ بے نظیر تھا  
 (7) کیا اچھا ہوتا کہ یہ رویہ محتاجوں کو دیا جاتا  
 (8) آپ کو چاہئے تھا کہ جولان گاہ کو معائنہ فرمائے  
 (9) کاش یہ تمیز جو خدا نے تمکو عطا کی ہی سب  
 میں ہوتی (10) کاش تم نے دعوت سے پہلے گھر  
 میں پوچھ لیا ہوتا

### 172. Notes.

(1) The apodosis means 'he would not have left me alive' (to tell the tale). A common exaggeration. For *jāta*, see **107** (2).

(2) *Hājat hotī* 'had there been any need.' *Mohtāj* 'needy,' a verbal from the same root as *hājat*, will be found below (7). *Hājah* is an everyday word in modern Arabic for 'anything,' as *turīd hājah* 'do you want anything?' For *be kahe tumhāre* see **96**.

(3) *Jāntā hotā*, the second form of the Past Conditional, in which *hotā* takes the place of *thā* in the Past Imperfect. The shade of meaning which this rare tense implies cannot always be rendered in English. Translate 'had he been familiar with' rather than 'had he known.'

(4) A lady is here addressing a female relation. For *kabhī kī*, see **45**. 9. The remoter sense of the third form of the Past Conditional is obvious in this example.

(5) A proverbial form of expression, which denotes an intense feeling of shame.

(6) For the construction of the apodosis, see **169**.

(7) See **170**. The tense in the subordinato clause is the Past Conditional Passive. For *mohtāj* see App. A, Form VIII.

(8) Translate 'You ought to have inspected,' etc.

(9) Translate 'Would that all possessed the discretion,' etc.

(10) A wife here remonstrates with her husband for inviting a friend to dinner without giving her notice. From the *Mirâtu-l-arâs* of Nazir Ahmed.

### 173. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) If we had lived in accordance with our means, we should never have experienced this want of money. (2) He kept on complaining, 'Would that I had not been born!' (3) I should have put down gambling, if I had had the power. (4) It was beyond his sagacity to understand this hint. (5) I should have half killed him, if the people had not rescued him. (6) You ought to have sympathised with me at this critical period. (7) Had we been on the alert, yonder intrigues would have been detected. (8) Had I followed the doctor's instructions, I should have given up drink long ago. (9) Would I had not been entangled in this mess. (10) If reconciliation had been effected then, I should have been pleased.

### 174. Directions.

(1) 'In accordance with our means,' *haisiyat se*, at the beginning of the sentence. Turn the apodosis 'this empty-handedness (*tihî-dastî*) would never have been.'

(2) Use here the Past Conditional Remote in the optative clause.

(3) Compare this with 166. 10.

(4) Turn thus: 'To him so much sagacity where was that he should have understood this hint?' An assertion in the interrogative form.

(5) Turn the apodosis 'I should have already made him half dead,' *âdh-mûâ kar-chukâ thâ*.

(6) On the model of 171. 8. 'To sympathise with me,' *merî hamdardî karnâ*.

(7) Turn thus : ' From hither (if) alertness had been, the intrigue of thither would have been detected (*khul-parná*).'

(8) ' Instructions,' *kahá*. 96.

(9) Use the 2nd form of the Past Conditional (Optative).

(10) Turn thus : ' I should then indeed (*tabhi*) have been pleased that when reconciliation had become ' (Past Conditional Remote).

## EXERCISE XXV.

### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued*.

(3) Adverbial: viz. *f.* Conditional (*Concessional*).

**175.** The Concessional is a form of the Conditional clause, of which the construction is illustrated in Exercise XXIII., the difference being that, instead of being introduced by *agar* 'if,' the protasis begins with *agarchi* 'although.' The conjunctions *har chand*, *go*, *go ki* mean the same thing, and are convenient alternatives. *Hálánki* 'albeit,' *bá-wujúdeki* 'notwithstanding that,' *máná ki* 'granted that,' etc. are additional forms; and the colloquial *sahí*, 151. 14, is sometimes used at the end of a concessional clause, just as *máná ki* at the beginning.

Our phrase 'no matter how . . .' is idiomatically represented in Hindustani by *kaisá hí . . . kyún na . . .* or *kitná hí . . . kyún na . . .*, with or without *agarchi*.

The correlative conjunctions used in the apodosis are *magar* or *lekin* 'but,' and *to bhí*, *phir bhi*, *táham*, etc. 'yet' or 'still.'

**176.** Translate into English:—

(1) ان بندروں میں اگرچہ انسان کی طرح جوهر  
گوپائی نہ ہوتی ہو لیکن بزبان حال آپس میں ضرور

بولتے ہونگے (2) ہرچند سبھوں نے اوسکو سمجھایا  
 مگر وہ اپنے ضد سے باز نہ آیا (3) ایسی چیز نادر  
 ہرگز میرے بھائوں کو گو تمام عالم پھرین میسر نہ ہوگی  
 (4) تمہیں میرے ساتھ اب کچھ محبت اور پیار نہ  
 رہا حالانکہ میں تمپر اس طرح سے فدا ہوں (5) مانا  
 کہ ہزاروں نوکری کی جست و جو میں لاجاصل پھرتے  
 ہیں لیکن جو نوکر ہیں وہ تمہیں ایسے آدمی ہیں  
 (6) میں تو دودھ پیتا ہوا بے تمیز چہ سہی لیکن  
 میں نہیں چاہتا ہوں کہ کوئی میرے افعال سے تعرض  
 کرے (7) آدمی کیسی ہی حالت میں کیوں نہ ہو۔  
 علم سے اوسکو فائدہ حاصل ہوگا (8) کتنے ہی  
 مقدمہ پیشی میں کیوں نہوں۔ ممکن نہیں کہ تاریخ  
 مقررہ پر فیصلہ نہ ہو جائیں (9) دوربین کے ذریعہ  
 سے وہ اس طرح سے تمکو دکھائی دیگا جیسے  
 تمہارے پاس رکھا ہی۔ اگرچہ چار کوس پر کیوں نہ ہو  
 (10) جہان ایک حالت سلہاسال رہی۔ گو وہ حالت  
 کیسی ہی عمدہ اور پسندیدہ کیوں نہ ہو۔ خواہ مخواہ  
 آدمی اوس سے ملول ہو جاتا ہی

### 177. Notes.

(1) *Ba-zabân-i-hâl*, lit. 'in the present language,' that is, 'in such means of communication as they possess.' The speaker uses the Present Presumptive, as he hears the monkeys chattering.

(3) The concessional clause is here parenthetical. For *muyassar* see App. A, Form II.

(4) For *rahâ* see 17, (3). *Mahabbat*, root حبّ, a *mîmated* noun of action. See App. A, Remarks 5. (3).

(5) *Tumhen aise* 'like yourself.'

(6) For *sahî* see 151, 14. Translate here 'no doubt,' or 'if you

choose to say so.' From a scene in the *Taubat*, where Kalim argues with his mother against what he considers unwarranted interference with his mode of life. For *ta'arruz*, App. A, Form V.

(7) Translate 'No matter in what circumstances,' etc.

(8) *Peshī men* 'in presentation,' that is, 'ready to be brought up.' *Faisala-honā* 'to be decided.' (38.)

(9) Here the concessional clause stands at the end of the sentence as an afterthought: 'though it may be four *kos* distant.'

(10) *Jahān*, as in 150. 15. *Sālhā sāl* (Persian plural and singular combined) 'year after year.' Comp. *tanhā tan*, or *tan tanhā* 'quite alone.' *Rahī*, Past Absolute, instead of *rahe*, Aorist, because the speaker assumes the case to have occurred. *Khwdh ma-khwdh* 'will he nill he': but translate freely, as in 151. 1.

### 178. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Though the debtor kept excusing himself on the ground that the bond was forged, yet when pressed he could not deny his own signature. (2) Though you do not know me, I know you well. (3) However easy a thing is, it always seems difficult to a beginner. (4) Notwithstanding that you have disguised yourself in man's attire, I know from your voice that you are a woman. (5) Granted that men's natures are different, yet this is no reason why there should not be concord in a family. (6) Though the education and correction of children are indispensable matters, yet a good example is a *sine qua non*. (7) I shall not sell it, no matter how much you offer. (8) Though the story is very long, it is very interesting indeed. (9) Though so enduring and gallant, the army was not victorious. (10) You are addicted to drink, albeit the practice is altogether contrary to the law of Islam.

**179.** *Directions.*

(1) Turn thns: 'The debtor, although he kept making (118.) excuse that "this bond is forged," yet (*tâham*),' etc. 'Being pressed' may be rendered *hârkar*.

(2) 'Though,' *go ki*, less formal than *harchand*.

(3) The concessional clause is *kaisâ hi âsân kâam ho*, without a following correlative. Instead of literally translating 'always,' use the Continuative *hûâ karnâ* (126.)

(4) Turn 'Notwithstanding (*bâ-wujûdeki*) you have made yourself in the disguise of men,' etc.

(5) Put the assertion of the correlative clause interrogatively, *yeh kyâ sabâb hai*, etc.

(6) 'Good example is a *sine qua non*,' *namûna shart hai*. Comp. 44. 15.

(7) Place the chief clause first and use the idiom described in 56. followed by *agarchi*.

(8) Instead of translating 'very long' literally, use the compound phrase *tâl-tawîl*.

(9) 'To be enduring and gallant,' *mehnat o jân-fishânî karnâ*.

(10) Follow the English order of the clauses. A strong expression for 'being addicted to' is *marnâ (par)*. The law of Islâm is the *shar'* شرع .

## EXERCISE XXVI.

## CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES.

(1) Appositive or Collateral.

**180.** Another form of the Compound sentence is that in which a simple sentence is extended by the annexure of Co-ordinate clauses. These differ from Subordinate in being accessory, or even antithetic, to the leading sentence rather than explanatory of its parts. They may indeed be connected with it by conjunctions

argumentatively appropriate to the meaning they convey, but are constructively independent, and this too though they may have common terms.

Thus, in the proverb *kisî kâ hâth chale, kisî kî zabân chale* 'one acts, another talks,' *chale* is a common term, and may be omitted in the co-ordinate clause, as in English, if we translate 'of one the hand moves, of another the tongue.'

**181.** Co-ordinate clauses may be conveniently classed as (1) Appositive, (2) Adjunctive, (3) Alternative, (4) Adversative.

The Appositive or Collateral relation is that in which no intermediary conjunction unites the clauses, as in the proverb above quoted. This form of the Compound sentence is common in Hindustani, a graphic and fluent language which dispenses as far as possible with punctuation either by signs or particles.

**182.** Translate into English :—

(1) جی کہو جی کہلاو (2) میں نے یہی حکم  
تجھکو دیا تھا نہ (3) بعضوں کو جھوٹہ بولنا  
آسان ہی بعضوں کو مشکل (4) وہ تو سوال سنکر  
خاموش ہو رہا - کچھ جواب میں سائل کے ہست  
و نیست نہ کہا (5) ہزاروں آدمی مجھ سے بہتر بہتر  
مارے پھرتے ہیں - کوئی نہیں پوچھتا (6) اوسکو  
ادھر دیکھا ادھر دیکھا - کہیں پتا ننتھا (7) میں نے  
اوس جگہ کا نام بھی نہیں سنا - دیکھنے کا کیا ذکر  
(8) خیر دیدار تو میسر ہوا - گفتار بھی اگر خدا



چاہیگا تو سن لینگے (9) میں نے اپنے صرف زر  
 سے یہ جلدیں نہیں چھپوائیں۔ مالک مطبع نے اپنی  
 بکری کو چھاپیں (10) زمین آفتاب کے گرد  
 گھومتی سہی۔ سہی کیا معنی۔ یوں کہو۔ گھومتی  
 ہی

### 183. Notes.

(1) A well-known proverb, which literally means 'Call others *jit* and be called *jit* yourself.' *Kahlânâ* is a unique example of a verb which is causal in form and passive in sense.

(2) The co-ordinate clause is here contracted into *na* 'did I not?'

(3) See 37. 14.

(4) The pronoun *úsne* is understood in the co-ordinate clause. The Persian *hast o nist* 'it is and it is not' has here the meaning of 'yes or no.' Preserve in translation the etymological connection between the verbals *sû'âl* and *sâ'il*.

(5) *Mârâ phirnâ* is an idiomatic expression which applies to a person wandering about in distress. Our phrase 'knocking about' is something analogous. The speaker alludes to 'the unemployed.' Comp. 176. 5. The co-ordinate clause means 'no one notices (*lit.* questions) them.'

(6) *Dekhnâ* 'to look for.' *Milâ* is often used for *thâ* in this kind of phrase. See 10. 12.

(7) The co-ordinate clause in this example is a common idiom. Literally, 'What mention of seeing it?' that is, 'Let alone having seen it.' Another mode of expressing the idea is *us jagah kâ dekhnâ dar kinâr main ne nâm bhî nahîn sunâ* 'Setting aside seeing the place, I have not even heard its name.'

(8) A remark of Galib's on receiving a friend's photograph. See 60. 4.

(9) *Apne sarf-i-zar se* 'at my own expense'; *apnî bikrî ko* 'for his own selling,' that is, for recovery of outlay by the proceeds of the publication.

(10) This, from the *Binâtu-Nâsh* of Nazîr Ahmed, is a useful illustration of the concessional sense of *sahî*, 176. 6. The last three clauses are a rejoinder to the first.

**184.** Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Some are devoted to philosophy, others have a greater liking for mathematics. (2) I dared not speak even, let alone laugh. (3) I asked for leave, and received a flat refusal. (4) You have seen the Tâj, haven't you? (5) Some wretch is peeping in by chinks in the door; scare him away. (6) We have beaten the whole jungle without finding a trace of game anywhere. (7) Why should I object? I am at the service of my friends. (8) I too was a tremendous sleeper; I could have backed myself against the dead. (9) A new paper is being started here; I send two prospectuses with this letter. (10) 1282 A.H. has begun; I was born in 1212; my seventieth year will begin next Rajab.

**185.** Directions.

- (1) 'Devoted,' see **176. 4.** For co-ordinate clause, see **71. 7.**  
 (2) On the model of **182. 7.** Turn the first clause, 'To me of speaking (*bât karnâ*) even daring (*yârâ*) was not.'  
 (3) Omit the conjunction. 'Flat refusal,' *sâf jawâb*.  
 (4) In the form of **182. 2.** 'The Taj,' *Tâj mahall*.  
 (5) 'Scare away,' *hushkârñâ*, a rustic word for scaring away birds from the crops.  
 (6) 'To beat,' *jhârñâ*. The word was used at **150. 11** in the usual sense of 'sweeping.' See **182. 6** for the form of the co-ordinate clause. 'Finding a trace,' *surâg milñâ*.  
 (7) Turn 'In this what is my objection? I am the servant (*khâdim*) of friends.'  
 (8) See **60. 3.** The co-ordinate clause is *murdon se shart bândhkar sotî (thî)*, the speaker being a woman. *Shart bândhñâ* 'to wager.'  
 (9) 'To be started,' *jârî honâ*; use the gerund with affix *wâlâ*.  
 (10) Turn as follows: 'The year 1282 *hijrî* have begun (pl.);

my birth is of the year 1212; from month of next Rajab seventieth year (*sdl*) will begin.' 'Next' may be elegantly translated by *ab ke*. See the remark made at 45. 4 on the use of *izâfat* in this connection. The sentence is taken from Gâlib's Letters.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

### CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued*.

#### (2) Adjunctive.

**186.** In the Adjunctive relation the chief connective is *aur*.

This conjunction sometimes denotes simultaneity of event or action, especially with the gerund. It is also employed to mark contrast or antithesis, like 'and' in English.

In cases where the adjoined clause implies a logical sequence of thought, *aur* may be replaced by *phir* 'then,' *phir bhî* 'moreover,' *pas* 'so,' *chunânchi* 'accordingly.'

What are apparently adjunctive clauses, introduced by *is li'e* 'therefore,' or other similar phrases, are *de facto* principal clauses, which are preceded by causal clauses in which the conjunctions *chûnki*, etc. have been omitted. See 156.

#### 187. Translate into English:—

- (1) صلاح اور ہی اور دل کی خواہش اور ہوتی  
 (2) ہی جی کا مبتلانا تھا اور قضاے مبرم کا آجانا  
 (3) کہان راجا بھوج اور کہان گنگا تیلی (4) اتنی  
 بڑی بات اور تجھکو خبر نہیں (5) اپنا منہ دیکھو اور

بڑوں کا برا کہنا دیکھو (6) اوسکو بیچ میں بول  
 اوٹھنا کیا ضرور تھا۔ پھر بھی میری بات کا کاٹنا  
 اوسکو مناسب نتھا (7) اس گانو میں غضب کا  
 ڈاکا ہوا چنانچہ تحصیلدار صاحب بذات خود تحقیقات  
 کو آے ہیں (8) اونہوں نے تجھکو یاد فرمایا ہی  
 پس جانا چاہئے (9) مولوی فضل حق کا حال لکھو  
 کہ اس نے رہائی کیوں نہ پائی اور وہان جزیرہ میں  
 امکا کیا حال ہی۔ گذارہ کس طرح ہوتا ہی  
 (10) حضرت نے ایک گھڑی عنایت فرمائی۔ بہلا  
 میرے کس کام کی۔ چار دن سوچا کیا کہ پھیر دون  
 پھر سوچا کہ برا مانینگے۔ آخر کو گھڑی رکھ لی

### 188. Notes.

(1) *Salâh* properly means 'what is right,' and may be so rendered here, in which case *dil ki khwâhish* may be translated 'what one wishes.' Note the distinction between *hai* and *hotî hai*.

(2) From Nazîr Ahmed's powerful description of cholera in the first chapter of the *Taubat*. *Jî kâ matlânâ* expresses the feeling of nausea, which is one of the first symptoms. The point is that a man was no sooner taken ill than he died. Compare the alternative construction at 150. 5.

(3) A well-known proverb. Translate 'What comparison is there between?' etc. *Raja Bhoj* is one of the *dominantia nomina* of Hindû Literature.

(4) The *aur* of contrast in this example may be literally translated.

(5) We have nothing like this in English. Translate 'Look to your own insignificance before,' etc. Compare the idea of the proverb *chhotâ munh barî bât* 'Small mouth, big words.'

(6) For *bol-âthnâ*, see 73. (2). *Bât kâtnâ* 'to cut the speech (of another),' that is, to interrupt or contradict.

(7) For *gazab kâ*, see 24. *Bi-zât-i-khûd* 'in his own person.'

(8) *Yâd farmânâ* 'to call for,' used of a superior—something like our 'condescend to remember.'

(9) This and the next example are specimens of Gâlib's style, of which several have been given already. Gâlib wrote as he spoke; and to hear him speak Hindustani was a lesson in itself. *Jazîra*, of course, means the Andamans. Maulavi Fazl Haqq, whose trial I remember, was a ringleader in the Mutiny of Fifty-seven.

(10) For *sochâ kiyâ* see **126**. *Rakh-lî*, see **73**. (3).

### 189. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) What comparison is there between you a man and me a woman? (2) First that man came; then this one; more yet will be coming. (3) My son, and capable of theft! (4) This amount of labour, and you gasp for breath! (5) The autumn harvest was got in, then began cultivation for the spring harvest. (6) You have stuffed in so much wood that there is no passage for the air, and yet you ask why the fire does not burn. (7) It is not advisable to leave him to live alone, accordingly let you and him continue together. (8) The Sahib won the first game and I got the second and third: he was vexed at losing two games. (9) It is the property of the loadstone to attract iron, and the nearer the iron is placed to it, the greater is the attracting force. (10) This companionship has altogether spoiled you; and I regret now that I gave you permission to go to his house.

### 190. Directions.

(1) On the model of **187**. 3. *Mard*, not *âdmî*, in opposition to '*aurat*.'

(2) The Past Remote in the first clause, the Past Absolute in the second, and the Present Presumptive in the third.

(3) 'Capable of theft,' *chorî karne (ke) qâbil*.

(4) Use the gerund in the co-ordinate clause: 'gasping for

breath,' which in the Hindustani idiom is 'breath coming into the nose,' *dam nâk men ânâ*, an expression which is often used to denote worry or alarm.

(5) 'To be got in' may be picturesquely rendered by *bîrâ pâr honâ* 'crossing of the raft,' metaphorically applied to a successful result. *Khetiyân* pl., better than *khetî*, for 'cultivation,' to denote the various kinds of cultivation for the spring crops.

(6) *Lakriyân*, not *lakrî*. Use the Past Absolute for both verbs in the leading clause.

(7) Omit 'to live' in the first clause, and turn the second 'your his companionship (*sâth*) let remain (*rahâ kare*).' **126.**

(8) Turn the final clause, 'to the Sahib from losing two games (*do bâzî hârne se*) vexation was.'

(9) Turn the first clause, 'In the loadstone this property is that it attracts iron.' 'The nearer,' *jis qadr nazdik*.

(10) 'Altogether' may be idiomatically rendered *pet barhkar* 'belly-full.' For 'and' use *pas*. For the co-ordinate clause see **142.** (3).

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

### CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued*.

#### (3) Alternative.

**191.** When the relation between the clauses is Alternative, the Persian conjunction *yâ* 'or,' is used.

'Either . . . or' is *yâ to . . . yâ*; but when the sentence is interrogative, the first *yâ* becomes *ayâ* 'whether,' in which the initial *a* is apparently vocative, after the manner of *a* in *are, ajî*, **5.** 2, though it is true that the particle is written *âyâ* by most authors.

The conjunction *yâ* occasionally serves to denote a marked difference of conduct or condition, in which case it represents our 'instead of this,' or 'whereas now.'

Other alternative conjunctions are the Hindi verbal forms *châhe* or *châho*, and the corresponding Persian *khwâh*, the exact counterparts of the Latin *vel, sive, seu*.

The interrogative *kyâ* also acts the part of an alternative conjunction, when things or persons are contrasted.

**192.** Negative alternation is expressed by *na . . . aur na* 'neither . . . nor,' the Latin *nec . . . neque*.

*Na . . . na* is also used, and occasionally the first *na* is dropped, especially in set phrases, such as *sân na gumân* 'nor sign nor suspicion,' that is, 'unexpectedly,' 'without warning'; *ziyâda na kam* 'neither more nor less.'

The English alternative particle 'else' is represented in Hindustani by the compounds *nahîn to* or *warna (wa agar na* 'and if not'), which are in reality conditional clauses in a contracted form.

**193.** Translate into English:—

- (1) تم سے اور اوس سے کچھ خصومت ہی یا نہیں
- (2) یا تو اپنا کام کر یا چلنا پھرتا نظر آ (3) ایا میں جاگتا ہوں یا خواب دیکھتا ہوں (4) میں تو بنی آدم کو مسلمان ہو خواہ ہندو خواہ نصرانی عزیز رکھتا ہوں اور اپنا یہائی گنتا ہوں (5) ڈھونڈھنے کو مسلمان اس شہر میں نہیں ملتا کیا امیر کیا غریب کیا اہل حرفہ (6) نہ وہ اپنی تنخواہ سے راضی ہی اور نہ میں اوسکی کارگذاری سے خوش ہوں (7) دو آدمیوں کے بیچ میں آگ نہ نکالو۔ نہیں تو اون میں لڑائی ہوگی (8) پہلا خط تمہارا جسکا حوالہ اس خط میں دیتے ہو میں نے نہیں پایا۔ ورنہ کیا امکان تھا کہ جواب نہ لکھتا (9) رومی نے کچھ کیا نہ کیا

شاہ روس نے \* جھگڑا اٹھایا ہند میں بس کارتوس نے  
 (10) بیماری سے پہلے اوسکی بد مزاجی اس درجے  
 کی تھی کہ گھروالے اوسکو ہوا سمجھتے تھے - دروازے  
 کے اندر اوسنے قدم رکھا اور کیا چھوٹے کیا بڑے صوب  
 پر ایک سہم چڑھا - یا اب اوسکے سر پر ڈھول بجائو  
 کچھ خبر نہیں

### 194. Notes.

(1) Compare 60. 5. *Ki nahîn* may be used for *yâ nahîn* when the clause is subordinate.

(2) The alternative clause is a proverbial expression, which means literally 'appear moving about,' and may be rendered 'move on' or 'be off.'

(4) The sentiment is Galib's. *Nusrân* (pl. *nasârâ*), 'Nazarene,' is the term used in the Qoran to describe Christians. *Krishtân* is the term in ordinary use.

(5) The construction is peculiar. Literally translated, we should have, 'Searching will not find,' etc. The sense is, 'Search as you may, you will not find,' etc. *Ahl-i-hirfa* 'persons engaged in trade,' 'tradesmen.'

(7) Proverbial. Men are supposed to be squatting round a fire, and the superstition is that if a person pushes in between two of them to procure a light, there will be a quarrel.

(8) *Hawâla denâ* 'to refer to.' The co-ordinate clause is a compound conditional sentence interrogatively stated: 'It was impossible but that I should have answered it,' or 'I should of course have answered it.'

(9) This distich is from a poem by Munsif on the Mutiny, and expresses his idea of the cause. *Rûm* and *Rûss* always stand for the Turkish and Russian empires in Persian literature. Observe that the first *na* is dropped, 192. *Bas*, parenthetic, may be translated here 'and nothing else.'

(10) This graphic bit of description is from the *Taubat*, Ch. II. Observe the *aur* of simultaneity, and translate 'He no sooner set foot inside,' etc.



*Sahm charhâ* 'a panic mounted on,' where the English idiom is 'fell upon.' *Yâ ab* 'whereas now.'

The idiom of the Aorist *bajâ'o* corresponds exactly with our own.

### 195. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) I have committed no offence either against God or against man. (2) Either accompany me or go about your business. (3) Put the *lota* in the shade or the milk will turn. (4) The whole city, Hindûs and Mahomedans alike, are praying for his recovery. (5) Have the Maulavis decreed that India is a 'habitation of war' or not? (6) If it will answer your purpose to mortgage the house, well; if not, sell it. (7) A week ago I despaired of life, whereas to-day I was able to get up and join the company. (8) I am perplexed whether to go home or spend the hot weather on the hills. (9) Did you confess of your own accord, or did someone prompt you to do so? (10) My paper is used up, or I would have written on for your amusement.

### 196. Directions.

(1) In the Hindustani idiom 'any offence neither,' etc. 'Against' may be translated here by the sign of *izâfat*—the objective genitive.

(2) For the first clause, see **91. 4**; for the second clause, **193. 2**.

(3) Either literally, *sâya men rakho* or *dhâp se bachâ'o* 'protect from the sun,' followed by *nahîn to*.

(4) 'H. and M. alike,' *cháho Hindû cháho Musalmán*.

(5) 'To decree,' in the Islamic sense, *fatwâ denâ*. 'Habitation of war,' *dâru-l-harb*, the technical term for a country in which a *jehâd* or 'crescentade' is lawful, if it is feasible.

(6) Omit 'if' and 'your.' 'To answer one's purpose,' *kâam nikalnâ (se)*.

(7) 'A week ago,' *ek hafta hâd*. 'To despair of life,' *jân se háth dhonâ*.

(8) 'To go home,' *wilāyat jānā*. Turn the second clause, 'in the heats (*garmi'on men*) to reside on the hill.'

(9) 'Of your own accord,' *āp se āp* or *apne āp se*. Omit 'to do so' in the co-ordinate clause.

(10) Omit all the pronouns. The verb in the co-ordinate clause will be in the Past Conditional tense.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

### CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES—*continued*.

#### (4) Adversative.

**197.** When a co-ordinate clause restricts or qualifies the first, the relation is Adversative, and the conjunctions in use are *par*, *lekin*, *magar*, or *balki*, all of which have the general sense of 'but.' Of these *magar* is preferentially used for the introduction of an exception or afterthought; and *balki* generally has the enhancive sense of 'nay more,' or 'nay rather.' *To bhī* 'nevertheless' and *tāham* 'yet still' are also used as adversative conjunctions.

Compound sentences of this class are often little more than a rhetorical variation of those which form the subject of Exercises XXIII. and XXV.

#### **198.** Translate into English :—

(1) فرمایا کہ لوگوں کو بیدل مت کرو۔ بلا سے میرے  
مصارف میں کمی ہو تو ہو لیکن نوکروں کی لہوڑی  
اوقات ہی اونکو مت ستاؤ (2) اور سب رئیس  
بیٹھے ہیں مگر اب تک مہاراجا صاحب تشریف نہیں

لائے (3) بالفعل کوئی لائق آدمی میرے خیال میں نہیں آتا۔ مگر ہاں امیدواروں کی فہرست موجود ہی کوئی نہ کوئی میرا خاطرخواہ نکلے (4) اپنے باپ سے لینا کیا بلکہ مانگنا بھی عیب نہیں۔ اونکا روپیہ عین تمہارا روپیہ ہی (5) اوسکا نام خالی حسن کر کے کوئی نہیں لیتا بلکہ اوسکو خواجہ حسن کہتے ہیں (6) کالا کیا یہ تو گویا التا توا ہی (7) آپ کے دشمن بہت ہی بیمار تھے لیکن اب بشرے سے معلوم ہوتا ہی کہ یہ تو گئی گذری بات ہی (8) بارہا گھوڑے نے دولتی چلائی پر کسی کے لگی نہیں (9) تم نے یہ کتا کیا ایک صراف رکھا ہی (10) بیگم کے مقابلہ میں سب لڑکیاں غریب تو تھیں مگر بمقابلہ یکدگر کوئی زیادہ خوشحال تھی کوئی متوسط الحال کوئی نہایت غریب

### 199. Notes.

(1) For *balâ se* see 77. 15. For *auqât* see 165. 8. Observe the structure of the adversative clause in this example and in (3). Comp. the phrasing of 137. 15.

(3) *Magar hân* (the French *mais oui*), in English generally 'yes,' introductory of an afterthought. *Merâ khâtir-khwâh* 'suited to my ideas.' Comp. 157. 7.

(4) The interrogative *kyâ* strengthens the adversative *balki*, 'nay more,' by deprecating, as it were, the previous remark. *Balki* may even be omitted, as in (6), (9). *Lenâ* means 'taking' something which is given. '*Ain tumhârâ rupâya*, literally, 'exactly your money.' See 140. 2, and compare the phrases '*ain waqt par* 'in the nick of time,' '*ain sarak men* 'right in the road.' The clause may be rendered, 'his money is really yours.'

(5) *Khâlt Hasan karke*, literally, 'specifying him as Hasan only.' Compare the phrase *ek ek karke* 'one by one.' 125. 10. For the position of the negative see 68. 11.

(6) 'Black indeed! Why, he is, so to say, an upturned griddle.' Our way of putting it would be, 'Dark indeed! Why, he is as black as my hat.'

(7) *Āp ke dushman* (or *dushmanān-i-huzūr*) 'your enemies,' meaning 'yourself.' Oriental politeness, or servility, avoids the association of illness with the person of a superior, and prefers to ascribe it to an enemy. *Ga'ī guzrī bāt* 'a thing of the past.'

(8) Translate the adversative clause, 'but no one was kicked.' *Kist ke*, not *kist ko*. See 51. 15, where it was explained that *ke*, not *ko*, marks the person affected, when the verb used is not transitive.

(9) Translate 'This is not a dog you keep, but a money-changer.' From the story in the *Alf Laila*, where a dog is described as able to detect counterfeit coin. For *sarrāf* see App. A, Rem. 5 (5).

(10) *Ba-muqābala-i-yakdigar* 'in comparison with one another.' For *mutawassit* see App. A, Form V.

## 200. Translate into Hindustani:—

(1) Your comfort, nay more, your safety depends on your withdrawing from their society. (2) He and I had a long consultation in the matter of this outbreak, but no remedy was arranged. (3) No such book is obtainable; but stay, there are several works on grammar in the Government Library: if you wish it, I will send for them. (4) I tried very hard: the cotton kept coming into the eye of the needle, but never got threaded. (5) You have performed a cure; nay, a miracle. (6) What do you mean by misapprehension of orders? The plain fact is you have been guilty of wilful disobedience. (7) Neither you nor I will read, but he whose turn it is. (8) You may well call him intelligent—he has an old head on young shoulders. (9) Not we alone—the whole city, I may say, long for his advent. (10) Talk as much as you please, a man's life is the dearest of his possessions.

201. *Directions.*

(1) Turn 'Depends on (*men*) this that you withdraw,' etc.

(2) Turn 'For a long time (*der tak*) in the matter (*bâra*) of this outbreak my his together (*bâham*) consultation was,' etc. 'To be arranged,' *ban-parná*.

(3) On the model of 198. 3. 'Grammar,' *sarf-nahv*, lit. 'inflection and syntax.' 'If you wish it,' *irshâd ho*.

(4) 'Cotton-thread,' *dhâgâ*. The 'eye' of a needle is the 'mouth' in Hindustani. 'Never got threaded,' *piroyâ nahîn gayâ*.

(5) On the model of 198. 9.

(6) Turn 'misapprehension what meaning? Rather (*balki*) the plain (*sâf*) word is this that you have knowingly done disobedience-of-orders.'

(7) Turn 'neither I will read nor you will read, but (*balki*) whose turn (it) will be.'

(8) Turn 'Intelligent—what! thus say, that a beard is on (*men*) his belly'—meaning that he has a long beard. The phrase is proverbial, and is perhaps the nearest equivalent to the English of the text.

(9) Turn 'We folk indeed—well—the whole city is desirous (*mushtâq*) of his advent (*âmad*).'

(10) Turn 'One may say a lâkh (*lâkh koî kahe*), but more than all his own life (*apnî jân*) is dear to everyone.'

## PART III.

SELECTED PASSAGES FOR  
TRANSLATION INTO HINDUSTANI.

---

*INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.*

1. The illustrations of Grammar and Syntax and of the more important differences of idiom between Hindustani and English, which are contained in the foregoing Exercises, are by the nature of the case fragmentary and unconnected; and, though they are sufficient for their immediate purpose of teaching colloquial Hindustani, something more is wanted before the student can attempt with confidence the task of translating continuous English narrative, even of the simplest kind, into good Hindustani prose. In a word, the diction of the language must be studied and an insight gained into the formation of periods and paragraphs and their linkature—*tantum series juncturaque pollet*—before satisfactory progress can be made in this direction. Under ordinary circumstances this kind of knowledge is best acquired by an observant study of the best authors, but the short time usually at the disposal of the learner in this country is absorbed, so far as the text-books are concerned, in

spelling out and committing to memory the words, and in grappling, among other novelties, with the want of punctuation; and the consequence is that translation from English into Hindustani is the bugbear of the Examination room and—ever afterwards.

It may, therefore, be useful at this point to summarise in brief the more obvious features of the literary language, as a help to appreciation of style, and as a basis of a few suggestions for the encouragement and guidance of scholars in their first attempts at imitation.

2. Urdû was, in its beginnings, a *modus vivendi* between the Hindû tribes of Northern India and their Moslem conquerors, which owed its origin to the necessities of the times, and is now their most valuable relic. It has become by gradual refinement and adaptation the mother tongue of Hindûs and Mahomedans alike, and lends itself to their respective needs and prejudices with equal facility. Both parties in the compromise have held their own; for, though the Persian character and vocabulary have been naturalised without essential change, much in the same way as the Mahomedans themselves have become part and parcel of the population, the core and structure of the language are Hindî and Hindî alone. The student will do well, therefore, to bear in mind from the very first that a due recognition of the Aryan basis of Hindustani is essential to a right understanding of the genius of the language.\*

---

\* See, when opportunity occurs, the remarks made on this subject by Raja Siva Prasad in the English preface to the first edition of his Grammar of the Vernacular. The prose of Maulavi Nazîr Ahmed and Mirzâ Nausha (Gâlib), both of Dehli, and the verse

**3.** Simplicity and directness, for example, are among the most valuable qualities of Hindustani, which it owes to its base-form. This may be discerned in various particulars, to which the attention of the student has been already drawn; such, for example, as the use of words of which the meaning varies with the context, the device of doubling words to denote energy or distribution, the absence of case-endings, the avoidance of epithets, the large use of the Substantive Verb and of elementary verbs of action and movement, the terseness effected by the use of the Past Conjunctive Participle and of Causal and Compound Verbs, the exactitude of the tense-system, the preference for realistic description which is manifested in the use of the *oratio recta* and in the avoidance of impersonal statements, and lastly, a certain old world mannerism which proceeds from the love of what is familiar and conventional.

**4.** The Semitic aftergrowth has supplemented the expressiveness of Hindustani, without obscuring the native simplicity of the ground-form, for the exercise of a choice in words has tended to the survival of the fittest, irrespectively of their origin. The best writer is he who uses these 'fittest' words, and the best scholar he who knows why they are the 'fittest,' either *per se*, or with reference to the circumstances under which they are employed.

**5.** Another characteristic of the Vernacular is the

---

of Nazir of Agra, owe their excellence to the fact that these writers, albeit Mahomedan by birth and education, have accepted the circumstances under which Urdû became a language and have used it accordingly.



occasional ceremoniousness of the phraseology. The art of putting things *vernaliter*, i.e. with attention to etiquette and custom, is a feature of orientalism which adds dignity to the affairs of common life; and though, in the case of Hindustani, the forms used are mostly Persian, they are sufficiently in accord with Hindû sentiment to be very generally appropriate.

6. More distinctly rhetorical characteristics of the language are the regard paid to euphony and rhythm, not only in words and clauses, but throughout whole periods, and the management of the linkature rather by subtle changes in the form and setting of the diction than by the use of connective particles.\*

### 7. *Suggestions for Guidance.*

(1) Alteration in the normal order of the words in a transpositive language like Hindustani is a natural

---

\* Part II. deals with the principles of clause formation rather in a syntactical point of view than as an element of style, which, as said above, is best studied at first-hand from books. Students are now exceptionally fortunate in the possession of an admirable text-book, the *Taubat* of Nazîr Ahmed. This is a story of everyday life among a class of natives who speak Hindustani in its perfection, by one of themselves. It abounds in dialogue, is didactic and rhetorical in parts, and supplies incidentally a large number of words used in public as well as private life, and is the best available resource (no better could be desired) for obtaining a mastery of the language, for whatever purposes it may be required. It is most earnestly hoped that Probationers for the Indian Civil Service, or officers who desire to cultivate the 'great Indian Vernacular' for practical purposes, will not rest content with a hasty perusal of the first few chapters only which the Examiners demand, but that they will complete the study of the entire work after they have become domiciled in India, and make it their *vade mecum*, for such, in more ways than one, it deserves to be.

means of emphasis, which the translator should make the most of, so long as he is careful to avoid ambiguity or dissonance.

(2) It has been already pointed out that expressions connected with the use of Time take the precedence. Time also is the chief function of the verb, and closes the utterance. Of all tenses none require more care in translation than the English present. Thus, in such a sentence as 'Send him to me when he comes,' the temporal clause means 'when he has come,' and the verb must be rendered in Hindustani by a Past tense. Compare the sentences given at **44. 5** and **68. 5**. See also **162**.

(3) Where there is a choice of terms or phrases, the most familiar is likely to be the fittest, but it is good style to vary the rendering, if the term recurs. In examinations, the student should remember that the knowledge of a word includes ability to spell it correctly (see **6. 4**). If he is at a loss for the representative of a word, of which the meaning is important to the general sense of the passage before him for translation, he should use a paraphrase rather than leave a gap or resort to transliteration.

(4) Exactitude in the use of pronouns, whether as a matter of grammar or etiquette, is essential. They are omitted only when the sense is unmistakable without them. The usage of the Reflexive *apnâ* (see Exercise VI.) is specially important.

(5) The realism of Hindustani bars the easy transfer of personal qualities to things inanimate and *vice versâ*, which is characteristic of English. (See **24**.) It is better to omit an epithet than translate it unidiomatically.

(6) Personal and individual expression being characteristic of Hindustani, the English Passive should not be literally reproduced in translation, except when the agency is necessarily or intentionally vague. For example, such a sentence as 'The throne was occupied by a tyrant' can only be rendered 'A tyrant sat upon the throne,' whereas 'Many men were killed in the battle' may be translated literally.

Hindî neuter verbs and Arabic and Persian verbals in combination with *honâ* are often convenient representatives of the English Passive. (See 119.)

(7) The English prepositions 'of,' 'to,' 'for,' 'by,' and 'with' after adjectives and verbs require careful attention, or breaches of idiom will be inevitable. In this matter, the earlier sections of this work are very important.

(8) Clause for clause translation is equally ineffective with word for word translation, whether from English into Hindustani or from Hindustani into English, for the English arrangement of sentences and their parts, pauses, and parentheses is no guide to the formation of a Hindustani period, and must often be broken up by inversion or detachment to suit the methods of the latter. The translator should realise the general sense and argument of the passage he is engaged upon, and think how best he could explain it in outline to a native ignorant of English.

(9) In particular, the initial sentence should always be clearly and concisely worded, by the detachment of accessories, which may either form a separate sentence or be pieced in with what follows.

(10) The adjustment of relative clauses is often a key

to the cast of a period or paragraph. These clauses, and indeed all clauses which, in the idiom of Hindustani, precede the main statement, are especially useful in the passage from point to point of a description, without the more formal linkature of conjunctions, and at the same time without sacrifice of coherence. As in Latin, a great point is to *let the verbs have room*.

Punctuation is, or ought to be, inherent in the diction.\*

(11) A good prose style includes attention to sound as well as to sense; in other words, to the choice of harmonious words and phrases, and to concinnity and congruity in their combination, and to the symmetrical and rhythmic balancement of clauses.†

(12) Finally, the student will find it an invaluable assistance in translation to have stored his memory with specimen passages from the text-book, or with any well-told tale or description he may meet with.

\* Native publications are never punctuated, but a good reader, though he makes no pauses except in the momentary action of taking breath, is always intelligible to the practised listener. I have among my papers a tract lithographed for private circulation in 1863, in which the writer instructs his compatriots in the art of humouring the foibles of the 'Sahib-log.' One suggestion, under the head of Office-work, is that when a Munshi has to read papers to the Sahib, he should make pauses in the English fashion so as to enable him (the Sahib) to understand.

† Carried to excess, this is the *rangîni 'ebârat* (or 'florid style') of the Lucknow school. The plausibility of native 'petitions' and the skill with which half-truths and the inferences therefrom are disguised by a caressing smoothness of diction, have often been noticed. This is the *charb-zabâni*, or 'oiliness of speech,' of the professional scribe, and is a very different thing from the *shîrin-zabâni* of the accomplished author.

8. The Selected Passages which follow are divided into four sections of gradually increasing difficulty, though it is necessary to remember that the simplest English is not always the easiest to translate.

(1) *Fables and Apologues*.—Many of these are ancient friends in a slightly altered guise. They are adapted, for the purposes of this work, from the original Hindustani of Nazîr Ahmed.

(2) *Easy Narratives from Modern Indian History*.—These extracts are translated from a History of India written in the Hindî language for the use of country schools by Raja Siva Prasad, C.S.I., whose name has been mentioned in the note at p. 125.

(3) *Miscellaneous Pieces*, relating to Indian subjects.—The first nine of these form a single narrative from the pen of the late Lord Lawrence, which is quoted in Vol. I. of Mr. Bosworth Smith's admirable Life, and are chosen partly for their continuity and partly for the interest and suitability of the subject-matter. The remaining Pieces of this Section are selected for exercise in translating from a style of English which is not easily handled in Hindustani. They are borrowed from Dowson's Exercises, a work which contains no sufficient hints for the guidance of the student, and is, therefore, little used. The notes refer to a translation of my own, which was made for the benefit of Officers under my instruction at the Staff College in 1882.

(4) *Her Majesty's Proclamation* on assuming the Empire of India at the Close of the Mutiny.—This was read aloud in the first instance at a Darbar held at Allahabad on November 1st, 1858. The authorised version of this document, which was recited upon the same

occasion, was the work of the Mir Munshi of the Foreign Office at that time, and is referred to in the notes attached. The stateliness of the English original is fairly represented in translation, and the terms are well chosen.\*

---

## SECTION I.

### FABLES AND APOLOGUES.

---

#### 1.

<sup>1</sup> A starving fowl was scratching at a dung-hill in search of a grain of corn, when after a long time it suddenly <sup>2</sup> came upon a costly pearl. <sup>3</sup> 'Alas! for my

---

\* Further practice for the advanced student may be found in the study of the Urdû versions of the Indian Penal and Civil Procedure Codes, which illustrate the efficacy of the language as a legal instrument. They who wish to proceed farther may consult the translation of Mill's *Political Economy*, which was published by the Aligarh Society some years ago, or a recently finished version of the First Part of Butler's *Analogy*, by Mr. Williams of Shahjehanpur. Both these works are fairly successful illustrations of the adaptability of Hindustani for the purposes of sustained argument and philosophical disquisition. For Logic, the best available treatise in the Vernacular is M. Nazîr Ahmed's *Mabâdî ul Hikmat* (1st Edit. 1871), which is based on Persian and Arabic works in use among the Mohamedans. A work in English and Urdû, by Rev. T. J. Scott, of the American Mission in Oudh and Rohilkhand, called *Quwâ'if ul Mantiq* (1873), [should be an equally valuable aid to Missionaries and others who are interested in the inner life of the Indian Moslems.

ill-luck!' sighed the unhappy fowl. 'After all this toil  
 4 I have got only a pearl, 5 which can neither soothe my  
 feelings nor appease my hunger. 6 If some jeweller  
 or rich man had found it, he would have prized and  
 loved it; 7 but I am hungry enough to prefer a single  
 grain of barley to any number of such pearls as this.'

### Directions.

(1) Omit 'when' before the second clause, so as to make the clauses co-ordinate. Note that of the five indefinite articles in the first sentence the first and last are to be represented by *ek*. Omit 'of corn,' as the term is general, but retain 'of barley' in the last sentence. 'Starving' would be insufficiently rendered by *bhâkhâ* 'hungry.' The better way is to avoid the epithet and say 'being distressed by hunger,' *bhâk se be-tâb hokar*, to follow the noun. For the verb use *kurîd-rahnâ*, and omit 'at,' which is really a part of the verb. Use *ko* with the object.

(2) The independence of the second clause will be increased by changing the subject of the verb. Say, therefore, 'a pearl turned up' (*nikalnâ*). See 198. 4.

(3) This sentence requires consideration. To begin with, the parenthetical use of the verb is impossible in Hindustani. Then again, our peculiar use of the verb 'sigh' cannot be reproduced, and 'unhappy' is best avoided as an epithet of 'fowl.' Turn, therefore, 'Seeing the pearl, the fowl sighed dolefully and said, Alas!' etc. (to end of piece).

(4) The contemptuous turn of the expression may be given by inverting the order of the words and introducing the emphatic particles *bhî* and *to*, as *mujhko milâ bhî to motî*.

(5) Avoid the idea of agency, which the English idiom easily attributes to inanimate things, by turning thus: 'from which neither solace can be to my heart nor quieting to my hunger.'

(6) Begin with *yeh motî* instead of the pronoun 'it,' and see Exercise XXIV. for the tense of the verbs.

(7) The adversative clause should be constructed in harmony with the preceding, as follows: 'but in my behalf in such hunger

one grain of barley *would have been* (*thá*) much better than a *lák* (see 201. 10) of such pearls as this.' To express 'such . . . as this,' double the pronominal adjective.

## 2.

<sup>1</sup> Someone taxed a lazy fellow with lying long in bed after he was awake, and asked him how he occupied himself. He replied that <sup>2</sup> he occupied himself in deciding a very intricate case. <sup>3</sup> 'When I wake up,' said he, 'two fellows, <sup>4</sup> called Activity and Sloth, come to me. <sup>5</sup> Activity tells me to get up at once and engage in my worldly duties. Sloth replies that there is no need to get up yet—the whole day <sup>6</sup> is left for worldly duties; <sup>7</sup> one should take one's ease in the cool of the morning. <sup>8</sup> And so they go on, each trying to convince his opponent, while I arbitrate between them. <sup>9</sup> Surely you will allow that such a difficult case cannot be decided in a hurry?'

### Directions.

(1) This piece consists of two parts, a question and the reply. The first sentence contains the question, and may be turned as follows: 'Someone asked a lazy fellow—that—your eye indeed opens early in the morning, but what do you keep doing lying on and on in bed till so late?' See 114. 3, 8.

(2) Begin the reply here with the *oratio recta*, omitting 'said he' in the next clause.

(3) Repeat the phrase used by the questioner.

(4) Express this parenthetically: 'the name of one is A. and the name of the other S.'

(5) To bring out the personality, instead of 'Activity,' say 'that person whose name is Activity'; and so for 'Sloth' in the next sentence.

(6) 'Is left,' *pará hai*. See 117. 2.



(7) Omit the conjunction and turn 'This time of coolness is for ease.'

(8) Turn 'In short, the two opponents go on convincing one another, and I,' etc. Use the Progressive form of verb (118.) in the first clause, and the Continuative (126.) in the other.

(9) This form of appeal to justice is more directly expressed in Hindustani, as follows: 'Do *you* do justice (imp.), that, how can such a difficult case be decided quickly?' Comp. 176. 8.

### 3.

<sup>1</sup> An old man and his son were on a journey. They had a pony with them for carrying their traps, and went on foot themselves. The people said, <sup>2</sup> 'What idiots these two are! <sup>3</sup> They keep the pony for show and do the hard work themselves.' <sup>4</sup> On this the old man mounted the pony, and then they said, 'What a cruel father! He rides <sup>5</sup> at ease himself, and the son <sup>6</sup> plods wearily along behind.' Then the old man got off and made his son ride; <sup>7</sup> and the cry was, 'What a graceless son! The aged sire walks, and <sup>8</sup> the sturdy youth is not ashamed to ride.' Then the old man rode in front himself and mounted his son behind. Again the people said, <sup>9</sup> 'Apparently it is a borrowed pony, and carries the men and the baggage too! <sup>10</sup> Have the fellows no pity?'

#### *Directions.*

(1) The form of this piece needs little alteration. The difficulty is the choice of natural and congruous terms suited to the simple humour of the piece. The second sentence may be introduced by *aur*, and more pointedly expressed as follows: 'A pony was with (them)--(they) loaded on the pony (their) clothes and bedding, and both father and son went on foot.' *Pá'on pá'on chalná, bettgr*

here than *paidal chalnâ* (143. 7). *Thâ* being the verb of the first clause, omit the auxiliaries of the two Past Imperfects which follow.

(2) Introduce this, and the corresponding clauses which begin with 'What,' by *dekho*. 'See!'

(3) The idiomatic phrase *kotal rakhnâ* closely corresponds to the idea of 'keeping for show' in this connection. The next clause may be turned 'themselves (*khûd*) take up trouble.'

(4) 'On this' is best given by *yeh sunkar* 'hearing this.'

(5) 'At ease,' *maza men*, or *maze men*, as the translator chooses lit. 'in taste,' 'nicely.'

(6) The purposed dragging of this clause may be represented in Hindustani by a similar lengthening of the phrase, *pâ'on pâ'on pîchhe ghasittâ hûâ chalâ âtâ hai*. See 121.

(7) The English phrase may be replaced by 'Then too the people said,' to correspond with the terms already used.

(8) Turn thus: 'Himself (*khûd*) the shameless sturdy youth is riding.'

(9) 'Apparently,' *ma'lûm hotâ hai*. See 5. 14. Turn the next clause, 'besides the baggage two men are loaded (on it),' *ladlî'e hain*.

(10) Turn 'To them even does no pity come?' Comp. 68. 4.

#### 4.

<sup>1</sup> A Lion, a Bear, a Leopard, and a Wolf, in search of prey, settled to go to the river marshes and hunt in company, <sup>2</sup> on the understanding that they were to share and share alike in what was captured. <sup>3</sup> As it happened, they killed a nylghau, and this they divided into four equal shares in accordance with their agreement. <sup>4</sup> Each was about to take his share, when the Lion said, 'Listen, my friends; one of these shares is mine by right of treaty; I claim the second <sup>5</sup> because I am king of the forest <sup>6</sup> and receive a fourth of whatever is killed there by way of tribute; I shall take the third share <sup>5</sup> because it includes the heart and liver, which you are aware is my <sup>7</sup> favourite food; <sup>8</sup> and as

for the fourth share, to avoid the difficulty of dividing it between you three, <sup>9</sup> I may as well consume it myself.' <sup>10</sup> With this, the Lion devoured all four shares, while his friends looked blankly on.

### Directions.

(1) The first sentence is the most difficult here, and may be broken up as follows to suit the Hindustani idiom. Begin with a short sentence in these terms: 'A Lion and a Bear and a Leopard and a Wolf, the four (*châron*) were in search of prey,' omitting the indefinite articles in translation. The next sentence will be, 'They all agreed that,' followed by the *oratio recta*. See **146**. 12.

(2) The *junctura* here may be effected by the use of a relative clause, 'What prey will be found, we will all four together divide into equal shares.'

(3) All the pronouns may be omitted in this sentence. 'As it happened' is best translated by the Arabic adverb *ittifâqan*.

(4) Turn 'It was near that,' etc. (**150**. 13), and take care to double the reflexive pronoun. Begin a fresh clause at 'when,' *itne men*.

(5) For 'because,' see **156**. *sub jin*.

(6) Here again the *junctura* is best effected by a relative clause, *jo kahîn shikâr ho*. For 'by way of,' see **151**. 6

(7) The Arabic *gizâ* may serve for adjective and noun together.

(8) The best way of turning this is 'There remained the fourth share,' *rahâ chauthâ hissa*, followed by the correlative *so*, and the sentence then proceeds 'I do not know how to divide,' etc.

(9) A fresh clause, 'than this it is better that,' etc.

(10) 'With this' should be translated *yeh kahkar* 'so saying.' Compare Note (4) to last Piece. 'To look blankly on,' or 'gaze stupidly,' *munh-dekhtâ rah-jânâ*, and see **112**. 8 for a suitable turn of the expression.

## 5.

<sup>1</sup> A Cock, perched on the bough of a tree, was crowing away to his heart's content, when a Cat observed

him, and <sup>2</sup> being desirous of tempting him into her clutches, saluted him in a free and easy manner, and said: <sup>3</sup> 'Well, Mr. Cock, have you heard the proclamation?' 'What proclamation?' said the Cock. <sup>4</sup> 'Ha! ha!' laughed the Cat, 'then you don't yet know?' <sup>5</sup> A Committee of all the animals, beasts and birds, has been sitting these ten days since, and they have solemnly agreed that for the future no animal shall oppress or ill-use another, but that all shall pass their lives in peace and harmony. <sup>6</sup> A declaration to this effect has been signed by all the animals, and read aloud in the King's, that is to say, the Lion's, Darbar.' 'Praised be God!' cried the Cock. 'I am rejoiced to hear it. A great <sup>7</sup> cause of anxiety is removed.' <sup>8</sup> He had no sooner said this than he stretched out his neck and <sup>9</sup> clucked in an ominous fashion, just as if something alarming had come in view. <sup>10</sup> 'Bless me! What are you frightened at?' asked the Cat. 'Oh! nothing,' said the Cock; 'a couple of hounds <sup>11</sup> are racing in this direction.' <sup>12</sup> On this the Cat tucked in her tail and prepared to move on. The Cock said: <sup>13</sup> 'How now? Madam Puss, where is your ladyship off to? I thought this was the era of peace and harmony.' 'True!' said the Cat, 'but how can one tell whether these dogs have heard the proclamation or not? Perhaps, like you, they don't yet know.'

### *Directions.*

(1) Begin, as in the last piece, with a simple sentence, and omit the 'when' of the succeeding clause. The idea of 'was crowing away' may be conveyed in the Hindustani idiom by 'was giving crow on crow'; and a certain piquancy may be communicated to

the expression by using, in place of the ordinary word *bāng* 'crow,' the term *azān* 'call of the Muezzin,' which is permissible by association of ideas. Such a phrase as 'to his heart's content' cannot be literally translated; *khūshî kî hālat men* 'in a state of happiness' conveys the idea.

(2) This may be conveniently broken up as follows: 'Desired that having brought him down by some stratagem (*dhab*) she may finish his job. The Cat in a free and easy manner,' etc.

(3) 'Well' may be omitted, though *bhālā* is common enough. 'Mr. Cock,' *miyān murghe* (vocative).

(4) In Hindustani 'The Cat said *ahā*,' etc.

(5) Put the temporal expression first, and instead of saying 'a committee of all the animals,' etc., turn thus, 'a Committee has been going on: the animals of the whole world, beasts and birds, were collected,' etc.

(6) Turn: 'A declaration of this agreement having been made (*bankar*), the signatures of all the animals were attached (*hāc*)—that declaration was read out,' etc.

(7) 'Cause of anxiety,' in one word, *khadsha*.

(8) Either turn this in the way shown in 150. 8, or use the expression 'in this interval,' *isî darmiyān men*, or simpler, *itne men*.

(9) Turn thus: 'clucked in such a manner that, as it were, some alarming thing came suddenly in sight.' See 92. 1.

(10) The corresponding interjection is *khair to hai?* followed by 'having seen what are you afraid?'

(11) For this idiom see 121.

(12) Turn thus: 'Hearing this the Cat having depressed her tail began-to-move' (Inceptive compound).

(13) Turn thus: 'Why, lady, Madam Cat, where are you taking yourself off to?' *Kyān bî gurba khānam kahān tashrif le-jāte ho*, or *lī'e* might be used for *le*. See 108. (2).

## 6.

A poor countryman collected honey from the combs and <sup>1</sup> carried a jar full to the town for sale. <sup>2</sup> He was alone, and imagined to himself as he went along what arrangements he would make. 'I shall sell the

honey,' he soliloquised, 'and buy a pair of fowls. As soon as they lay a good score of eggs I shall hatch the chickens; and when the chickens grow up and begin to lay, I shall set them on the eggs; <sup>3</sup>and when I have a hundred fowls, I shall sell them and rear a flock of goats; <sup>4</sup>and after them in due course cows and buffaloes. Thus I shall become a great man, marry into a noble family, have an heir, <sup>5</sup>employ a tutor for my son, and as I go in and out shall see him <sup>6</sup>reading, and in my delight shall take him up in my arms and kiss him.' <sup>7</sup>Suiting the action to the word, he stooped: the jar of honey fell to the ground and was broken; <sup>8</sup>and eggs, chickens, goats, cows, buffaloes, wife, son, tutor, the whole family, floated away with the spilled honey.

### Directions.

(1) Turn 'having filled a jar with (it) (102. 1) carried (it) away towards the town to sell.'

(2) The word 'soliloquised' should be brought into this sentence from below, and the whole turned thus: '(He) was alone in the way—(he) went on talking in (his) mind (*dil hî dil men*)—he formed this imaginary plan, that,' followed by the *oratio recta*, the verbs in which should be in the Aorist tense, not the Future as in English.

(3) The *junctura* may be varied here by turning the sentence thus: 'In this way having collected a hundred fowls,' etc.

(4) Turn 'then increasing from goats,' etc., *phir bakrîon se barhâte barhâte*, etc. 106.

(5) Translate *bete ke wâste darwâza par ustâd naukar rakhûn*. The insertion of *darwâza par* 'at the door,' that is, in the rooms in the entrance portico, is useful with reference to the expression 'going in and out' in the next clause.

(6) 'Reading' means 'reading aloud,' *pukâr pukâr parhtâ hûâ*,

but 'see' may be literally translated, because it was the sight of his boy thus occupied which pleased the father.

(7) Turn thus: 'In the idea of taking up the boy his head (on which he was carrying the honey) stooped.'

(8) Precisely as in English; but see 'for the whole family,' **25.** and for the last clause omit the word 'spilled,' and say 'floated away in that very honey' (*bah-jânâ*).

## 7.

<sup>1</sup> A poor man suddenly became great. <sup>2</sup> Whatever he put his hand to prospered and all his commercial ventures turned out well. <sup>3</sup> He was in the habit of lauding his own wise management as the chief agent in the creation of his wealth. 'In a certain year,' he used to say, 'I bought up cotton <sup>4</sup> in the expectation that war would break out in America and that the price would rise. <sup>5</sup> My anticipations were realised. <sup>6</sup> A certain village which I purchased was a losing concern at the time, but now, in consequence of my administration, there is a surplus revenue of thousands of rupees. I bought ten calves at the Batesur fair, and people thought them dear at the price, but I sold them in Rajwâra <sup>7</sup> for four times what I gave.' <sup>8</sup> And thus he would go on quoting instances by the thousand. <sup>9</sup> After a time fortune turned and he became the victim of bad luck. In two years he was again a pauper. His houses began to tumble down; his tenants paid no rent; no rain fell in the village, and no corn was grown; <sup>10</sup> cows, buffaloes, horses, camels died of a murrain; his mansion caught fire and his furniture was destroyed; <sup>11</sup> and his money was all stolen. Then he abused Fate; <sup>12</sup> but Fate said: 'Ungrateful wretch, <sup>13</sup> you

referred all your prosperity to your own wise management, and now you blame me for your adversity.'

*Directions.*

(1) 'Suddenly' cannot be translated here by the ordinary Hindustani adverbs *yak-â-yak*, or *nâgâh*, or *bât kî bât men*, for it means 'comparatively soon' with reference to the circumstances told below. *Thore dinon men*, placed in the middle of the sentence is best. For 'great,' the somewhat exaggerated phrase *amîr-kabîr* is better than plain *barâ* in this connection; and it is good style to balance this double term by a slight extension of the subject. We shall have, therefore, *ek garîb aur muftis âdmî thore dinon men amîr-kabîr bangayâ*. Compared with *hogayâ*, *bangayâ* implies a power behind, in accordance with the teaching of the Apologue.

(2) Turn this by collateral clauses, each beginning with the Relative, as—'in what work (he) was putting (his) hand, profit was—what commerce (he) was doing, (to him) advantage was being received.' Omit the auxiliary of the Past Imperfect in all these verbs, it being obvious from the opening sentence that past time is spoken of. Comp. Piece 3. *Dir.* 1.

(3) Again omit the auxiliary *thâ*. Avoid the translation of 'wise' by the use of two nouns, 'wisdom and management,' and begin the *oratio recta* with the clause 'as the chief agent,' *ki main ne*, etc. omitting 'he used to say' in the next sentence. Comp. 145. 7.

(4) Turn 'thus, by way of adding force to the egotism, 'and I understood that,' etc. (*samajh-lenâ*). Use the future tense in the subordinate clauses.

(5) Turn 'Accordingly as I thought (Past Remote), so indeed it came to pass.' *Jaisâ . . . . . waisâ*. See 135.

(6) Turn 'When I bought a certain village there was a loss (*khasâra*) in it every year. I so managed that now,' etc.

(7) *Chaugune dâmon par*.

(8) Turn 'and he continued-describing thousands of examples of this tenour (*tarah*) before the people.'

(9) This may be put as follows: 'After some days the turning of fortune and bad-luck surrounded him.'

(10) Turn 'such a murrain came that all his cows, etc., perished,' but place the subjects of the subordinate clause first, after the manner of 150. 4.



(11) Effect the *junctura* here by a relative clause, *jo kuchh naqd thâ . . .*

(12) Omit 'but,' and with reference to the *burâ kahnâ* of the preceding clause say 'Fate hearing himself abused' (*apnî burâ'î sunkar*). Comp. **87. 1.**

(13) This will be most idiomatically turned by the use of two relative compound sentences, *jitnî behtarî*, etc., *jis qadr burâ'î*, etc being the respective commencements.

### 8.

<sup>1</sup> A traveller in the desert was sorely pressed by hunger, and <sup>2</sup> seeing a date-palm with ripe dates upon it <sup>3</sup> put a rope round his feet and climbed the tree. When he arrived at the top, the rope became detached from his feet and fell to the ground. <sup>4</sup> In this plight, his limbs refused their office and the man forgot to pluck his dates. He shouted and shouted; <sup>5</sup> not a soul was visible. He felt convinced that his end was come; <sup>6</sup> there was no rope to descend by; nobody was in sight to help him; <sup>7</sup> he could not cling to the tree for ever; in another moment he must fall and be dashed in pieces. In his despair he vowed <sup>8</sup> that if he reached the ground alive he would sacrifice a she-camel when he got home. On this he began cautiously to slide down the stem. <sup>9</sup> When he was nicely half-way down, he changed his mind. It occurred to him that the camel was pregnant, and that it would be wrong to sacrifice her; he would kill a cow-buffalo instead. <sup>10</sup> Sliding down a little farther, he reflected that the cow was in milk; her too it would be a waste to sacrifice—a goat would do as well. <sup>11</sup> He was now close to the ground, and gave up <sup>12</sup> the idea of the goat. <sup>13</sup> The goat, he remembered,

gave two *sers* of milk and threw three kids twice in the year—it would be hard to find such another goat; the object was to sacrifice a life of some kind, <sup>14</sup> and a fowl would answer the purpose. <sup>15</sup> When he reached the ground, he begrudged the fowl, though he told himself that it was wicked to break his vow, and that, having promised a life, he was bound to give one. <sup>16</sup> Just then Satan suggested to him that he might catch a louse in his breeches and pay his vow with that. <sup>17</sup> So he quickly found and cracked his louse: and thus what was a camel at the top of the tree became first a buffalo, then a goat, then a fowl, and then a louse; and in this last shape was sacrificed to God.

#### *Directions.*

(1) As in former examples, begin with a simple sentence, and omit the conjunction 'and.' Avoid the Passive, and say 'to a traveller . . . violent hunger was known.' For the adjective see **25**.

(2) Turn thus: '(He) looked and (to) red ripe (*lāl lāl*) dates are hanging on a date-tree.'

(3) Begin fresh sentence with 'this person,' etc. For 'rope' say skein or ring of rope, *rassī kī āntī*, descriptive of the mode in which natives ascend a branchless tree. See also **50**. 1.

(4) 'In this plight,' *yeh hāl dekhkar*, and see also **68**. 3. In place of 'refused their office' use the idiomatic *phūl-jānā* 'to swell,' and thus become incapable of motion; and *bhūl-jānā* in the next clause, as an echo of the first verb.

(5) Our phrase here is impossible in Hindustani. Turn 'up to the range of vision there was no trace of a human being,' *ādam-zād*.

(6) Begin here with the *oratio recta*, connecting it with the previous clause by *kī*.

(7) Put this interrogatively, 'How long shall I remain clinging to the date?' Proceed thus: 'some short time (*dam*) passes, when (*kī*) I have fallen and been dashed in pieces.' For this realisation of the Future, see **162**. 'And' is here the *aur* of simultaneity. See **186**.

(8) Turn : 'in this state of despair he vowed that,' followed by the *oratio recta*. 'On this' in the next clause will, therefore, be *yeh kahkar*.

(9) Turn thus : 'he descended half-way nicely' (Piece 3, Dir. 5 above); then his intention (*nîyat*) changed, and he thought that,' followed by the *oratio recta*.

(10) Turn 'then (*phir*) he slid a little farther and thought,' etc.

(11) Effect the *junctura* here by *yahân tak ki*.

(12) The Hindustani idiom is *bakrî kâ irâda* 'his intention as to the goat.'

(13) Continue the sentence with 'and thought that' with the *oratio recta* down to 'purpose,' as follows : 'The goat is of two *seers* milk, every sixth month (she) gives three young ones,' etc.

(14) Simply 'a fowl is enough.'

(15) Turn thus : 'having reached the ground, desire of the fowl came, and he began to say,' etc.

(16) 'Just then,' *itne men*; but the interruption is unnecessary. The suggestion may be put in the Imperative 2nd pers. sing.

(17) Turn 'he having quickly (*jhat*) got out (*nikâl*) a louse cracked (it)' (*chat mâr-dená*), the jingle of *jhat* and *chat* giving point to the expression. The last clause is 'and that she-camel, which was at the top of the tree, becoming first a buffalo, then, etc., was killed in the way of God' (*khudâ kî râh men*).

## 9.

<sup>1</sup> Once on a time all the Members of the body—hand, foot, mouth, tongue, teeth, throat, etc.—mutinied against their king, the Belly. <sup>2</sup> They made out that they were over-tasked, and that he had no right to keep them in subjection. The hand said he was <sup>3</sup> tired of working for the Belly, <sup>4</sup> now splitting wood, now carrying loads. The foot said he was fatigued with running errands. The mouth said the Belly had turned him into a mill. In short, every member had a complaint to make; and all agreed that they would serve the Belly no longer.

<sup>5</sup> The army having thus swerved from its allegiance, King Belly began to suffer all kinds of inconvenience. <sup>6</sup> The hand would not reach for water when the Belly was thirsty, nor the foot stir to fetch it. When he was hungry, the hand would not break the bread nor the mouth receive it. <sup>7</sup> He then stopped the army's pay and allowances, and suspended the issue of the blood ration. <sup>8</sup> The Mutineers began to starve and lose their vigour; <sup>9</sup> and at last in despair presented themselves before His Majesty, were pardoned, and resumed service on the old terms.

### *Directions.*

(1) For the method of dealing with a plurality of subjects see 17. (2).

(2) This may be expanded as follows: 'and all agreed among themselves that—See! we are all engaged in his service night and day, and the belly keeps us in his slavery without reason.'

(3) See 108.

(4) Turn 'Sometimes I have to split wood, sometimes,' etc., and see 51. 2.

(5) Turn as follows: 'When all this army,' etc.

(6) Begin with the temporal clause, as in the next sentence. 'The hand would not reach for water' is 'the hand was not moving (*hilná*) to take water'; and similarly, 'the foot was not moving (*chalná*) to the water-stand.' The auxiliary *thá* may be omitted here, and in the next sentence, as in former examples.

(7) The noun is here preferable to the pronoun in Hindustani. Translate 'allowances' by *jágír*, an estate given in consideration of military service. 'Suspend issue,' *band-karná*.

(8) Turn thus: 'the army of mutineers began to die of hunger and every soldier became weak.'

(9) Turn thus: 'at last in despair (*majbúr hokar*) all the members being present in the belly's presence (*hazír and huzúr*) got (their) fault pardoned,' etc. 'On the old terms,' *ba-dastár-i-sábiq*.

## 10.

<sup>1</sup> A tortoise who was bound on a journey was on the look out for a companion of his travels. A hare chanced to be going in the same direction, and the tortoise proposed <sup>2</sup> that they should travel together. <sup>3</sup> The hare could not help laughing. 'You idiot,' said he, <sup>4</sup> 'what comparison is there between you, a sluggish unwieldy crawler at the rate of a span for hours, and me, who rush like lightning and fly like the wind! <sup>5</sup> I should like to know how we can keep company.' 'True,' replied the tortoise; 'but, please God, I shall reach the end of the stage before you do. If you do not think so, <sup>6</sup> I am open to a bet.' So they agreed that whichever lost should have his ears cut off. <sup>7</sup> The tortoise started at his own deliberate pace, and the hare was out of sight in a couple of bounds. <sup>8</sup> When he had gone a short way, the latter reflected that he had already travelled a distance which the other could hardly make up by the evening. Why should he hurry? It would be well to have a sleep; and to sleep he went. Hours after, the tortoise dragged himself slowly up, and, seeing his rival asleep, quietly went on. <sup>9</sup> Late at night the hare woke up, and, seeing nothing of the tortoise, said to himself <sup>10</sup> that Mr. Slow-pace had not yet arrived; he would, therefore, go on and put up in the *serai*: <sup>11</sup> no doubt friend Tortoise would arrive on the morrow. <sup>12</sup> He had no sooner entered the *serai* than lo! there was the tortoise. <sup>13</sup> 'Now for your ears, my fine fellow!' cried the tortoise, as soon as he saw him; <sup>14</sup> but the hare tucked in his tail and tore off at such a pace that he is tearing about to the present day in dread for his ears.

*Directions.*

(1) Hindustani, like Latin, avoids the *parenthetical* relative clause, which is so convenient in English, because it is apt to bring the subordinate and principal verbs together. Hence, it is best to turn the initial sentence thus: 'To a tortoise a journey was on-the-tapis (*darpesh*); search of this was that (if I) get a companion then (I) may travel.'

(2) *Oratio recta*, and see 18. 8 for the form of expression.

(3) See 150. 1.

(4) See 187. 3, for the general idiom. 'Crawler at the rate of a span for hours' may be turned by the aid of the Past Conjunctive Participle repeated. 'Crawling and crawling in *pahars* a span (of) land.' Omit 'who' in the next clause. 'Fly' may be literally translated by *urná*, or better still by the phrase *farráte lená*.

(5) See 27. 15. 'I should like to know' may be translated by *bhalá*.

(6) Turn 'pray make a bet,' and proceed 'accordingly this was the bet, that who loses (*hárná*) his ears be cut off.'

(7) Avoid the adjective by using the adverb *áhista* (bis).

(8) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle, and put the reflections of the hare in the *oratio recta* down to 'sleep.' There is nothing in Hindustani to correspond to the 'latter' and the 'former.' Either repeat the noun, or use the demonstrative pronouns, taking care to be consistent in the application of *yeh* or *woh*. The verbs will be in the Aorist throughout. Begin the reflections with *jitná*, and the rest is easy. For 'already' see 77. 11.

(9) See 114. 5.

(10) *Oratio recta*. 'Goodness! (*allah re*) Slow-paced Mr. Tortoise (pl.) has not yet arrived!' For the verb use the ceremonious term which occurs in 198. 2.

(11) 'No doubt would arrive,' & *ht jáenge*.

(12) Begin with *jaun*. See 149.

(13) Turn thus: 'on seeing the hare the tortoise said, "Please bring (your) ears, my fine fellow,"' *lá'íye hazrat kán*, the order of the words being purposely pointed and emphatic.

(14) The Hindustani *junctura* dispenses with 'but.' 'In dread for his ears,' *kánon ke dar ke máre*.

## 11.

<sup>1</sup> The Sun and the Wind once fell to arguing which was the strongest. The Wind said <sup>2</sup> she could tear up and toss away mighty trees and grand buildings, and even mountains; she could create tempests on the ocean and sink ships, <sup>3</sup> turn day to night, <sup>4</sup> and with a mere shudder stop the business of the world. The Sun said nothing could withstand his heat; mountains took fire, <sup>5</sup> tons of ice were melted, the very ocean boiled; <sup>6</sup> and if any man dared confront him he simply scorched his face. At last they agreed to try their strength upon some special object. <sup>7</sup> The victim was a poor traveller wearing a cloak; and the test was, which could make him take it off. The Wind set to rage, and, filling the cloak, <sup>8</sup> lifted the traveller off his feet; but he only wrapped it the more closely round him. Then the Sun gently <sup>9</sup> put forth his warmth, and by-and-by the traveller doffed his cloak, <sup>10</sup> and the Sun was master of the field.

*Directions.*

(1) The initial sentence may be rendered conveniently here by two collateral clauses; as, 'Once between the Sun and the Wind an argument befel (*ho-parnâ*): each was calling himself strong.'

(2) *Oratio recta*, 'I am tearing up,' etc.

(3) Expand here 'becoming a storm I am making day night.'

(4) The *junctura* is here best effected by a relative clause; thus, 'When I shudder a little, I stop the whole work of the world.'

(5) 'Tons of ice (*lâkhon man barf*) melting become water' (verb in sing.).

(6) Effect the *junctura* as above (4) by way of rhetorical correspondence.

(7) Turn thus: 'A poor traveller's misfortune (*shāmat*) came—he was going along dressed in a cloak: this was the condition that, Let us see who can make him take off his cloak.' Potential compound of double Causal verb.

(8) Use the compound *le-urnā*.

(9) 'Put forth his warmth,' *dhūp nikālt*. See 13. 2.

(10) Turn thus: 'and the field remained (in) the Snn's hand.'

## 12.

<sup>1</sup> A Wolf, a Fox, and an Ass were conversing together on the instability of the present world. <sup>2</sup> They came to the conclusion that it would be the right thing to confess their sins at the shrine of some holy man and repent of their misdeeds. There was a saint's tomb in the forest, and, arrived here, each began to declare his sins.

The Wolf said: 'Alas! <sup>3</sup> how can I hope for pardon? <sup>4</sup> My hair stands on end when I recall one particular piece of cruelty. There was a confounded goat which had four kids, <sup>5</sup> and she used to leave these and wander about to people's houses in search of food. <sup>6</sup> I disapproved of the goat's unkindness in thus neglecting her young ones, and I killed her. <sup>7</sup> Then I reflected that the kids would certainly die without their mother. Why should they suffer such a misfortune? And God knows this was my sole reason for eating them up as well.' <sup>8</sup> With this the Wolf began to weep.

(*To be continued.*)

### *Directions.*

(1) As in the last piece, the first sentence may be rendered in two clauses. Insert in the first 'all three seated,' by way of sum-



mation. The second clause may run, 'there was mention of the world's instability.'

(2) The idea of 'conclusion' may be conveyed by turning the phrase thus: 'At length they agreed (*salâh karnâ*) that,' followed by the *oratio recta*, but omitting the clause 'it would be the right thing,' because the verb chosen is sufficiently expressive.

(3) Turn 'How will my pardon be?'

(4) Turn thus: 'I have committed one such tyranny, that, when I remember it, my hair,' etc.

(5) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle, with Continuative form **126.** for the second verb. 'In search of food' may be rendered here *apnâ pet bharne ke lî'e*.

(6) Turn thus: 'This unkindness of the goat in that (*ki*) she was not taking care, etc. . . . was displeasing to me.'

(7) As always, put the reflections in the *oratio recta*, the first verb in the Future, and the second in the Aorist.

(8) See Piece **4.** 10 above.

### 13.

(Continued.)

The Fox said: <sup>1</sup> 'Do not grieve, my good tender-hearted friend. Though you did kill the goat and her kids, God looks to the motive, and <sup>2</sup> your motive was righteous on both occasions. The goat deserved death for neglecting her young ones; and in killing them too I feel sure <sup>3</sup> you had no thought of self. You saved them from orphanage and the sad fate of being motherless, and may certainly hope for a reward in Heaven. <sup>4</sup> My sad case, on the other hand, is really difficult. What is to become of me on the Day of Judgment, or how I can expect to be pardoned, I do not know. <sup>5</sup> Hell itself would be scared at something which I did. Somebody had reared a lot of fowls, and the wretches were always quarrelling and screeching and making a noise; <sup>6</sup> the neighbours were worried to death; the fowls

dirtied not only <sup>7</sup> their own place but the whole quarter; <sup>8</sup> their filth and stench were everywhere; <sup>9</sup> and they had the impertinence to drink water out of the citizens' plates and dishes. <sup>10</sup> It was the daily complaint. <sup>11</sup> My soul was vexed at hearing of these annoyances, and one day when I could bear it no longer I went to the fowl-house and <sup>12</sup> made a clean sweep of all the fowls.' With this the Fox began <sup>13</sup> to shed floods of tears. 'My good lady,' said the Wolf, 'why weep so bitterly? You have done nothing wrong. The fowls one and all deserved their punishment; and in putting them to death <sup>14</sup> you have won the guerdon of a safe entrance into Paradise.'

(To be continued.)

### Directions.

(1) Place the vocative first with *ae* initiatory, and expand the verb to balance the double epithets by turning 'do not weep and do not lament' (2nd pers. sing.).

(2) Turn 'in your motive was goodness.'

(3) Turn 'there was no object of your own,' *terā kuchh apnā matlab na thā*.

(4) The point of this clause may be given in Hindustani by turning 'the difficulty indeed is of unfortunate me,' in which the particle *to* serves for 'on the other hand.' In the next sentence, the final 'I do not know' may be idiomatically given by placing *dekhi'e* at the beginning.

(5) Turn as follows: 'I have done such a deed that even Hell will seek refuge from me.'

(6) Use here the phrase given in 190. 4.

(7) 'Their own place,' that is, the fowl-house, and translate accordingly.

(8) The proper way to turn this is, 'Wherever you look, dung; wherever you go, stench.' For the use of the Aorist, see 193. 10.

(9) Turn 'and these fowls were so ill-mannered that they were drinking water in the crockery of the people of the quarter.'

(10) The Continuative form *hûâ karnâ* should be used here.

(11) This kind of phrase can only be met by the use of some corresponding idiom, such as *kalejâ pak-uthnâ*; and for 'hearing' recollect the idiom noticed at 106.

(12) Similarly for this phrase, the meaning may be expressed by 'tearing them in pieces I swept the platter clean,' *safâ chat kardâllâ*.

(13) Here, too, either use the phrase *âth âth ânsû ronâ* or *betâhâshâ ronâ* 'to weep unrestrainedly.'

(14) Turn as follows: 'you have won such a reward (*sawâb*) that you will go (*chalâ jânâ*) into Paradise without account.'

## 14.

(Concluded.)

Then the Wolf and the Fox told the Ass to declare his misdeeds. The Ass said: 'I have neither claws <sup>1</sup> to rend with nor teeth to bite with. In my whole life <sup>2</sup> I have only twice done wrong. Once, when I was very hungry and carrying a load of grass, I took a little of it without my master's leave. Another day, as I was going along, the boys began to torment me, and I lashed out at one of them, but <sup>3</sup> no one was kicked. Nevertheless, I admit that I was wrong.'

The Wolf said: 'You villain! <sup>4</sup>Two such enormities, and yet you hope for pardon! You embezzled your master's property, and ate grass <sup>5</sup> for want of which there is no knowing how many animals died of hunger. <sup>6</sup>You lashed out, as you say, at a poor boy. If the boy had been killed, <sup>7</sup>a life would have been lost, and his parents and relations, a whole family, in fact, would have perished of grief.'

The Fox said : ' Verily, such sins as these are unpardonable. I never heard such a tale before. This Ass is not merely a sinner, <sup>8</sup> but an ingrate, a thief, and an assassin, and as such is worthy of death.'

On this, the Wolf and the Fox seized upon the Ass and tore him in pieces.

### *Directions.*

(1) It is necessary to insert 'anyone' after each of the two verbs, 'with' being omitted.

(2) Turn 'by me two faults were done (*hûâ*)'; and in correspondence with this translate 'once' by *ek to yeh ki ek din*, etc., and 'another day' by *dusre, ek roz*, etc.

(3) For the idiom here see **52.** 15, viz. *ke* for *ko*.

(4) An illustration of this mode of expression occurs at **187.** 4. In order to express 'enormities' and emphasise the *two*, translate *aise bare bare ikhatte do do gunâh*.

(5) Turn 'from which (it is) not known how many,' etc.

(6) Repeat the ass's words with alteration of Pronoun, and omit 'as you say.'

(7) Avoid the Passive by saying 'there would have been loss of a life' (*hûâ thâ*). Comp. Piece I. Dir. 7.

(8) Turn thus : 'but (*balkî*) on account of being a sinner, etc. is worthy of death.'

## SECTION II.

## EASY NARRATIVES FROM INDIAN HISTORY.

## 1.

<sup>1</sup> European nations were for long ages unacquainted with a maritime route to India. <sup>2</sup> Commerce in India itself was carried on with the neighbouring countries of Persia (*Irân*), Arabia (*'Arab*), Egypt (*Misr*), and China (*Chín*) only, <sup>3</sup> navigation being confined to the Arabian Sea and the Bay of Bengal. The mariners never ventured out into the open sea, <sup>4</sup> and were not likely to pass round Africa to the Atlantic. <sup>5</sup> But the treasures of India, conveyed by sea to Egypt and Bussorah (*Basra*), and thence overland to Europe, were a source of so much profit, that <sup>6</sup> the discovery of a direct route became a passion with Europeans. <sup>7</sup> Some, believing that the earth was round, sailed westwards and found themselves brought up by the American coast. Others, under the impression that the land was surrounded by water on all sides, coasted northwards, and came to a standstill in the frozen waters of the Arctic Ocean. Others again, bethinking themselves that India was to the east of Africa, attempted to sail round that continent, <sup>8</sup> but were driven back by tempests, and named the point of their retreat the Cape of Storms. <sup>9</sup> At length, in 1497 A.D., Emmanuel, King of Portugal, sent out an expedition of three vessels under Vasco da Gama, <sup>10</sup> who made light of the dangerous Cape, and, after a voyage of eleven months, cast anchor off Calicut (*Kallikôt*) on the Malabar (*Malebâr*) coast.

*Directions.*

(1) The initial sentence may take the form suggested at 8. (1) in the preceding section.

(2) Give greater personality to this by saying 'people' rather than 'neighbouring countries,' and express 'people' by the affix *wáldá*, in the plural, attached to the country last named in the list.

(3) Begin a fresh clause here and arrange the clauses in the following manner :—'People (*log*) were sailing their ships as far as the gulfs of A. and B.—thinking the sea (to be) a shoreless ocean they were not stepping outside those gulfs,' omitting the auxiliaries of the Past Imperfect, because *tht* will have been mentioned in the preceding sentence.

(4) This terse sentence may be most effectively turned by placing it in the interrogative form, and using the Past Conditional; as, 'When could they have had the spirit?' etc. See 174. 4-

(5) *Magar* immediately followed by a relative clause.

(6) Turn 'Europeans were remaining very enthusiastic in finding,' etc.

(7) Express this and the similar beginnings of the next two sentences by *koí yeh samajhkar ki*, varying *samajhkar* by *sochkar*, or *is khayál se*. The auxiliaries of the Past Imperfects may be omitted throughout.

(8) Turn 'And having gone half-way on account of storms were turning (*mur-áná*) back, and were calling the name of that place *Rás-táfán*.'

(9) The *junctura* may here be effected by *yahán tak ki*. See last Sect. 8. 11.

(10) Conclude with a fresh sentence in the following form :—'Accordingly he thought nothing either of the storms or the Cape of Storms, going on and on (106.) rounding Africa in a period of eleven months,' etc.

## 2.

<sup>1</sup> Following the example of the Portuguese (*Portugál-wále*), the Dutch (*Dach*) and the French (*Farásís*) began to voyage hitherwards; <sup>2</sup> and it was hardly possible that the English (*Angrez*) should remain inactive. <sup>3</sup> An

association of merchants was formed in London in 1599 A.D., with a capital of thirty lakhs, and a charter was granted them by Queen Elizabeth, which secured a fifteen years' monopoly of the eastern trade. <sup>4</sup> Such an association is called a 'company' in English: hence the name 'East India Company.' <sup>5</sup> The shareholders held quarterly meetings known as the 'Court of Proprietors,' <sup>6</sup> and those of them who held shares of five thousand rupees or more were entitled to vote, pass laws and regulations, and declare dividends. <sup>7</sup> The general superintendence was vested in a body of twenty-four proprietors, who held shares to the amount of not less than twenty thousand each. These were called the 'Court of Directors,' and were presided over by a 'Chairman.' <sup>8</sup> The Company's Indian possessions were gradually known as the Presidencies of Calcutta, Bombay, and Madras, and each of these was ruled by a 'President' in 'Council.'

<sup>9</sup> At that time the Company's servants were divided into four grades, viz., Writers, up to five years' residence in India; Factors, from five to eight years; Junior Merchants, from eight to eleven years; and Senior Merchants, from eleven years upwards; and from these latter the 'Members of Council' were selected.

### *Directions.*

(1) See for this idiom **130. 3.**

(2) Put this clause interrogatively, much in the same manner as was suggested in Note (4) to last Piece.

(3) The best way to reproduce this sentence will be gathered from the following skeleton form:—Some London merchants made an association and collected a capital, and received a charter to the

effect that for fifteen years no fellow-countryman be allowed, etc. The student will observe that the Passives are avoided, and that 'monopoly,' for which there is no corresponding term in the language, is paraphrased.

(4) The words in guillemets are to be transliterated.

(5) Begin with relative clause as follows:—'The assembly of shareholders which,' etc. After the transliteration of Court of Proprietors add the literal meaning in Hindustani.

(6) The *junctura* is here: 'In this assembly the person who,' etc.

(7) Considerable alteration will be found necessary to avoid the English Passives. In skeleton form: 'For general superintendence (130. 6). . . the twenty-four men whom they were appointing, etc. . . . their title was . . . ; and the shareholder who had less than . . . could not be chosen for the "Directory"; and they called the president of this "Court" "Chairman."'

(8) Turn thus: 'In India 'gradually three Presidencies became, which are known by the name of, etc., and in the three three "President" with their respective "Council" began to dwell.' For 'respective' see 44. 11.

(9) For 'Company' say *sarkâr kampanî*. Omit 'viz.' and use *ek, dâsre, tîsre, chauthê* for the several descriptive clauses.

### 3.

In 1715 A.D. the President of Calcutta sent two Factors with presents <sup>1</sup> on an embassy to the Court of Farrukhsiyar. His <sup>2</sup> Majesty was then labouring under a severe illness, and, as luck would have it, was cured by a Dr. Hamilton who accompanied the envoys. For this service he was desired to name his own reward. He asked nothing for himself, but <sup>3</sup> on the Company's behalf besought the imperial permission to purchase thirty-seven townships in Bengal, with the privilege of introducing and conveying merchandise free of search and duty. <sup>4</sup> We admire Dr. Hamilton's magnanimity



in preferring his country's interest to his own. <sup>5</sup> India in those days exported chintz and cotton cloth to England, <sup>6</sup> and the object of the Company's servants in purchasing territory in the neighbourhood of Calcutta was to settle there a sufficient number of weavers to save them the trouble of bringing in cloth and chintz from remote villages. <sup>7</sup> Marvellous are God's ways! <sup>8</sup> The Indian weavers have remained stationary, and English enterprise has won possession of the export trade to India. <sup>9</sup> The expected acquisition of territory was frustrated for the time by the Subahdâr of Bengal, <sup>10</sup> who prohibited the owners from selling their landed property. <sup>11</sup> But the permission of free trade materially affected his interests, for the President conveyed not only the Company's goods under his seal and signature free of search and duty, but also his own and his friends' merchandise.

### *Directions.*

(1) 'On an embassy' should be personally expressed 'in the way of ambassadors,' *ba-taur elch' on ke*. See 150. 6.

(2) The next two sentences may be combined as follows:—'At that time the Emperor was very ill, but when, as luck would have it, the Emperor recovered under the treatment of Dr. H., who accompanied the envoys, he commanded that—Ask your reward, what you ask you shall have for the asking.' Our phrase 'as luck would have it' may be turned by *husn-ittifâq se*. The use of the *oratio recta* in the final clause adds much to the force of the narrative.

(3) The *oratio recta* again: 'If Your Highness approves, then let leave, etc. be received by the Company, and whatever goods of the C. are despatched let them remain exempt from search on account of duty.' The Passives here are avoided by the use of the verbs

*milnâ* and *rawâna honâ*, the latter of which should be in the Continuative form.

(4) The idiomatic rendering is, '(If) you ask the truth, Dr. H. did a work of great magnanimity in that he,' etc. See 166. 1.

(5) Turn thus: 'In those days from India chintz, etc. was much going' (Continuative).

(6) Effect the *junctura* here by *chunânchi*. The final clause of this sentence may be turned 'that they may not again have to go about from village to village (*gâ'on gâ'on phirnâ*), in search of cloths.'

(7) A common phrase is *kyâ shân 'izadi hai*, followed by *ki*.

(8) Turn thus: 'The weavers here remained the same weavers, and Englishmen becoming experts in this art instead (*ulte*) themselves began to bring,' etc.

(9) Avoid the passive construction by making the *subahdâr* the subject of the verb, and express 'expected' by placing 'territory' (*zamîndârî to*) at the beginning of the sentence.

(10) The relative clause here is not in accordance with the idiom of the language. An appositive clause introduced by *ya'nt*, 'i.e.,' is the best resource. Translate 'owners' by *zamîndâr*, and then 'landed property' may be omitted.

(11) Turn thus: 'but from the C.'s goods becoming exempt from duty he had much loss, for the P., besides the C.'s goods, was making signature of exemption of,' etc.

#### 4.

Sirâjuddaula then sent <sup>1</sup> a verbal message to the English prohibiting the strengthening of the Fort; <sup>2</sup> and, being wild at their contemptuous disregard of his order, commenced hostilities by seizing the Factory at Kâsimbâzâr. He<sup>3</sup> next laid siege to the Fort of Calcutta, <sup>3</sup> which was held at that time by less than a hundred men. As there seemed no hope of saving the Fort, many of the English community followed Governor Drake's example and took refuge on board ship; and

those who remained were taken prisoners next day by the Nawwab's troops. <sup>4</sup> Mr. Holwell, who was the officer in command, was brought handcuffed into the Nawwab's presence, but was at once released from this indignity and assured by Sirâjuddaula that he and his men should be unharmed. At night, however, <sup>5</sup> in default of other accommodation, the Nawwab's men confined their prisoners, one hundred and forty-six in number, in a chamber, <sup>6</sup> henceforth known in English as the 'Black Hole,' which was only eighteen feet long by fourteen broad. <sup>7</sup> Of that night the prisoners alone could tell the horrors. Many of them were wounded, many were intoxicated, <sup>8</sup> the heat and thirst were intolerable; and when the door was opened in the morning only twenty-three came out alive, <sup>9</sup> and they more like dead than living men.

### *Directions.*

(1) Turn this by saying 'Sent word by the mouth of a messenger' (**34. 3**), followed by the prohibition directly expressed.

(2) The description is best carried on in Hindustani thus: 'The E. paid no attention to this order (*bât*); then S.'s blood boiled, and being angry, he first, etc. . . . and after that,' etc. (down to 'Calcutta').

(3) See last Piece, Note (10). In this instance, begin the new clause with *ittifâqan*.

(4) Avoid the passives throughout this sentence by the following arrangement:—'When they brought their (*unke*) officer H. *shâib* handcuffed before S., then he immediately had the handcuffs opened and said that, "All of you be of good cheer; there shall no harm be yours."'

(5) Turn 'When they found (*milnâ*) no other place for the prisoners to remain in.' See **52. 5**.

(6) Here are two relative clauses, of [which the first should be

detached in the form of a fresh sentence, as an additional particular, as follows:—‘They call this chamber in English the “Black Hole,” that is, *kālā bil*.’

(7) The native idiom here is more realistic. ‘Whatever passed on the lives of those prisoners, they indeed (*wohī*) will be knowing.’ Use the Pres. Pres.

(8) Use a double clause, ‘There was violence of heat; thirst was incalculable.’

(9) Turn thus: ‘But their persons (*sūrat*) were worse than even dead men.’

## 5.

Clive marched from Calcutta with three thousand men and nine guns. Sirājuddaula, <sup>1</sup> on the other hand, reached Plassy (*Palāsi*) with a force of fifty thousand horse and foot, including forty or fifty Frenchmen, and over forty guns. The battle was fought on the 23rd of May 1757 A.D. <sup>2</sup> Before the commencement of the action Sirājuddaula placēd his turban at Mīr Ja‘far’s feet and asked his forgiveness. In reply, he advised him <sup>3</sup> to defer the engagement till the next day and to fall back in the meanwhile; and the Diwān Rai Dallabh also expressed himself in favour of retirement on Murshidabad. <sup>4</sup> The army had no sooner begun this movement than the English sprang upon it like leopards on a herd of deer. <sup>5</sup> The Nawwab’s men fled, and the pursuit was continued for six miles. <sup>6</sup> Such was the victory of Plassy, which may well be called the foundation of the English empire in India. <sup>7</sup> Sirājuddaula was unable to stay his flight even at Murshidabad. <sup>8</sup> He could trust no one; indeed, How could he? for he had wronged all. <sup>9</sup> He fled towards Rajmahal with one of his Begains and a eunuch, but was recognised near that

place by a *Fuqir* whose nose and ears he had ordered to be cut off on some previous occasion, and who now at once reported his discovery to the Governor of the District. This man, a brother of Mir Ja'far, sent the Nawwab back a prisoner to Murshidabad. <sup>10</sup> Mir Ja'far was disposed to clemency, but his son, the hard-hearted Miran, had the captive put to death <sup>11</sup> without his father's knowledge.

### Directions.

(1) Express this by *ádhar se* at the beginning of the sentence, in correspondence with the foregoing *Kalkatta se*.

(2) *Pahle to* will suffice for the first six words.

(3) Use the *oratio recta* here, and in the next clause.

(4) Turn this sentence in the fashion of **187. 2.**

(5) Use *fauj* for 'men,' and insert *kampani ki fauj* in the next clause as the agents in the pursuit. Turn the second verb 'making pursuit came along.' See **121.**

(6) Turn thus: 'By this same victory of Plassy, one may say (*goyá*), the foundation of the English rule was established.'

(7) Turn thus: 'Even then S.'s feet were not planted in M.'

(8) This sentence is difficult, and requires the use of the Past Conditional in the second clause, as follows:—'Trust indeed of anyone was not to him (*thá hi nahín*), and trust could have been (*ho-saktá*) then to him, had he done good (*bhalá'i ki hoti*) with anyone.' (See **170.**) Insert *jab* after *ki* in last clause.

(9) Introduce this sentence by *náchár*. In the second clause avoid the passive by making *fuqir* the subject of the verb, immediately followed by the first relative clause in parenthesis. The second relative clause should be detached as a new sentence.

(10) This may be turned in imitation of the idiom exemplified at **201. 9** by inserting *to khair* after M. J.

(11) Turn 'without informing his father.' See **96.**

## 6.

<sup>1</sup> Mysore (*Maisúr*) was ruled at this period by Haider 'Ali. <sup>2</sup> This man, whose father had risen from a common soldier to a high rank in the service of the Nawwab of Sira, became conspicuous for his daring valour in the army of the Mysore Diwan; and eventually pensioned off the ruling Raja and himself became sovereign of the country. The discovery of a hidden treasure at Bidnaur further increased his resources, and he began to extend his dominions on all sides. In the year 1767 A.D. Nizam Ali, accompanied by an English contingent, according to an existing treaty, made an attack upon Mysore; and Haider, being defeated by the English, formed a junction with <sup>3</sup> the latter. <sup>4</sup> The confederates, with an army of seventy thousand against twelve thousand English, were defeated with a loss of sixty-four guns. Hereupon, the Nizam made terms with the English; but Haider Ali still maintained hostilities, <sup>5</sup> sometimes losing and sometimes gaining ground, till at last he too made peace with the Company and <sup>6</sup> concluded an offensive and defensive alliance on the basis of mutual restorations.

*Directions.*

(1) See above, Introductory Remarks, par. 7. (10).

(2) If the English order of clauses were copied here, the subject would be too far removed from the principal verb 'became,' which in Hindustani must be placed at the end of the sentence. The best plan is to break up the sentence into two collateral clauses, thus:—'This man's father had risen,' etc., followed by 'He himself remaining (106.) in the army of D. of M., and doing work of

bravery and manliness, increased so much that he,' etc. Observe in this the way in which the epithet 'daring' (see 101. (1), is got rid of, and the adverb 'eventually' expressed. 'Ruling Raja' may be simply translated *wahân kâ râjâ*, and 'became' in the last clause may be forcibly expressed by the compound *ban-baithnâ*.

(3) Nizam Ali was Subahdar of the Deccan, hence instead of the 'latter' use the term *sûbahdâr*.

(4) This sentence is not easy to dispose of, though the terms are simple. Turn as follows: 'Then these two, acting in concert (*muttafiq hokar*), encountered the English with an army of seventy thousand, but the E. with an army of twelve thousand beat them all and took sixty-four guns.'

(5) Turn thus: 'In these hostilities sometimes his loss was taking place (*hojânâ*), sometimes (the loss) of the English,' and connect this with the next sentence by *yahân tak ki*. Comp. last Sect. 8. (11).

(6) Expand this difficult clause as follows:—'Both sides (*tara-fain*), who the provinces of which had taken, those they restored, and both together for their respective protection made a treaty of mutual assistance.' 'Assistance' is here *mo'âwanat*, this form of verbal being expressive of reciprocity. See App. A, Form III.

## 7.

Tippoo (*Tipû*) had made peace with the Company <sup>1</sup> under the pressure of necessity, and <sup>2</sup> it was not strange that he still cherished feelings of hostility. The Governor-General had proof that he was corresponding with the French, with the object of obtaining their assistance in his designs; <sup>3</sup> and, being a man of great determination, he at once issued orders for the assembling of an army at Madras, and <sup>4</sup> gave Tippoo the choice of two alternatives, viz., either the cession of his territory on the Malabar coast to meet the expenses of the concentration of the troops, an undertaking to give up all communication with the French and to expel all French-

men from his dominions, the admission of a British Resident at the Court of Mysore, <sup>6</sup> or, on the other hand, war. <sup>6</sup> Tippoo having vouchsafed no reply to these demands, the Company's forces crossed the frontier on the Madras and Bombay sides. <sup>7</sup> The Nawwab of Haiderabad sent an auxiliary force, but <sup>8</sup> the Peshwa was induced by Scindhia (*Sendhia*) to hold aloof. Tippoo encountered the English at a distance of forty miles from his capital, and was defeated and fell back.

(*To be continued.*)

#### *Directions.*

(1) This phrase may be turned by *majbûr hokar* placed at the beginning of the sentence.

(2) Put this interrogatively, 'What wonder that the fire of hatred remained burning in his bosom?' Comp. **159**. 1.

(3) Begin fresh sentence 'He was,' etc.

(4) Turn thus: 'Wrote word to T.' following this by a statement of the terms offered in the *oratio recta*, the alternatives being either the payment of the expenses, a treaty adverse to the French, the admission of a Resident, or war.

(5) Turn thus: 'or, consider the Company your enemy.'

(6) The form of continuation best suited to the Hindustani idiom is 'When no answer to this came from the side of Tippoo.'

(7) Get rid of the adjective here by saying 'The army of the N. of H. too was companion of the Government in this expedition.'

(8) Turn thus: 'by the tempting of Mahârâ; Sendhia the P. was not a sharer in help.'

## 8.

(*Continued.*)

<sup>1</sup> He assumed that the English army would advance by the same route it came before, and therefore stripped



that part of the country of forage and supplies; but when he found that <sup>2</sup> another line of march was taken, he was utterly disheartened, and told his followers that <sup>3</sup> his days were numbered. They said they would die with him. The English at once laid siege to Seringapatam (*Shrîrangapatam*), <sup>4</sup> while the allies looked on. The Governor-General in person directed the operations; and on the 4th of May 1799 A.D. the English flag was planted on the walls. Tippoo's corpse was found amongst the slain, and his sons <sup>5</sup> surrendered themselves. <sup>6</sup> The spoils amounted to nine hundred and twenty-nine cannon and a hundred thousand stand of arms, with ammunition, and more than ten millions in cash and jewels. <sup>7</sup> By rights the territory of Tippoo ought to have been partitioned among the victors, but the Governor-General, deeming it impolitic to enlarge the Nizam's dominions, divided a portion only between the Company and the Nizam, and assigned the remainder to <sup>8</sup> the representative of the Hindû regime who had been dispossessed by Haider Ali, <sup>9</sup> on condition that he should maintain a contingent of the Government troops for the safety of the kingdom, at a cost of seven lakhs, and that if the necessity arose, the civil administration of the country should be placed in the hands of English officials.

#### *Directions.*

(1) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle in the first clause followed by *ki* with the *oratio recta*, and omit 'and therefore' in the next. 'Stripped,' etc. may be rendered by 'went along destroying.' **121.**

(2) Turn thus: 'the English have [not come by this road, (and) have chosen another road.'

(3) The corresponding idiom is 'My days are arrived.' The answer of the soldiers may be idiomatically paraphrased 'Where your sweat will fall, our blood will fall,' which occurs in the Hindi original.

(4) A collateral clause in this form: 'The Nawwab's army remained looking at the spectacle.' See 118.

(5) The simple expression *hâzir hâe* 'were in attendance' (in the Governor-General's camp) is sufficiently significant.

(6) Begin by the enumeration of the details, and add 'came into the hands of the English.' See 51. 13.

(7) Form a concessional sentence, and translate 'ought to have been,' etc. by *châhî'e thâ ki*, followed by the Past Conditional.

(8) Turn: 'to the heir of the old Raja of M.,' the title of Raja being a sufficient indication of 'Hindû,' and serving as antecedent to the relative clause 'whom H. A. had turned out thence.'

(9) Turn as follows: 'and had this stipulation made (*karâ-lenâ*) that in future for protection a Government army remain (*rahâ karnâ*), and seven lakhs of rupees yearly expenditure be paid (*adâ hââ karnâ*), and when necessity falls (*parnâ*) the Government carry on the administration of the country in its own method.'

## 9.

Scindhia sought to annex the district of Gohad to his territories, but <sup>1</sup> the Rana was an ally of the Company and asked for their assistance; and in consequence Captain Popham, who was marching with a small force to join the main army under General Goddard, received orders to drive the Marhattas out of Gohad. Having effected this, Popham seized the Fort of Lahâr and then laid siege to Gwalior, <sup>2</sup> one of the most formidable forts in India, perched on the summit of an almost perpendicular rock. The people of those parts believed that, if only ten men were present to roll down stones on the attacking party, <sup>3</sup> no force, however large, could take it by assault; <sup>4</sup> and, as the Fort was then held by a thou-

sand picked men of Scindhia's army, well supplied with the materials of war, <sup>5</sup>Popham was at a loss how to proceed. Chance befriended him. He got hold of a thief who was in the habit of entering the Fort by a secret foot-path; and by this route, before the morrow's dawn, Popham first and his men close behind, <sup>6</sup>by means of ropes and ladders, by driving pegs into the crevices of the rock, and grasping shrubs and roots, <sup>7</sup>more in the fashion of monkeys than men, scaled the heights and defences and <sup>8</sup>suddenly burst into the stronghold. <sup>9</sup>The Marhatta garrison had scarcely risen from their slumbers, when, seeing the enemy like grim death upon them, they lost their wits and abandoned the Fort.

#### *Directions.*

(1) It will be convenient to carry down this sentence to 'Gwalior,' so as to detach the descriptive sentence which follows for amalgamation with the next period, as more suitable to the Hindustani idiom. The sentence, then, takes the following form, and this shall be given in full as a good illustration of the Hindustani period: 'But as a treaty of the Rana had been made with (*se*) the Company, therefore he begged aid from the Company, and Captain Popham, who with a small army was going to unite with General Goddard's camp, he immediately on the order of Government arriving drove the Marhattas out of Gohad, and then having conquered their fort Lahâr, went and laid siege to the fort of Gwalior.'

(2) Turn thus: 'This fort on a standing rock was built with such strength and firmness that,' etc.

(3) See **175**.

(4) Begin this sentence with *aur ab to*, and end it at 'war.'

(5) Continue, 'Popham was at a loss by what device he may mount the hill, when (*ki*) by good luck he met with a thief,' etc. See Piece **3**. (2) above.

(6) The *junctura* of this period is formed by the use of the Past Conjunctive Participle with each item of the description.

(7) Treat as a parenthesis : 'There was no knowing at the time whether they are men or monkeys.' See last Sect. 14. (5).

(8) The expressive phrases *sab ke sab, bát kī bát*, will serve the purpose.

(9) Turn as follows : 'The Marhattas, who suddenly rising from their pallets saw the enemies like death (*ajal*) mounted on (their) heads, at that moment, losing their wits, abandoned (*khâll kardenâ*) the fort.'

## 10.

<sup>1</sup> Jeswant Rao Holkar, Raja of Indore, was now the only chief who declined to acknowledge the authority of the Company. He refused to send a vakeel and did not scruple to plunder their dominions. Reprisals were determined upon, and a small force under the command of Colonel Monson was sent to engage him; <sup>2</sup> but this officer, after having blown up the gates of Tonk, allowed himself to be entangled in the Mukandara Pass and to be hemmed in there by Holkar's army. <sup>3</sup> The force extricated itself with the greatest difficulty, and, after much suffering and loss, fought its way to Agra in a shattered condition. <sup>4</sup> Holkar's elation was unbounded. He at once proceeded to lay siege to Dehli with a force of twenty thousand men and thirty guns. The garrison at that time consisted of only eight hundred men with eleven guns; but, Ochterlony, the Resident, <sup>5</sup> completely baffled the Marhattas, and they decamped, on the news of Lord Lake's approach, <sup>6</sup> after a fruitless struggle of nine days' duration.

### *Directions.*

(1) Turn thus : 'Now only one, Jeswant Rao Holkar, Raja of Indore, remained, who neither bowed his head before the Company nor sent in his vakeel, nay more, unscrupulously kept plundering the Government provinces.'

(2) 'But' is not required for the *junctura* here. Begin 'The said *sahib* blew up, etc. . . . but having been misled (P. C. P.), being entangled (P. C. P.), . . . was surrounded by,' etc.

(3) Turn as follows: 'At last the force escaping (P. C. P.) thence with very great difficulties, fighting, struggling (Imp. P.), undergoing (Imp. P.) hundreds of troubles of heat and rains, and suffering (Imp. P.) loss, being shattered (P. C. P.) reached Agra.'

(4) Turn 'What limit was there to Holkar's elation?'

(5) This phrase is best expressed by a proverbial turn, as 'quite set the Marhattas' teeth on edge.'

(6) Turn this similarly: 'having beaten and beaten their heads for nine days'—a sign of despair.

## 11.

General Lake invested Bhartpur on the 3rd of January 1805. <sup>1</sup> The first assault was made on the 9th, but the English, on arriving at the edge of the moat found the water <sup>2</sup> too deep to be forded, and <sup>3</sup> many men were lost in the attempt. On the 21st the attack was renewed from another side, <sup>4</sup> but here the moat proved too broad for the bridge which the attacking force had brought with them, and on their attempting to lengthen it with ladders the whole thing fell into the water, and many perished. A third attack was made next day on another part of the defences, and though <sup>5</sup> the Sepoys crossed the moat and mounted the walls, the English soldiers declined to accompany them, and they had to retire. Eight hundred and ninety-four men were killed on this occasion. Next day Lake bitterly upbraided the English soldiers for their disobedience of orders, and these, <sup>6</sup> ashamed of their conduct, led a fourth assault; but the defenders had repaired the bastion and wall in the meantime, <sup>7</sup> and the attack was foiled with a loss of a thousand men. <sup>8</sup> The army was now worn out and

beaten with fatigue, their ammunition was expended and the supplies exhausted, and Lake was forced to withdraw.

### Directions.

(1) Contracted collateral clause with the same subject. 'On the 9th (he) attacked.'

(2) Instead of this, say 'chest full deep,' *chhâtt bhar gahrâ*.

(3) Turn 'in this many men were lost (*kâm ânâ*).

(4) Turn as follows: 'But there the moat was so broad that the bridge which they had made and brought (*banâ-lânâ*) fell short (*chhota parnâ*), and when joining on ladders they desired to lengthen it, that bridge fell into the water.'

(5) For 'Sepoys' use *Hindustani sipâhî*, and for 'English soldiers,' *gore* or *gore log* 'white-folk.'

(6) Turn 'having come into a sense-of-shame.'

(7) Turn 'For the attackers no way was found, and more than a thousand men were killed.'

(8) Turn 'People became tired out and disheartened,' etc., and instead of 'and' in the final clause begin with *nâchâr* 'helpless'; the form of verb is that used at 51. 2. Further, as the word 'army' is not reproduced in the first clause, treat the gerund as a transitive (causal) in agreement with *fauj*; thus, *fauj hatânî part*.

## 12.

At this period Shah Shujâ', grandson of Ahmed Shah Durrani, <sup>1</sup> was driven from the throne of Kabul by his brother Mahmûd, <sup>2</sup> and became for a time the prisoner of Ranjit Singh in the Panjab. Here he was deprived of the famous diamond called the Koh-i-nûr, and after much ill-treatment eventually sought shelter in British territory. <sup>3</sup> Mahmûd, on the other hand, was expelled from Kabul by Dost Mahomed, the son of the Vazir Fateh Khân Bârakzâi, whom the usurper had blinded and put to death. Under these circumstances Count Simonich, the

Russian Ambassador at the Persian Court, <sup>4</sup> by way of extending the influence of Russia, urged the Shah to lay claim to Afghanistan, and on his despatching an army to lay siege to Herât, paid him a subsidy on the Czar's behalf. <sup>5</sup> The result was the discomfiture and retreat of the Persians; and when England asked for an explanation, the Russian Government disclaimed all knowledge of the Ambassador's proceedings. <sup>6</sup> The suspicion entertained by the authorities in India that Russia had designs on India, and would, if opportunity offered, advance in this direction, was confirmed by the statement of Captain Burnes, who had been sent on a political mission to Kabul in 1837, that Dost Mahomed was in confidential correspondence with the Russians, and that the latter had even promised to recover Peshawar for him from Ranjit Singh.

(To be continued.)

#### Directions.

(1) An attempt to reproduce the passive construction of the English in this sentence would end in confusion. Turn as follows: 'In this time A. S. D.'s grandson S. S., who was 'Amir of A., his brother M. had expelled from thence.' There is no obscurity in the Hindustani, for Shujâ' will be marked by *ko* and M. by *ne*.

(2) Begin this sentence with *Shah Shujâ' to*, pointing to a correspondence with *Mahmûd* at the beginning of the next.

(3) Construct this sentence on the model of (1) above.

(4) Turn thus: 'Thinking this a fine opportunity of extending the power of the Czar in this direction,' and omit 'under those circumstances' at the beginning of the sentence.

(5) Turn in the following manner: 'But that army being worsted returned from Hirât, and when England,' etc.

(6) This period must be broken up as follows to suit the idiom of Hindustani: 'However, the Company had a strong suspicion that

certainly Russia's tooth is on India, when (she) gets opportunity, (she) will advance foot in this direction, and in confirmation of this Capt. B.' etc.

### 13.

(Continued.)

<sup>1</sup>The Indian Government never seriously contemplated the question of a Russian invasion. <sup>2</sup>Should it be argued that Russia might incite the peoples of Persia, Tartary, and Afghanistan, to invade India by stimulating their hopes of spoil, it must be borne in mind <sup>3</sup>that the times of Mahmud of Ghazni and Changez Khan are passed away, when bare-headed and bare-footed Gakkars cut to pieces the cavalry of Mahmud; <sup>4</sup>when a Raja like Anandpal lost a battle by the flight of an elephant; when the followers of Jelaluddin of Khwârazm, <sup>5</sup>with clubs cut from the forest, and mounted on bullocks, did battle with the army of Changez Khan in the Sindh Sâgar Doab; <sup>6</sup>and when powerful kings depended for success on the prowess of archers. <sup>7</sup>We have seen all along how small bodies of English troops have put to flight the armies of Shahs, Sultans, Nawabs, Marhattas, Naipâlis, and Burmese, <sup>8</sup>no matter how numerous they were; and that even men trained by Dupleix and Bussy were unable to face the English artillery. Surely the half-civilized invaders above spoken of are of no account.

(To be continued.)

#### Directions.

(1) To use *Hindustani* for 'Indian' is of course impracticable, nor can our use of the word 'Russian' be imitated. The sentence may be turned as follows :—'The Government paid no attention at



all to this point (*bdt*), that, well! how can the Russians come hither?’

(2) Turn, in accordance with the principle so often laid down: ‘If anyone say that, what! cannot the Russians,’ etc.

(3) This clause should be turned as follows: ‘that now the period of . . . has not remained, when (*ki jab*),’ etc.

(4) In correspondence with the above construction, ‘when’ here, and in the two next clauses, should be translated *aur na woh zamâna hai ki*, varied by *waqt* for *zamâna*.

(5) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle, ‘having cut,’ in the intensive form of *kât-kât-kar*.

(6) Turn ‘were placing their centre of battle on archers.’

(7) The *junctura* required here is *balki*, and the verb *dekhtâ châlâ ânâ*, and the subordinate clause may be thus put: ‘that from very small armies of the English Government what numerous hosts (*kaise kaise dal-bâdal lashkar*) of Shahs, etc. fled defeated.’

(8) Form a detached sentence from this point to the end of the piece, as follows:—‘The thing is this, that, when an army, etc. flew away (*ur-jânâ*) like flocks of cotton before the English artillery then (*to phir*) what count (*haqîqat*) is there of Irân, Turân?’ etc.

## 14.

(*Concluded.*)

Should it be argued that <sup>1</sup>there is nothing to prevent a Russian army approaching the Panjab, we reply that <sup>2</sup>it is possible to suppose anything, <sup>3</sup>but at least let us remember the distance between Russia and the Panjab, and the deserts and mountains that block the way. <sup>4</sup>Again, the resources of Russia are unequal to the transport of fifty thousand disciplined troops with the proper complement of artillery by this route. <sup>5</sup>Then, too, the time occupied by the Russians in crossing the Hindû Kûsh <sup>6</sup>alone would enable our Government to convey twice as many men by steamboat or railway to the banks of the Indus. <sup>7</sup>Add to this, that

the Russians would arrive upon the scene tired and wearied with their long march, <sup>8</sup> famished for want of supplies in Afghanistan, and enfeebled by the change of climate, <sup>9</sup> while the English army, posted on its own frontier, would be fresh and ready for the fray, <sup>10</sup> with a fertile country in its rear and abundance of supplies. <sup>11</sup> Moreover, a single English battalion in the Khaibar Pass would be enough to destroy the fifty thousand Russians.

### *Directions.*

(1) Use the *oratio recta* in the form of an interrogation, viz. 'What! cannot the Russians bring their armies to the Panjab?'

(2) The corresponding phrase is *bar taqdîr farz mumkin hai*.

(3) '*Magar âkhir* one ought to reflect that, What deserts, etc. lie between Russia and the Panjab, the passage of which how difficult it is.'

(4) Turn thus: 'Again, where has Russia so much money as that (she) can give the cost of bringing,' etc.

(5) After the conjunction begin with relative clause.

(6) Express by *ek*, placed before Hindû Kûsh. Comp. Piece 10 (1).

(7) Either *iske 'alâwa*, or *qat'-nazar in sab bâton ke*.

(8) Turn: 'Hungry thirsty on account of scantiness of supplies from Afghanistan.'

(9) For 'while' translate 'and here.'

(10) Turn thus: 'And from the P., of which the fertility is famous, how easy will be the collection of supplies!'

(11) Turn thus: 'Besides this (*siwde iske*), one white battalion (*paltan*) is enough for,' etc.

## SECTION III.

## MISCELLANEOUS.

## 1.

In the Spring of 1838, when the famine <sup>1</sup> which had for some time afflicted the North-western provinces of India was still raging, it happened that I was encamped not far from the town of Rewari. <sup>2</sup>The pergunnah was just surveyed, and I had come down to that part of the country to settle the land revenue for a term of thirty years. While I was there, a feud arose between the Mussulman and Hindu inhabitants of the town, <sup>3</sup> which, but for the interference of the authorities on the spot, would most unquestionably have ended in bloodshed, if not in a partial insurrection. <sup>4</sup>The point in dispute arose from a well-known prejudice of the Hindus against the slaughter of the ox, which they hold to be a sacred animal. The Mussulmans, on the other hand, wished to eat beef, as it was cheaper than either mutton or goat; <sup>5</sup> and though they formed only a small minority of the population, they seemed determined now at length to get their way. <sup>6</sup> Year after year they had begged for permission to kill the forbidden animal within the walls, or even at any reasonable distance outside. <sup>7</sup> But it had been all in vain, for the Hindus vowed that <sup>8</sup> they would have recourse to force if their religious scruples were disregarded, and so the Mussulmans remained dissatisfied and oppressed.

*(To be continued.)*

*Directions.*

(1) Put the relative clause after 'raging,' so as to avoid the clashing of the verbs. See *Int. Rem.* 7. (10).

(2) Turn thus: 'A new survey in this *pargana* had been, and I had gone there to make a thirty-year settlement of the revenue.'

(3) With *aisâ* in the preceding clause, proceed as follows: 'that, if the authorities arriving on the spot had not interfered, there would have been an *emeute* (*balwâ*), or if there had not been an *emeute*, there would certainly have been bloodshed.' In this, the adjective 'partial' of the text is avoided by the use of a word which rather falls short of our term 'insurrection.'

(4) Begin thus: 'The foundation of the disturbance was,' etc.

(5) Turn as follows: 'and though (*go*) in comparison of the whole population the number of the Mussulmans was very small (*kam*), but at last they had already determined to obtain their desire.' For 'already' see 76. 11.

(6) Turn thus: 'Every year they were begging' (Continuative).

(7) Turn thus: 'but their requests were in vain (*rá'egân jânâ*).'

(8) The *oratio recta*: 'if in this matter our religious rules were set aside, we shall be ready to do violence.' For the tense of the first clause see Introductory Remarks 7. (2).

## 2.

*(Continued.)*

At last the leading members of the Mussulman population brought me one day, when I was in camp, a fresh entreaty <sup>1</sup> worded in somewhat the following manner: <sup>2</sup> Hail, cherisher of the poor! Be it known unto your enlightened Excellency, that for many years the Hindus of this town have, <sup>3</sup> by their lying and deceitful representations to the highest authorities, prevented the Mussulmans from killing cattle, <sup>4</sup> under the plea that those animals are sacred. Our lords, the English, have hitherto made it their rule to prevent one class of their

subjects from tyrannising over another, <sup>5</sup> and have dealt out impartial justice to all, making no distinction between caste, creed, colour, or race. <sup>6</sup> Indeed, such is the protection which all enjoy, that it may be said that the wolf and the lamb drink from the same ghaut. <sup>7</sup> What, then, have we oppressed creatures done, that we are denied the benefits which all others enjoy? <sup>8</sup> Trusting that you will take our grievous case into speedy consideration, and issue an order enabling us to eat beef, we pray that on you the sun of prosperity may ever shine gloriously. Such was the petition that was read out on that day in open court before several hundreds of Hindus and Mussalmans. Everyone around could see and hear all that was going on, as the canvas walls of the tent were taken down on three sides.

(*To be continued.*)

#### *Directions.*

(1) That is, 'nearly (*qarīb qarīb*) to this effect.' See **30. 9.**

(2) This is a capital specimen of a native petition. The introduction and conclusion should be given in the stereotyped form, viz.—*garīb-parwar salāmat*, and *ilāhī aftāb-i-daulat o iqbal hamesha tābān rahe, faqat.*

(3) Use the Past Conjunctive Participle—'having represented falsehood and deceit in the service of the superior officers.' See **103. 3.**

(4) Fresh clause: 'and have made this pretext,' etc.

(5) Express this as part of the 'rule'; thus, 'and that with every person without distinction of, etc. justice be done in one manner.'

(6) Express the *junctura* here by *chunānchi*.

(7) Turn as follows: 'then (*pas*) what fault have we oppressed ones done that we do not receive,' etc.

(8) The correct form here is—'it is the hope that your Excellency, giving speedy consideration to our earnest-plea (*istigāsa*), will,' etc.

## 3.

(Continued.)

While the petition was being read, the audience <sup>1</sup> preserved a respectful silence; the Mussulmans stood anxiously expecting my decision, and I observed the Hindus furtively glancing at my countenance to read, if possible, the order about to be issued. <sup>2</sup> I may here remark that no people in the world are more observant of character, or more quick or able judges of it, than those of Hindustan. <sup>3</sup> They seem by a kind of intuition to understand every movement and every gesture. Nor is this surprising. Subject for so many centuries to rulers whose will is law, the ability to comprehend the character and anticipate the thoughts of their masters has become a necessary part of their education. I felt that both law and equity were on the side of the Mussulmans, but <sup>4</sup> seeing how strong was the feeling of opposition among the Hindus, and what an infringement of a long-standing custom it would be, I advised them to make a formal application to the Commissioner, as superintendent of police, <sup>5</sup> who forthwith sent an order permitting the slaughter of cattle. I fixed upon a spot for this operation about three-quarters of a mile from the town, <sup>6</sup> hoping thus to soften the blow to the Hindus. But their rage and indignation knew no bounds, and I was continually beset wherever I moved with petitioners. Finding me inexorable, they returned to their homes to deliberate with their friends. <sup>7</sup> They waited in ominous peace until the festival of the Mohurram, six weeks later, came round, then suddenly rose and attacked

<sup>8</sup> the Mussulman procession with all manner of weapons, bricks, stones, and even dead pigs and dogs, animals to which 'the faithful' have the greatest abhorrence.

(*To be continued.*)

*Directions.*

(1) Turn thus: 'remained respectfully standing silent,' so as to relieve the next clause of the word 'stood,' which is not intended to apply to the Mahomedans alone, and proceed—'The Mussulmans were anxious in expectation of my decision, and the Hindus furtively looking (*dekh-dekhhkar*) at my face, were wishing that, if possible, they may discover from my physiognomy (*qiyâfa*) that, in this business what order will be issued.'

(2) See Sect. II. 3. 4. for the best method of beginning this sentence, and proceed—'There are no such men in the whole world anywhere who in the art of physiognomy-knowing are more quick and intelligent than Hindustanis.'

(3) This, too, is a difficult sentence. Turn: 'It seems that they have a kind of intuition (*tafarrus*) in discovering from every movement and sign the interior state.'

(4) Turn as follows: 'Seeing this, that the Hindus have a heartfelt desire of preserving this ancient custom, nay, more, are ready for opposition,' etc.

(5) As shown in former examples, the relative clause in this position must be detached: 'accordingly, the said Sâhib issued an order,' etc.

(6) Turn: 'with this hope that the grief of the Hindus may be less.'

(7) This may be expressed: 'they chose a superficial (*âpart*) silence, but when,' etc.

(8) Say: 'the *ta'zias* of the Musalmans,' which are the chief feature of the processions on these occasions.

4.

(*Continued.*)

<sup>1</sup>The confusion and tumult which ensued were tremendous, and a desperate affray and loss of life would

have been the result had not the Tahsildar, a native of much force of character and self-won influence in the place, hastily summoned the police to the spot, and put himself, though a Hindu and a Brahmin, at the head of the Mussulman procession, and conducted it in safety through the town. The parties separated, mutually breathing vengeance against each other; <sup>2</sup> the Muslims swearing by their fathers' graves that they would wash out the insult in the blood of every Hindu in the town, <sup>3</sup> even if they died to a man the martyr's death.

The Tahsildar was thankful for his success so far, but <sup>4</sup> felt that the presence of the magistrate alone could arrest further mischief, and accordingly sent special messengers <sup>5</sup> for me to the place where business had called me. I was in camp forty miles off, in a straight line, but with a range of steep and pathless hills between, <sup>6</sup> necessitating a circuitous route some twenty miles longer, so the information did not reach me till about noon the following day. <sup>7</sup> Here was a pleasant communication for me; the hot wind was blowing a perfect simoon, and it required no small spirit of adventure at such a season to face the heat and sand over that wild country. I summoned some of the neighbouring villagers, and asked if they knew the direct paths over the hills, and whether they would engage to conduct me across. They replied that they knew the way well enough, but that it was quite impracticable for any but men on foot or for goats. 'Never mind,' I replied, 'I can go, and you can show me the way'; and <sup>8</sup> a guide was started at once to wait at the base of the hill till the heat of the day had sufficiently subsided for me to venture across the plain.

*(To be continued.)*



*Directions.*

(1) To attempt to follow the English form of the period here would lead to confusion. It may be broken up as follows (in skeleton): 'From this tremendous confusion, etc. was created, and there was suspicion that a desperate, etc. will be, but the Tahsildar, who was a very, etc., summoned the police, and though he himself was a Hindu, etc. but leading the Muslims he caused,' etc. For the epithet 'tremendous' see **24**. The idea of 'self-won influence' is fairly conveyed by *ro'ib*, which means the 'respect' enjoyed by a man for personal or other merits. The adjectival form is *ro'bdâr*.

(2) Turn: 'and the Muslims, taking oaths of, etc., were saying that.'

(3) For the mode of expressing this clause see **176**. 9.

(4) Turn as follows: 'from this idea that without the magistrate's having come (**96**.) there will be no arrest of this disturbance,' and omit 'and accordingly.'

(5) It is quite sufficient to turn this clause by *mere pâs*.

(6) Turn 'in coming and going a circuit (*pher*) of twenty miles lay (*par-jânâ*).' Comp. the use of this verb at **157**. 1.

(7) Tack this clause to the preceding in the form *aur khabar kais!*

(8) Turn thus: 'A guide at that very time was started that he may remain waiting below the hills till (*tâ ân ki*), when the heat became rather less, I, too, may be able to make intention of passing over (*se*) the plain.'

**5.***(Continued.)*

At 3 P.M. I mounted my best Arab, and, with one mounted orderly, started for the hill, <sup>1</sup> at the foot of which I found the guide waiting. We dismounted, and led our horses up the steep ascent. Before we had gone far the orderly's horse fell; we left him to his fate, as there was no time for delay. <sup>2</sup> The path now became

more and more precipitous. In places it seemed all but impassable, and had there been room to turn my horse, I felt almost inclined <sup>3</sup> to give it up and go back. <sup>4</sup> Yet we pushed on and on till we reached the top. <sup>5</sup> If it was a labour for my poor horse to scramble up, the difficulty and danger of descending the other side was much greater; <sup>6</sup> any slip would hurl him headlong down; <sup>7</sup> but by dint of care, what with sliding and slipping on his haunches, <sup>8</sup> we at last reached the bottom without serious damage. It was six o'clock by the time the descent was accomplished, <sup>9</sup> so that there was little more than an hour of daylight remaining, with more than thirty miles of sandy trackless plain intersected by ravines to traverse, <sup>10</sup> and nothing but a western star and information from an occasional village to guide me. But, trusting to the speed and endurance of my gallant steed, well tried in many a hard day's run before, I dismissed the guide, and <sup>11</sup> set off at a hand gallop.

*(To be continued.)*

#### *Directions.*

(1) Begin fresh sentence, and turn as follows: 'Then (*phir*) when we arrived where we found, etc., there we, dismounting and taking (*le le*) the horses by leading-rein, began to ascend the hill.'

(2) Turn this clause in the manner indicated at **137. 13.**

(3) An expression used in Sect. I. Piece **8.** (*faskh karnā*) will answer here.

(4) Turn this as a simple sentence, and see **112. 8.** for Participial phrase.

(5) This may be expressed as follows: 'On my poor horse what misfortune of ascent was (*ān-bannā*), than that a hundredfold more difficulties in descent befell.'

(6) Turn 'if his foot had made the slightest slip he would have been overturned below.'

(7) All this is extremely difficult. Turn 'when he was beginning to slip or slide we were carefully propping him.'

(8) Begin fresh sentence, and combine it with the next clause as follows: 'so far that (*yahân tak ki*) at evening at the time of six o'clock we arrived sound and safe below the hill.'

(9) Fresh sentence: 'For the rest of the journey, of daylight some one hour remained, and I had to traverse (*tai karnâ*), etc., in which there were,' etc.

(10) Again begin fresh sentence: 'Except a western star, or the information which there may be a chance of obtaining from villagers, seeing no other means of guidance, and trusting,' etc.

(11) Turn 'raised the horse's rein,' which is a mode of expression closely corresponding to the idea of the English phrase.

## 6.

(Continued.)

Towards ten o'clock at night I discerned the thousand little twinkling lamps which light an eastern city,<sup>1</sup> and riding into the town, found the people all on the alert, and was soon recognised, my horse and myself being well known there. 'Larens Sahib is come,' was repeated from mouth to mouth with much surprise. My sudden appearance scared them, and they slunk away to their houses.<sup>2</sup> After parading the streets for a short time till they were quiet, I went to the Tahsildar and heard from him of the commotion having increased throughout that day. I sent messengers to collect all the police from the neighbourhood, and then repaired to the somewhat rough quarters of a hostelry outside the walls. Here I luckily found<sup>3</sup> an officer belonging to the political department, Captain R—, who, being in ill-health, was glad to recruit in rather more comfort than in tents; for I had repaired and slightly furnished two or three rooms in the

serai, <sup>4</sup> in case of an emergency like the present. After seeing my horse well rubbed down and fed I retired to rest. In the morning I stationed police at the gates, at the market-place, and at other <sup>5</sup> central spots, so that they might be ready in case the Hindus should have recourse to arms, and there they remained for three weeks.

(*To be continued.*)

#### *Directions.*

(1) Form the *junctura* here by a change in the form of the description, thus: '(I) entered into the town, and (to) found the people alert and awake. Recognising me (they were knowing me and my horse well), they were astonished that how the Sâhib came, and immediately (*bât ki bât men*) this news was spread (*zabânzad honâ*) that,' etc.

(2) Turn as follows: 'I paraded the streets for a short time, and when I saw that now there remained no fear of outbreak, I went to the Tahsildar and heard (his) report of the increasing of the disturbance.'

(3) *Political mahkama kâ ek kaptân sâhib.*

(4) Turn 'that if a necessity like to-day (*âj jaisî*) happened, there may be no trouble.'

(5) This may be expressed by *sadr maqâm.*

## 7.

(*Continued.*)

Thus the danger passed by, for <sup>1</sup> the Mussulmans, with their more active warlike habits, backed by the European forces, were too strong for their opponents; <sup>2</sup> so, after receiving a decided rebuff to a fresh petition from me, the Hindus tried a wholly new method. By a preconcerted and simultaneous movement they shut up all the shops, suspended trade and business of every

description, and declared that, until the obnoxious order was rescinded, they would neither buy nor sell, nor, indeed, hold any communication with the opposite party.

<sup>3</sup> This plan of passive resistance was by far the most effectual they could have adopted. It completely paralysed their enemies, and <sup>4</sup> alarmed the magistrate more than he would have liked to own; for they had complete control over the supplies, being the wholesale, as well as retail, dealers of the town. The next morning, <sup>5</sup> when not only the Mussulmans but the lower orders of Hindus came as usual to purchase the day's provisions, they found all the shops closed. <sup>6</sup> Living from hand to mouth as they do, they were in blank despair, and, adjourning to my house, they implored my leave to break open the granaries and <sup>7</sup> help themselves, if I could not compel the traders to open their shops. I replied that the traders had done nothing contrary to law, and that I had no power to compel them in any way.

*(To be continued.)*

#### *Directions.*

(1) A difficult sentence to reproduce. The meaning may be given as follows: 'In the first place the Mussulmans were active and quarrelsome, in the second place we were at their back, then (*pas*) their being victorious over their opponents was not difficult.'

(2) Begin a fresh sentence, thus: 'A new petition which the Hindus presented me, of it they received a flat refusal (see 185. 3), therefore they sought to bring into operation a rare method, viz. this, that by mutual agreement they shut up,' etc.

(3) The expression 'passive resistance' cannot easily be imitated in Hindustani. Perhaps the best way to treat the sentence is this: 'In reality the method of patient encounter (*taqâbul*) which they adopted, this was very effective.'

(4) The writer's avoidance of egotism here need not be preserved in Hindustani. Turn thus: 'and, if you ask the truth (*sach pūchho to*) to me also was anxiety.'

(5) Use here the form of expression indicated at **201. 9.**

(6) Effect the *junction* here by introducing the clause with *chūnki* as follows: 'As these people, whatever they were earning all day, on it were living,' etc.

(7) *Apnā kām nikālnā.*

## 8.

(*Continued.*)

A plan occurred to me <sup>1</sup> which would give me time to reason with the Hindus, and possibly bring them to a better state of mind. I collected many waggon-loads of grain from the country round at my own risk, trusting that the Government would refund me when the peril was made known to them. This grain I stored, and <sup>2</sup> gave out by letters of credit to retail dealers whom I chose myself and placed in the streets. In this way all the slight wants of an Asiatic were supplied, and so careful was the organization of the whole thing, that there was no ultimate loss to the Government. Meanwhile I published proclamations <sup>3</sup> warning the Hindus against blind allegiance to their priests, and telling them that any act of violence would meet with prompt retribution. This I was frequently able to do in isolated cases, as combination was now impossible for them. They first sent petitions to the Commissioner, and <sup>4</sup> then to the seat of Government itself in the hills, complaining both of me, their magistrate, and the Tahsildar. These were in due time returned to me for explanation. I did not think it necessary to answer their charges against myself, but successfully vindicated the Tahsildar.

(*To be continued.*)

*Directions.*

(1) Turn as follows: 'that from it I shall obtain opportunity of arguing with the Hindus, and if by it they come into the straight way, it is no wonder.'

(2) Turn thus: 'entrusted for retail sale,' etc., with the verbs 'chose' and 'placed' in form of Past Conjunctive Participle.

(3) *Oratio recta*, 'that let not the Hindus foolishly engage in unlawful matters at the bidding of their Pandits, else, if any sort of violence is shown, simultaneously (*ma'an*) punishment will be inflicted.' Observe here the avoidance of the adjectives 'blind' and 'prompt.'

(4) Turn: 'and after that to Government on the hill.'

## 9.

*(Concluded.)*

For twenty-two days the Hindu traders <sup>1</sup> held out, till I was much worn and harassed with the constant work of inspection, repression, and writing answers to complaints. At last the poorer Hindus found that they were injuring themselves as well as the Mussulmans; <sup>2</sup> gradually a shop was opened here and there, and on the evening of the twenty-second day a crowd of Hindus came to me in a humble frame of mind, <sup>3</sup> owning that they had been led away by their priests, begging for pardon, and solemnly promising never to repeat the offence, and offering to open their shops at once. I agreed to this, and thus a combination which had threatened to produce a general uproar was quietly and peaceably put down. <sup>4</sup> I was able to satisfy the inquiries of Government into my somewhat independent action in the matter, and so to establish the conduct of the Tahsildar that he received special thanks for all he had done. <sup>5</sup> He did not, however, long survive

to enjoy his recovered credit. A few months afterwards he died from a sudden attack of cholera.

LAWRENCE.

*Directions.*

(1) Turn thus: 'In that same way went on being contrary' (*zidd karnā*), 'and I continuously doing (*karte karte*) watching and punishing (*sar-kobī*) and answer-giving was wearied (*'ājiz ā-jānā*).'

(2) Begin with *chunānchi*, and proceed 'place by place gradually the shops went on being opened' (118.).

(3) 'And declared' followed by *oratio recta*. In the final clause the form of verb illustrated at 129. may be introduced, though the usage is rare.

(4) Turn as follows: 'In this affair the inquiry which the Government made on my somewhat free proceeding, of it I was able to give a sufficient answer, and also so proved the good services of,' etc.

(5) Turn 'after this he did not remain alive many days, that (*ki*) the approbation (*wāh wāh*) which he had obtained, from it he could have derived (Past Cond.) profit.'

## 10.

The Rajputs were <sup>1</sup> born soldiers; each division had its hereditary leader, and each formed a separate community, like clans in other countries, <sup>2</sup> the members of which were bound by many ties to their chiefs and to each other. The rules of caste still subsisted, and tended to render more powerful the connection just described. As the chiefs of those clans stood in the same relation to the Raja as their own retainers did to them, the king, nobility and soldiery, all made one body, united by the strongest feelings of kindred and military devotion. <sup>3</sup> The sort of feudal system which prevailed among the Rajputs gave additional stability to this attachment, and all together produced the pride of birth, the high spirit, and romantic notions <sup>4</sup> so striking in the military class of that



period. Their enthusiasm was kept up by the songs of their bards, and inflamed by frequent contests <sup>5</sup> for glory or for love. They treated women with a respect unusual in the East; and <sup>6</sup> were guided even towards their enemies by rules of honour, which it was disgraceful to violate.

(*To be continued.*)

### *Directions.*

(1) The Persian *mâdar-zâd* suits the meaning exactly.

(2) Turn thus: 'and to the members with their chiefs and among themselves was a connection (*wâ-bastagi*) of many sorts (*tarah tarah ki*), and the fashion of caste observance (*jât-dharm*) too, which remained regularly in force, was more a cause of strengthening of this connection.'

(3) This, too, is by no means easy. It may be paraphrased 'and from the fashion of giving (and) taking *jâgîr* and service, such as was current (*riwâj*) among the Rajputs, still more confirmation (*istehkâm*) came into this body.'

(4) Turn 'which at that period was a conspicuous mark of the military class.'

(5) This must be expanded: 'which sometimes for the sake of (*barâe*) glory and sometimes for the sake of love took place.'

(6) Avoid the change to the passive here, which spoils the sentence from a Hindustani point of view. The last clause may be easily turned by 'to do the contrary of which was considered a disgrace.'

## 11.

(*Concluded.*)

<sup>1</sup> If to these qualities we add a very strong disposition to indolence, and make allowances for the effects of a long period of depression, we have the character of the Rajputs of the present day, <sup>2</sup> who bear much the same resemblance to their ancestors as those did to the warriors of the Mahabharat. With all the noble qualities of the

early Rajputs was mixed a simplicity, <sup>3</sup> derived from their want of intercourse with other nations, <sup>4</sup> which rendered them inferior in practical ability, and even in military efficiency, to men actuated by much less elevated sentiments than theirs. Among the effects of their division into clans, one was that <sup>5</sup> although the Rajputs are anything but a migratory people, yet when they have been compelled by external force to leave their seats, they have often moved in a body like a Tartar horde; and when they occupied new lands, <sup>6</sup> they distributed them in the same proportions as their former ones, and remained without any alteration but that of place.

ELPHINSTONE.

*Directions.*

(1) The agency here being a matter of indifference, the passive construction may be conveniently adopted, thus: 'together with these qualities, if their being immoderately addicted to sloth be described.' The next clause may be given more literally.

(2) Begin fresh sentence, thus: 'And this character is like that of their (*apne*) ancestors (see 61, 13.), in the proportion in which (*jis nisbat se*) theirs (*unki*) is like that of the heroes of the Mahabharat.'

(3) Turn thus: 'which was created by their remaining apart from other (*gair*) nations.'

(4) The above introduction of the relative bars its adoption here. Turn, therefore, 'and for this very reason they remained inferior in practical wisdom, nay more (*balki*) in war-making (*jang-âvari*), to those people who in comparison with them were not so magnanimous.'

(5) Turn thus: 'though (*go*) migration is never agreeable to Rajputs.'

(6) Turn thus: 'The way in which land-division was effected (*hûâ karnâ*) in their native country, in the same arrangement the land of here too is divided.' The last clause should be a collateral sentence: 'Except change of place no other difference was coming.'

## 12.

<sup>1</sup>The plain uninstructed Mahratta (*Marhata*), Sûdra, or Khatrî, enters upon his career as a soldier <sup>2</sup>with the same dress and with the same habits with which he tills his fields or attends his flocks; <sup>3</sup>and he has, generally speaking, preserved, throughout revolutions that have at one time raised him to the highest consideration and power and again cast him back to his former occupations, the same simplicity of character. <sup>4</sup>This may be referred to the nature of Hindu institutions, to the example of Sivaji and his leaders, and to the advantage derived from habits that gave facility to conquest <sup>5</sup>by placing him in strong contrast with the proud and formal Muhammadan; by associating him with the Hindu population of the countries he invaded; and by preventing his progress ever being impeded by that pomp, luxury, or pride, which forms so often an <sup>6</sup>incumbrance, if not an obstacle, to the most successful conquerors. That the Mahratta soldier was more distinguished by art than by valour; that he gloried as much in rapid flight as in daring attack, <sup>7</sup>is not denied by the warmest panegyrist of his tribe; but though these facts are admitted, and, further, that he was often mean and sordid, <sup>8</sup>it is contended, and with truth, that he had many excellent qualities. <sup>9</sup>Few could claim superiority to him in patience under fatigue, hunger, and thirst, and in that plain manliness of character which remained unchanged by success or adversity; <sup>10</sup>nor can we deny to the Mahrattas in the early part of their history, and before their extensive conquests had made their vast and

mixed armies cease to be national, the merit of conducting their Cossack inroads into other countries with a consideration to the inhabitants which had been deemed incompatible with that terrible and destructive species of warfare.

(*To be continued.*)

### *Directions.*

(1) 'Marhata' and the pronouns which refer to it throughout the passage become plural in Hindustani.

(2) By way of simplification use one word *waza'* for 'dress' and 'habits,' as it describes both.

(3) Turn as follows: 'and it: general in those vicissitudes in which at one time they reached exalted rank and again came to their original status, that same simplicity of theirs remained (*banā-rahnd*) as usual.'

(4) Arrange thus: 'The cause of this perhaps in the institutions of Hinduism, and in the examples of Sivaji and his chiefs, and also (*aur nīz*) in such (*aist aist*) habits, is found, from which (*ki jin se*) in victory easiness is obtained.'

(5) This clause and the corresponding sequent clauses may now be introduced by *jab ki*.

(6) Translate thus: *muzāhim balki māni'ul mohimm.*

(7) This clause should be placed first in the Hindustani sentence: 'To the special panegyrist even of this tribe there is no denial that,' etc.

(8) Turn thus: 'but yet in truth it is not remote from justice to admit their praiseworthy qualities.'

(9) Turn thus: 'In the matter of patience, etc. very few were taking precedence of (*se*) the Marhattas.'

(10) The *junction* here is best effected by *tis par bhī*, after which proceed thus: 'This fact (*amr*) is worthy of praise, that in former time and before that (*qabl iske ki*) their army so increased in extensive conquests and in mixture with strange races that it did not remain the army of one nation, this people used to conduct their Cossack warfare (*qazzāqāna fauj-kashī*) with such humanity which (*jo ki*) was being considered,' etc.

## 13.

*(Concluded.)*

The character and actions of this people were in all respects singular; <sup>1</sup> they had indeed few, if any, similar features in common with other nations. <sup>2</sup> Those means which the pride of conquerors has often rejected seem always to have been used in preference by this extraordinary race: not merely the discontented were invited to their standard, but robbers and plunderers were courted as auxiliaries, and allowed to act for a period in their own mode and for their own advantage. <sup>3</sup> To insinuate themselves by wiles into a share of the government of a district or country, and to make a party amongst its inhabitants, were deemed better than using force, even when the latter was in their power; <sup>4</sup> and in effecting these objects their patience and humility were great aids. They were contented at first to divide the <sup>5</sup> government, as well as revenues, with the Hindu chiefs of the military class they found established, <sup>6</sup> trusting to time and intrigue for their gradual reduction.

MALCOLM.

*Directions.*

(1) The meaning of this sentence may be given as 'In reality, ways (*auzá*) like theirs (see above, II. Note 2) if (they) may have been in any other nation, then (they) have been fewer.'

(2) Turn 'which means great conquerors will have often despised,' etc.

(3) This difficult sentence may be expressed in the following way: 'When any strange province or country came into their power, in this case also, in comparison with force, by deceit to obtain entrance there and to do plottings with the inhabitants, this people thought their advantage.' It will be observed that the final

clause of the English sentence is not left untranslated, but is worked into the initial clause.

(4) Turn 'and in this affair (*amr*) their patience and humility were coming in very useful (*kām ānā*).'

(5) Use the phrase employed at 109. 2. 'Chief of the military class' may be rendered by the title 'Raja.'

(6) Begin fresh sentence: 'And they trusted that after some time and by means of plottings the time of reduction (*taskhtr*) will gradually arrive.'

## 14.

The Bheels that live in villages are reputed faithful and honest; they are usually the watchmen, and have a portion of land or dues assigned them. <sup>1</sup> These village Bheels have little intercourse with their more numerous and independent brethren who dwell among the hills. The cultivating classes of Bheels, who live in districts and hamlets under their *Tarwis* or heads, <sup>2</sup> though industrious, have neither given up the habits nor arms of the tribes in a ruder state, and, like them, indulge in strong liquors to excess. They excite the horror of the higher classes of Hindoos by eating not only the flesh of buffaloes but of cows. From this abomination, for such it is considered, they only rank above the *chamārs* or shoemakers, who feast on dead carcasses, and are deemed so unclean that they are not allowed to dwell within the precincts of the village. The plundering, or wild, Bheels who reside among the hills are a diminutive and wretched-looking race, <sup>3</sup> whose appearance shows the poverty of their food; but they are nevertheless active and capable of great fatigue. They are professed robbers and thieves. <sup>4</sup> Armed with bows and arrows, they lie in wait for the weak and unprotected, while they fly from the strong.

<sup>5</sup> Ignorant and superstitious to a degree, they are devoted to their *Tarwîs*, whose command is a law which they implicitly obey.

(*To be continued.*)

### *Directions.*

(1) Turn as follows: 'Of these Bhîls with their mountain brethren, who are numerous and more free (*kastr-ut-ta'dâd aur ziyâda âzâd*), little intercourse is kept up (*rahnâ*).'

(2) Arrange matters so as to begin a fresh sentence here: 'And though they are industrious, but they have the same mode of life and the same arms, which are customary in those rude (*jangalî*) tribes, and also (*nîz*) like them are very reckless in liquor-drinking.'

(3) This clause may be expressed by making it a third epithet before 'race,' in the idiomatic term *kâl kâ mârâ*, 'famine-stricken.'

(4) Detach this clause from what follows, as an independent sentence, viz. 'Their arms (are) bows and arrows.' For 'strong' use a pair of adjectives to balance the preceding pair, and omit 'while.'

(5) Turn 'They are so ignorant and superstitious that they are devoted to their *Tarwîs*, whose command is of the rank of a law, and is carried out without when or why' (*be-chân o chirâ*).

## 15.

(*Continued.*)

<sup>1</sup> The men, and still more the women, have their intellect formed by their condition; they are quick, have a kind of instinctive sense of danger, and are full of art and evasion. To kill one another, when their *Tarwî* desires, or to suffer death themselves, appears to them equally a matter of indifference. The whole race are illiterate, and they are, without exception, fond of tobacco and liquor to excess. Their quarrels begin and end in drunken bouts; no feud can be staunched, no crime forgiven, but at a general feast, <sup>2</sup> and here the

common and popular fine for every offence is more liquor to protract their riotous enjoyment, which sometimes continues for days. <sup>3</sup>The Bheel women have much influence in the society; but it is a curious fact, that their manners and disposition are in general quite opposed to those of the Pindâris. <sup>4</sup>They never accompany the men in their expeditions; and when prisoners are taken, their principal hope of life is in the known humanity of the women. The latter are usually the first sufferers from the crimes of their fathers and husbands, the women and children (when the men are suspected) being always seized when Government can lay hold on them. They show, in such circumstances, great patience and fortitude, <sup>5</sup>as they well know the men will never abandon them, and that the guilty will surrender themselves to any punishment, even death, rather than allow them and their children to continue in confinement.

(*To be continued.*)

#### *Directions.*

(1) Turn as follows: 'The men-folk and especially the women-folk, in the condition in which they live, have intellect in accordance with that same (condition), that is, they are quick, and their natural temperament is danger-knowing and deceitful and artful.'

(2) Effect the *junctura* here by *yahân tak ki*, and proceed: 'the customary and common fine is liquor, which is taken in compensation of every crime, and from which their riotous-living remains lasting (for) periods (*muddaton*).'

(3) See **109. 4** for the use of *dakhl*.

(4) Join on by the use of *kyânki*.

(5) Turn thus: 'because it is certain to them that our men will not abandon us (use the idiom of **56.**), but rather they who are guilty will deliver themselves up for punishment (*sazâ-yâbl*), though it may be the punishment of death (see **176. 8.**), and will not like (*garéara karnâ*) that (their) families remain in confinement.'



## 16.

*(Concluded).*

<sup>1</sup> In the recent reform of a great proportion of the Bheels of Central India, the women have acted a very prominent part, and one worthy of the character of their sex. <sup>2</sup> They have invariably been the advocates of the cause of good order; but the fact is, they have been accustomed to industry and labour, and must be happy to see their partners, who have hitherto passed their time between crime and debauchery, compelled to more regular courses. The Bheels, though in distinct classes, are still one people. <sup>3</sup> They all eat the same diet; they intermarry; <sup>4</sup> and they unite in the mode as well as the substance of their worship. The latter, in essentials, is similar to that of other Hindoos; but the forms are different. The religious ceremonies of this rude race <sup>5</sup> are much limited to propitiatory offerings and sacrifices to some of the Hindoo minor infernal deities, but particularly to the Goddess of the Small Pox, whom they invoke under various names, <sup>6</sup> in the hope of averting the dreadful ravages this disorder at times makes among them. They also pay great reverence to Mahadeo, from whom they boast descent.

MALCOLM.

*Directions.*

(1) This is by no means an easy sentence. It may be turned as follows: 'In the reform of a large class of Bhîls, which is recently being carried out in Central India, their women have done great service (*pesh-dastî*), and certainly have done work worthy of their sex.' Observe that the choice of *pesh-dastî* is suggested by the fact that *pesh* gives the notion of 'prominent.'

(2) Begin with 'the fact is,' taken from the following clause, and replace that phrase by 'and.' The clause 'compelled,' etc., may be managed by 'began to leave off their irregularities' (*be-lagâmt*).

(3) Turn: 'their eating drinking is one.'

(4) Simply: '(their) religious ceremonies (*dharm-rit*) are one and the same (*yaksân*).' 'The latter,' in the next clause, may be translated by *pûjâ*.

(5) Turn: 'are ended in this, that (*ki*) they do so and so.'

(6) Turn: 'in order that in the days of small-pox they may remain safe from this dreadful plague.'

## 17.

The Thugs are composed of all castes; Mahomedans even are admitted; but the great majority are Hindoos; and among these the Brahmans, chiefly of the Bundelkhand tribes, are in the greatest numbers, and generally direct the operations of the different bands. They have fixed rules, particularly as to the division of booty. <sup>1</sup> Auxiliaries to their enterprises are sought for in all ranks, but the most abandoned of the officers of government of the countries to which they proceed are those they chiefly desire; and after having ascertained, by letter or verbal report, that circumstances are favourable, <sup>2</sup> they usually send as precursors, for the purpose of minute local information, spies disguised as religious mendicants, as tradesmen, or as soldiers looking for service, who connect themselves with the loose characters of the country, and all is prepared for the principal party, which often consists of three or four hundred; <sup>3</sup> but these are never seen together, though the different bands travel in perfect communication with each other. Some of them have horses, camels, and tents, and are equipped like merchants; others are dressed like soldiers going

under a leader to take service; some affect to be Mahomedan beggars and Hindoo *Bairâgîs* or holy mendicants: they assume, in short, every disguise. <sup>4</sup> Parties of the boldest and most active are always detached from the main band; these sometimes seek protection from travellers; at others afford it: <sup>5</sup> in either case the fate of them who join them is the same.

(*To be continued.*)

### *Directions.*

(1) Turn this sentence as follows: 'In their enterprises they recruit for assistance low and high people of every sort, and are specially desirous of the wicked (*sharîr sharîr*) officers of those stated where it is their intention to go.'

(2) Turn thus: 'It is their custom that they send precursors, etc.; these spies are in the disguise sometimes of faqirs, sometimes of merchants, and sometimes of soldiers, etc., and connect themselves with, etc., and make preparation for the advent of the principal party,' etc.

(3) The *junctura* is here: 'but not this that they are ever seen together, else, all the bands,' etc.

(4) Turn thus: 'one or more (*ek na ek*) party of the brave and active always remains apart from the main band: their business is this, that either,' etc.

(5) For the method of idiomatically representing this clause, see above Sect. I. ¶. (7): 'in every case misfortune (*shâmat*) came on the poor people.'

## 18.

(*Concluded.*)

The Thugs have, concealed, a long silken cord with a noose, <sup>1</sup> which they throw round the necks of their heedless companions, who are strangled and plundered. <sup>2</sup> Their victims, who are always selected for having pro-

perty, are, when numerous, or at all on their guard, lulled by every art into confidence. <sup>3</sup> They are invited to feasts, where their victuals and drink are mixed with soporific or poisonous drugs, through the effects of which they <sup>4</sup> fall an easy prey to these robbers and murderers, <sup>5</sup> the extraordinary success of whose atrocities can only be accounted for by the condition of the countries in which they take place. <sup>6</sup> They attained great strength in Central India, and many gangs of this class passed annually through the country, on their way to the dominions of the Nizam and the Peshwa. In 1819 the manager of Mandisûr surrounded a body of Thugs, who professed themselves, and appeared to be, <sup>7</sup> a party of horse and foot soldiers that were escorting their baggage on camels and bullocks from the Deccan. <sup>8</sup> He had, however, gained information who they were, and commanded them to submit; they refused, and an action took place, in which the Thugs were routed, some of them killed, and others made prisoners. The whole of their booty was captured, amounting in value to more than a lac of rupees, and comprising every variety of personal clothes and ornaments, <sup>9</sup> rich and poor, for they plunder all classes indiscriminately. Among other articles, a great number of their strangling cords were taken and exhibited.

MALCOLM.

*Directions.*

(1) In order to avoid the second Relative and the Passives, turn 'by which, having thrown (it) round the necks, etc., they strangle and plunder (them).' Also see **50.** (1).

(2) Turn this as follows: 'The object of the Thugs is with rich travellers only, and if these are numerous, etc. they bring them

into the net of deceit with a thousand artifices and entangle them.' In this latter clause the first verb may be constructed as a Past Conjunctive Participle.

(3) Introduce this sentence by *chunānchi*, and construct actively in connection with preceding sentence.

(4) Turn 'come easily into power (*qābū*) of.'

(5) Begin a fresh sentence here.

(6) Turn 'The Thugs especially increased in Central India (*wasat Hind*), and every year several gangs of them passing-through (*hoke*) this country were in the habit of going towards,' etc. See **126**.

(7) In the *oratio recta*. The word 'loaded' must be placed before the preposition 'on.'

(8) Turn thus: 'but to the *hākīm* their actual reality had been discovered.'

(9) Turn this more accurately than the English expression by *kyā amīron kā aur kyā garībon kā*. 'Indiscriminately' may be rendered by *be taskhīs-i-ashkhās* 'without specification of persons.' This kind of association of fellow-derivatives is considered to be good style. Comp. Sect. I. **9**. (9).

---

## SECTION IV.

<sup>1</sup> PROCLAMATION

BY THE QUEEN IN COUNCIL TO THE PRINCES, CHIEFS,  
AND PEOPLE OF INDIA.

<sup>2</sup> VICTORIA,

By the Grace of God, of the United Kingdom of  
Great Britain and Ireland, and of the Colonies  
and Dependencies Thereof in Europe, Asia, Africa,  
America, and Australasia, Queen, Defender of the  
Faith.

<sup>3</sup> Whereas, for divers weighty reasons, We have re-  
solved, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords  
Spiritual and Temporal and Commons in Parliament  
assembled, to take upon Ourselves the Government of the  
Territories in India, heretofore administered in trust for  
Us by the Honourable East India Company.

<sup>4</sup> Now, therefore, We do by these presents notify and  
declare that, by the advice and consent aforesaid, We  
have taken upon Ourselves the said Government; and We  
hereby call upon all Our subjects within the said territo-

ries to be faithful, and to bear true allegiance to Us, Our Heirs, and Successors, and to submit themselves to the authority of those whom We may hereafter, from time to time, see fit to appoint to administer the Government of Our said Territories, in Our name and on Our behalf.

<sup>5</sup> And We, reposing especial trust and confidence in the loyalty, ability, and judgment of Our trusty and well-beloved Cousin and Councillor, Charles John, Viscount Canning, do hereby constitute and appoint him, the said Viscount Canning, to be Our first Viceroy and Governor-General in and over Our said Territories, to administer the Government thereof, in Our name, and generally to act in Our name and on Our behalf, subject to such Orders and Regulations as he shall, from time to time, receive from Us through one of Our Principal Secretaries of State.

<sup>6</sup> And We do hereby confirm in their several Offices, Civil and Military, all persons now employed in the service of the Honourable East India Company, subject to Our future pleasure, and to such laws and regulations as may hereafter be enacted.

<sup>7</sup> We hereby announce to the Native Princes of India that all Treaties and Engagements made with them by or under the authority of the Honourable East India Company, are by us accepted, and will be scrupulously maintained; and We look for the like observance on their part.

<sup>8</sup> We desire no extension of Our present territorial possessions, and while we will permit no aggression upon Our dominions or Our rights to be attempted with impunity, We shall sanction no encroachment on those of

others. We shall respect the rights, dignity, and honour of Native Princes as Our own; and We desire that they, as well as Our own subjects, should enjoy that prosperity and that social advancement which can only be secured by internal peace and good government.

<sup>9</sup> We hold Ourselves bound to the Natives of Our Indian Territories by the same obligations of duty which bind Us to all Our other subjects; and those obligations, by the blessing of Almighty God, we shall faithfully and conscientiously fulfil.

<sup>10</sup> Firmly relying Ourselves on the truth of Christianity, and acknowledging with gratitude the solace of religion, We disclaim alike the right and the desire to impose Our convictions on any of Our subjects. We declare it to be our Royal will and pleasure that none be in any wise favoured, none molested or disquieted, by reason of their religious faith or observances; but that all shall alike enjoy the equal and impartial protection of the Law: and We do strictly charge and enjoin all those who may be in authority under Us, that they abstain from all interference with the religious belief or worship of any of Our subjects, on pain of our highest displeasure.

<sup>11</sup> And it is Our further will that, so far as may be, Our subjects, of whatever race or creed, be freely and impartially admitted to offices in Our service, the duties of which they may be qualified by their education, ability, and integrity, duly to discharge.

<sup>12</sup> We know, and respect, the feelings of attachment with which the Natives of India regard the lands inherited by them from their ancestors; and We desire to protect them in all rights connected therewith, subject



to the equitable demands of the State; and We will that, generally, in framing and administering the Law, due regard be paid to the ancient rights, usages, and customs of India.

<sup>13</sup> We deeply lament the evils and misery which have been brought upon India by the acts of ambitious men, who have deceived their countrymen by false reports, and led them into open rebellion. Our power has been shewn by the suppression of that rebellion in the field; We desire to shew Our mercy, by pardoning the offences of those who have been thus misled, but who desire to return to the path of duty.

<sup>14</sup> Already, in one Province, with a view to stop the further effusion of blood and to hasten the pacification of Our Indian dominions, Our Viceroy and Governor-General has held out the expectation of pardon on certain terms, to the great majority of those who in the late unhappy disturbances have been guilty of offences against Our Government; and has declared the punishment which will be inflicted on those whose crimes place them beyond the reach of forgiveness.

<sup>15</sup> We approve and confirm the said act of Our Viceroy and Governor-General, and do further announce and proclaim as follows:—

<sup>16</sup> Our clemency will be extended to all offenders save and except those who have been, or shall be, convicted of having directly taken part in the murder of British subjects: with regard to such the demands of justice forbid the exercise of mercy.

<sup>17</sup> To those who have willingly given asylum to murderers, knowing them to be such, or who may have acted as leaders or instigators in revolt, their lives can alone be

guaranteed ; but in apportioning the penalty due to such persons, full consideration will be given to the circumstances under which they have been induced to throw off their allegiance ; and large indulgence will be shown to those whose crimes may appear to have originated in too credulous acceptance of the false reports circulated by designing men.

<sup>18</sup> To all others in arms against the Government, We hereby promise unconditional pardon, amnesty, and oblivion of all offence against Ourselves, Our Crown and dignity, on their return to their homes and peaceful pursuits.

<sup>19</sup> It is Our Royal pleasure that these terms of grace and amnesty should be extended to all those who comply with their conditions before the 1st day of January next.

<sup>20</sup> When, by the blessing of Providence, internal tranquillity shall be restored, it is Our earnest desire to stimulate the peaceful industry of India, to promote works of public utility and improvement, and to administer its Government for the benefit of all Our subjects resident therein. In their prosperity will be Our strength ; in their contentment Our security ; and in their gratitude Our best reward. And may the God of all power grant to Us, and to those in authority under Us, strength to carry out these Our wishes for the good of Our people.

*Directions.*

(1) Persian, in some of its idioms, is a better conveyancer of official English than Hindustani, partly on account of its prestige as the former language of the Courts, and partly because it involves less inversion of the English order of the words. Thus, in translating the heading of this Proclamation, the Persianised form *Ishtehâr-i-malîqa-mo'azzama ba-ijlâs-i-kaunsil ba-nâm-i-wâliyân o sardârân o bâshindagân-i-Hind*, involving, as it does, nothing which is strange or unintelligible to an educated native, is statelier both in form and sound than *Ishtehâr malîka-mo'azzama kâ kaunsil ke ijlâs men Hindustân ke ra'ison aur sardâron aur bâshindon ke nâm*, which is the Hindustani equivalent.

(2) In this paragraph, native etiquette requires the word 'Queen' to be in the forefront of the sentence. Begin, therefore, *janâb malîqa-mo'azzama Victoria*, and instead of 'of' say 'Regent of the kingdoms of,' omitting 'united,' as unnecessary; thus, *khâdiv-i-mamâlik-i-*, etc. And, as the paragraph is not a heading, it should be completed in the Hindustani version; thus, 'on the part of (*kî taraf se*) it is published for public information in the following terms,' *khâss o 'âmm kî ittilâ' ke li'e hasb-i-tafsil-i-zail mushtahar kiyâ jâtâ hai*.

(3) Begin with the formal *wâzeh ho ki* 'Be informed that.' See Vocabulary for the remaining terms. For 'resolve' the term most congruous to the occasion is *irâda kar-lenâ*, because 'irâdê' is the official term under Mahomedan Governments for a public decree. The last clause must be turned as a relative clause parenthetically adjusted, viz. 'of which the management till to-day was committed in trust to the Honourable East India Company,' and the last four words are to be transliterated.

(4) 'By these presents,' is *qirtâs ke râ se*, lit. 'By the face or appearance of this document.' 'Call upon,' *tâkîdan farmânâ ki*.

(5) To be turned in this form: 'And as (*jo*) there is to us full trust, etc. in the loyalty, etc. of,' etc. The conventional terms 'trusty and well-beloved,' etc. may be rendered by the corresponding official Persian *Farzand-i-arjmand mo'azzaz o mo'tamad 'alaihi*

*mushtr-i-khâss* placed at the beginning of the clause. 'Through one of our principal,' etc., *ma'rifat hamâre vazîr-i-a'zam ke*.

(6) Begin with relative clause: 'And those people who,' etc. 'Hereby,' i.e. 'by these presents,' which may be repeated from (4). The clause 'subject to,' etc. should be introduced by *lekin*: 'but let them be subject,' etc.

(7) To be turned as follows: 'And information is given to the Princes of India that we shall,' etc., the relative clause, however, standing first with doubled relative. 'Native' is unnecessary. The final clause is emphasized by the preface *aur chashm-dâshht hai ki*, etc. 'and there is expectation that.'

(8) Begin, 'The country which is at present in our possession, we do not wish to extend,' etc. 'And while,' etc., *aur jab yeh hamko gawâra nahîn hai ki*, followed by *to ham bhî* in the apodosis. 'As our own,' that is, 'like our own rights.' 'Internal' need not be translated in the final clause.

(9) Begin with relative clause: 'The obligations which are incumbent on us with respect to our other subjects, those same obligations we shall consider our necessary charge with respect to our subjects in India, and by God's grace we shall continue to regard the said obligations with faithfulness and sincerity.' The student should bear in mind the use of the Progressive and Continuative forms of the verb in this and other paragraphs. The masculine and not the feminine plural should be used throughout.

(10) Construct with concessive clause, followed by *to bhî* in the apodosis, and proceed, 'it is neither our design nor desire that we cause to adopt (*taslîm karânâ*),' etc. After this, carry on the *junctura* with *balki*. The final clause may be turned 'and if not (*wa illâ*), our extreme wrath will be.'

(11) 'Of whatever,' etc., *Go kisi qaum yâ mazhab kî ho*. 'Freely and impartially,' *bilâ ta'arruz o taraf-dâri ke*.

(12) The translation of the verb 'respect' in this connection is difficult, for the ordinary verbs in use are applicable to persons only. Approval of the sentiment referred to is intended: begin, therefore, with *iskâ hamko ba-khâbî 'ilm hai ki*, followed by 'the people of India love the lands (*arâzî*) which,' etc. The clause 'subject to,' etc. may be rendered here adverbially, *ba-shart adâ karne mutâlaba sarkârî ke*, the word *mutâlaba* being technically used

as a *legal* demand. The last part of the paragraph may run: 'And it is our order that at the time of the framing and effecting (*nifâz*) of the law, full consideration continue (*hotâ rahná*) for (*par*) ancient rights and the habits and customs of India.'

(13) 'Evils,' etc. cannot be the direct object of 'lament' in the Hindustani idiom. Turn, therefore: 'On the hearing of this state of things (*ba-istimâ' is hâl ke*) that some intriguers, by spreading (Past Conjunctive Participle) false reports and seducing their fellow-countrymen, caused them to make open mutiny and made a calamity descend on India, extreme sorrow was to us.' The implied 'path of duty' being submission, the phrase may be translated accordingly; but the idea may also be expressed by the Persian *rû-ba-râh*.

(14) This paragraph is exceptionally difficult. Paraphrase as follows: 'With this intention that in future more bloodshed be not allowed (*hone pâná*), and (that) peace and tranquillity take place quickly in our countries of India, our Viceroy, etc., in one province where (*ki jahân*) the people in the days of foul mutiny did offence against the Government, made most of them expectant of pardon for their faults on special conditions; and the faults of those which made them outside the enclosure (*pale*) of mercy, of those also has explained the punishments.'

(15) Begin with *chunânci*.

(16) This also is extremely difficult. Turn as follows: 'Except those people with respect to whom it has been proved or may be proved that they have personally shared in the murder of a subject of the English Government, a declaration of mercy with respect to all the rest will be made; but with respect to the sharers in murder justice demands this, that no mercy be shown them.'

(17) 'Knowing them to be such,' *jân-bâjh-ke*. 'But in apportioning,' etc., *lekin aise logon kî tajwîz-i-sazâ men*. 'And large indulgence,' etc. Turn as follows: 'And in respect of those people who, without thinking (*be soche*), having come into the false statements of the intriguers, became criminal, great clemency will be done.'

(18) This may be constructed as follows: 'With (*se*) all the rest who are, etc. . . by these presents the promise is, that, if they go

home and engage in their occupations peacefully, then their faults, which were committed (*sarṣād*) in respect of us and in respect of our sovereignty and dignity, without condition will be pardoned and forgiven and forgotten.'

(19) 'Terms' and 'conditions' may be translated by the same word, *sharā'it* (pl. of *shart*). 'Extended,' *muta'alliq* (*se*).

(20) The first sentence of this paragraph is thus constructed: 'It is our earnest desire that, when in India by God's grace again tranquillity may be restored (*ho-jānā*), then (*to*) there improvement of the arts of peace be effected, and for the benefiting (*ifāda*) of the people works like the making (*tayyārī*) of roads and canals, etc. be established, and such an administration of the country made that from which advantage may be to all our subjects of the said country.' Join to this the following sentence by *kyānki* 'Their prosperity is for us a cause of power,' and so forth. The last sentence is thus turned: 'And may the God of all power (*khudāe qādir*) to us and our subordinates grant such grace that these our wishes (*murād*) for the advantage of the people may reach a happy ending' (*husn ikhtitām ko pahānchnā*).

END OF PART III.

# APPENDICES.

APPENDIX A.  
 CONCEPTS OF ARABIC VERBAL FORMS (TRILITERAL ROOT).  
*The Examples are confined to Words used in the Exercises.*

Abstract Nouns and Nouns of Action. (Infinitive.)		Participial Nouns and Adjectives.	
Forms, with general idea of the meaning of the Nouns in Col. 2.	Active.	Passive.	
I. Abstract sense of root.	<b>فَاعِل</b> حاكم <i>hâkim</i> رَاضٍ — <i>râzi</i> قَائِمٌ — <i>qâ'im</i>	<b>مَفْعُول</b> معلوم <i>ma'ûm</i> مانوس — <i>mânûs</i> موجود — <i>mayjûd</i> معني — <i>ma'nî</i>	
II. The augment <i>ta</i> denotes causation, or the putting into form or practice the root idea. The inserted <i>f</i> is intensive, as also the duplication of the 2nd radical in the Participles.	<b>تَفْعِيل</b> تعليم <i>ta'lim</i> تَأْثِيرٌ — <i>tâsir</i> تَرْبِيَةٌ — <i>tarbiyat</i>	<b>مَفْعَل</b> مقرر — <i>muqarrar</i> مؤدب — <i>mu'addab</i> مهيباً — <i>mohaiyâ</i>	
III. The inserted <i>â</i> denotes effectiveness of result or causation. The augment <i>mu</i> denotes reciprocity of action.	<b>مُفَاعَل</b> موافق — <i>muwâfiq</i>	<b>مُفَاعَل</b> مختاب — <i>mukhâtab</i>	



<p>IV.</p> <p>The augment <i>i</i> denotes effort, and the inserted <i>á</i> effectiveness, or the effect in connection with its cause.</p>	<p><b>افعال</b>  <i>iqbál</i> انقبال  <i>ímán</i> — آمن  <i>ímá</i> — وما  <i>iráda</i> — ارادة</p>	<p><b>مَفْعَل</b>  <i>mumkin</i> ممكن  <i>muríd</i> --- مرید  <i>munshí</i> منشأ</p>	<p><b>مَفْعَل</b>  <i>mutlaq</i> مطلق  <i>murád</i> --- مراد</p>
<p>V.</p> <p>The augment <i>ta</i> denotes consequence with reference to the idea conveyed by F. II. The duplication of the 2nd radical is intensive.</p>	<p><b>تَفَعَّل</b>  <i>talafíuz</i> تلفظ  <i>ta'ammul</i> — تأمل</p>	<p><b>مَتَفَعَّل</b>  <i>mutashakki</i> — شكوك  <i>mutasawwir</i> — صورت</p>	<p><b>مَتَفَعَّل</b>  <i>mutabanná</i> --- بتنى</p>
<p>VI.</p> <p>The augment <i>ta</i> denotes consequence with reference to Form III.</p>	<p><b>تَفَاعَلَ</b>  <i>tafáwut</i> — تقاربت  <i>tamáshá</i> — تماشى</p>	<p><b>مَتَفَاعَلَ</b>  <i>mutawáwir</i> --- متواتر</p>	<p><b>مَتَفَاعَلَ</b></p>
<p>VII.</p> <p>The augment <i>in</i> indicates the passive or abstract realisation of root idea.</p>	<p><b>انْفَعَلَ</b>  <i>insidád</i> — استد</p>	<p><b>مَنْفَعَلَ</b>  <i>munsarim</i> منصور</p>	<p><b>مَنْفَعَلَ</b></p>
<p>VIII.</p> <p>The augment <i>i</i> and the inserted <i>ti</i> indicate a more personal or concrete realisation.</p>	<p><b>اِفْتَعَلَ</b>  <i>ekhtiyát</i> — احتياط  <i>ittifáq</i> — اتفاق  <i>ittilá'á</i> — اطلاع</p>	<p><b>مَفْتَعَلَ</b>  <i>murákib</i> مركب  <i>multawí</i> --- لوى  <i>mudda'á</i> --- مدعا</p>	<p><b>مَفْتَعَلَ</b>  <i>mukhtasar</i> مختصر  <i>moháj</i> --- حوجه  <i>mudda'á</i> --- مدعا</p>
<p>X.</p> <p>The augment <i>isti</i> indicates the attribution or expectation of results.</p>	<p><b>اِسْتَفَعَلَ</b>  <i>iste'dád</i> — استعداد</p>	<p><b>مَسْتَفَعَلَ</b>  <i>mustaqím</i> --- قائم</p>	<p><b>مَسْتَفَعَلَ</b>  <i>musta'ár</i> --- عار</p>

## REMARKS.

1. In the model Measures, which are given in large type in the Conspectus, *Fá*, *'Ain*, and *Lám* are radical letters, and the rest, whether vowels or consonants, are said to 'fatten' the root, on the principle that extension of form means extension of meaning (see Col. 1).

This process of word-building is regular and symmetrical, but is subject to certain euphonic adjustments when one or other of the radicals is a 'weak' letter, that is to say, is either  $\text{ف}$ , or  $\text{ع}$ . These letters are severally homogeneous with the vowels *Fatha*, *Zamma*, and *Kasra*; and, when 'quiescent' by position, combine with them to form the long sounds *á*, *ú*, and *í*. Only two other combinations are admissible, viz., the diphthongs *au* and *ai*, in which *fatha* precedes *wáv* and *yá*. Consequently, in the structure of derivatives, when a weak radical (quiescent) succeeds a vowel augment in any other order than is indicated by the above five legitimate combinations, such radical gives way, and is either changed or dropped, as the circumstances of the case require. Thus, *Alif-hamza* may be changed to *Wáv* or *Yá*, *Wáv* to *Yá*, or *Yá* to *Wáv*.

2. An examination of the examples which are given in the Conspectus, with their roots, for this special purpose, will explain the principle of these permutations.

FORM I. (1) In  $\text{رأى}$ , *rázi*, normally *ráziw*, the 3rd radical has been changed to *yá*, with which the characteristic *Kasra* of the second syllable is combined. In classical Arabic the radical *wáv* is dropped, and the *Kasra* preserved in the form of *tanwín*, so that *rázin*, not *rázi*, is the mode.

(2) In قائم *qâ'im* the 2nd radical has been changed to *yâ* to avoid the double *alif*. *Hamza* records the nature of the change, and the suppression of the subscript dots in the substituted letter indicates that the sound of the syllable is 'im, not *yim*. The common word *sâ'is*, vulgarly 'syce' is another example.

(3) In مأنوس *mânûs*, the *fatha* of the augment combines with the quiescent *alif-hamza*, and the same thing takes place in موجود *maujûd*. In معنى *ma'nî*, the characteristic augment *û* of the second syllable in the normal form has been changed to *î*, and the 3rd radical is dropped in writing, though the sign of *tashdîd* is added by the grammarians.

FORM II. (1) In تأثير *tâsir*, the *fatha* of the augment combines with the quiescent *alif-hamza*; and the same thing takes place in the final syllable of *mohaiyâ*.

(2) In تربية or تربيت *tarbiyat*, the *wâv* has been changed to *yâ*, and the lightening of the characteristic *î* of the second syllable compensated by the affix *at*.

(3) In the Participial forms مؤذن *mu'azzin*, and مؤدب *mu'addab*, the 1st radical has been changed to *wâv*, with which the *zamma* of the augment is homogeneous. *Hamza* records the nature of the change and reminds the reader that the pronunciation is unaltered.

FORM III. (1) In مؤاخذه *mu'âkhaza*, the change is the same as that above described. The *wâv* unites in writing with the *mîm* in both cases, but has no sound of its own.

(2) In ملاقات *mulâqât*, normally *mulûqayat*, the radical *yâ* is dropped, and the characteristic *fathas* unite to form the *â* of the final syllable.

(3) In موافق *muwâfiq*, no change was necessary in the writing, but the radical *wâv* is unsounded.

FORM IV. (1) In ایمان *ímán*, and ایما *ímá*, the 1st radical has been changed to *yá* in symphony with the characteristic *kasra* of the augment, and though the radicals are different, the crasis thus formed is the same in sound.

(2) In ارادة *iráda*, normally *irwád*, the loss of the *wáv* is compensated for by the affix *ah* or *at*. In the Participial forms *muríd* and *murád*, from the same root, compensation is made by lengthening the characteristic vowels of the second syllable in each case.

(3) In منشی *munshí*, the 3rd radical has been changed to *yá* in sympathy with the characteristic *kasra* of the second syllable.

FORM V. (1) In تامل *ta'ammul*, the *fatha* of the augment forms a crasis in writing, but not in reading, with the homogeneous 1st radical. (Comp. F. II. (3) above.)

(2) In متشكى *mutashakki*, the 3rd radical has been changed to *yá* in symphony with the characteristic *kasra* of the final syllable.

(3) In متبىل *mutabanná*, both servile and radical are retained in the form *ت* which is usually written and read as *á* in Persian and Hindustani.

FORM VI. (1) In تماهى *tamúshí*, the characteristic *zamma* of the final syllable has been changed to *kasra* in symphony with the 3rd radical. This word, and a few others of the same form, are written and read in Hindustani with *á* instead of *í* final.

FORM VIII. (1) In احتياط *ehdiyát*, the 2nd radical which follows the medial augment *ti* has been changed for the homogeneous *yá*. In *multawí*, on the other hand, the augment is *ta*, not *ti*, and the *wáv* is retained.

(2) In محتاج *mohtáj*, normally *mohtawaj*, the *wáv*, has

been dropped, and (as in F. III. (2) above) the two *fathas* form a crasis in *ā*.

(3) In *اِتِّفَاقٌ ittifāq*, normally *iwtifāq*, the loss of the *wāv* has been compensated by the duplication of the servile *t*.

(4) In *اِطَّلَاعٌ ittilāʿ*, *مُدَّةٌ muddaʿi*, *مُدَّةٌ muddaʿā*, the euphonic change consists in the absorption, under *tashdīd*, of the medial augment *t* with the 1st radical. It may be added here that, when the 1st radical is *j* the *t* of the augment becomes *ج*; and when the 1st radical is *ص* or *ض* the *t* is written *ط*.

FORM X. (1) In *مُسْتَقِيمٌ mustaqīm*, the 2nd radical has been dropped, and compensation been made, as in *murīd*, F. IV., by lengthening the characteristic *kasra* of the final syllable.

(2) In *مُسْتَعَارٌ mustaʿār*, the same explanation holds good. Compare *murād*, F. IV.

3. The chief proportion of Arabic verbals current in Hindustani belongs to Form I., under the head 'Nouns of Action,' which are used as Abstract nouns, and, with *at* or *ah* added, as 'Nouns of Unity.' Of the Derived Forms, the most fully represented are those which belong to Forms II., IV., VIII., but it rarely happens that more than four or five Derivatives from the same root are in use. An example of four Forms from the same root occurs in the *Conspectus*, viz., *ʿilm* 'knowledge,' and *maʿlūm* 'known'; *taʿlīm* 'education,' and *moʿallim* 'teacher.' In addition to these *ʿālim* 'knowing,' and *ʿalīm* 'all-knowing,' an epithet of the Deity, and one or two rarer forms, are current in literature.

4. The Gender of Nouns of F. I. is conventional. For

instance, *'ilm* is masculine and *'aql* feminine; *fikr* 'thought' is either Masculine or Feminine. Nouns of this class, however, which end in *â* are generally Feminine. (See Part I. 2.) The Gender of nouns which belong to the other Forms is almost invariably Masculine, except in the case of Form II., where the reverse is the case. Out of some 230 regular examples of this Form, which occur in Hindustani, only one, viz., *ta'wiz* 'amulet,' is Masculine.

5. In addition to the three leading verbal Measures of Form I., which are given in the Conspectus, the following are in every-day use:—

(1) A form denoting intensive agency in the noun, or superlativeness in the adjective; as, *faqîr* 'a professional beggar'; *hakîm* 'one who gives orders in a special branch of science,' 'a physician,' or 'sage'; *amîr* 'one who gives commands,' 'a ruler'; *ra'îs* 'one who exercises headship'; *sharîr* 'villainous'; *rahîm* 'compassionate'; *'alîm* 'all-knowing,' 'omniscient,' mentioned above.

(2) *Mîm*-ated Nouns of Place and Instrument, so called because they receive the prefix *ma* or *mi*; such as, *masjid* 'place of worship'; *matba'* 'place of printing'; *miftâh* 'instrument for opening,' 'key'; *mîzân* (root, *wazn*) 'instrument for weighing,' 'balance,' etc. etc.

(3) *Mîm*-ated Nouns of Action; such as, *mahabbat* 'affection'; *maslahat* 'counsel,' etc.

(4) Nouns formed by the addition of *at*, often softened to *ah* in passing through the Persian, to the Participial forms; as, *musibat* 'misfortune'; *muqaddama* 'law-suit,' etc.

(5) Nouns or adjectives, of which the characteristic is

a duplication of the 2nd radical, which denotes intensive-ness (see F. II.); such as, *nawwáb* (Anglicè, *Nabob*) 'a vice-regent'; *sarráf* (Anglicè, *shroff*) 'a money-changer'; *tayyâr* 'alert,' etc. etc.

6. Numerous other Arabic measures are employed in the vocabulary of Hindustani, and among these the various forms of 'Broken Plural,' of which instances occur in the Exercises, deserve close attention. But enough has now been said to show the interest and the importance of the subject, with reference to the remarks made in the opening paragraph of this work.

---

## APPENDIX B.

### THE TENSE SYSTEM OF THE HINDUSTANI VERB.

Ex. **mārnā** 'striking' or 'to strike.'

Native Nomenclature.	Corresponding English Nomenclature.	3rd Pers. Sing.	English Meaning.
<p><b>Three Tenses formed from the Base</b> (Which may itself be used as an Abstract Noun).</p>			
1. <i>Amr</i> . . . . .	Imperative . . . . .  (Precative) . . . . .	<b>mār</b> 2 p.s. <b>māriyo.</b>  <b>māri'e, māri'egā.</b>	Strike thou. Strike (not necessarily at once). Pray strike (when or as you please).
2. <i>Muzdri'</i> . . . . .	{ Aorist or Dubious } { or Optative . . . }	<b>māre</b> . . . . .	{ He strikes (perhaps) or may strike.
3. <i>Mustaqbil Ehtimālī.</i>	Future or Presumptive.	<b>māregā</b> . . . . .	He will strike or must strike.
<p><b>Six Tenses formed from the Imperfect Participle (<i>Ism-fā'īl</i>).</b></p>			
4. <i>Hāl</i> . . . . .	Present . . . . .	<b>mārtā hai.</b>	He is striking.
5. <i>Hāl-mashkūk.</i>	Present Dubious . . . . .	<b>mārtā ho</b> . . . . .	He is striking (perhaps), or may be striking.
6. <i>Hāl-ehitimāli.</i>	Present Presumptive.	<b>mārtā hogā</b>	He will be striking (perhaps), or must be striking.
7. <i>Māzi-nātamām</i> . . . . .	Past Imperfect . . . . .	<b>mārtā thā</b> . . . . .	He was striking.
8. <i>Māzi</i> { <i>shartī</i> } { <i>tamannā'ī</i> }	Past { Conditional } { Optative. . . . . }	<b>mārtā</b> . . . . .	{ Had he struck. { Would he had struck.
9. <i>Aizan</i> . . . . .	Do. do. (2nd Form)	<b>mārtā hotā</b>	{ Had he been striking. { Would he had been striking.
<p><b>Six Tenses formed from the Perfect Participle (<i>Ism-maf'ūl</i>).</b></p>			
10. <i>Māzi-mutlaq</i> . . . . .	Past Absolute . . . . .	<b>mārā</b> . . . . .	He struck.
11. <i>Māzi-qarīb</i> . . . . .	Past Proximate . . . . .	<b>mārā hai</b> . . . . .	He has struck (recently).
12. <i>Māzi-mashkūk</i> . . . . .	Past Dubious . . . . .	<b>mārā ho</b> . . . . .	He struck (perhaps), or may have struck.
13. <i>Māzi-ehitimāli</i> . . . . .	Past Presumptive . . . . .	<b>mārā hogā.</b>	He will have struck, or must have struck.
14. <i>Māzi-ba'id</i> . . . . .	Past Remote . . . . .	<b>mārā thā</b> . . . . .	He struck (some time ago), or had struck.
15. <i>Māzi.</i> { <i>shartī</i> } { <i>tamannā'ī</i> }	Past { Conditional } { (Remote). } { Optative } { (3rd Form). }	<b>mārā hotā</b> . . . . .	{ Had he struck (some time ago). { Would he had struck (some time ago).



## REMARKS.

(1) In respect of Time, the first three Tenses are Future, the next three Present, and the last nine Past. Native grammarians place the Past Tenses first, in imitation of the Arabic manner, then the Present, then the Future.

(2) In respect of Meaning, Nos. 5 and 12 serve as Auxiliary extensions of No. 2.

(3) Similarly Nos. 9 and 15 serve as Auxiliary extensions of No. 8.

(4) No. 8 is formed from No. 7 by dropping the Auxiliary *thá*, and No. 15 is formed from No. 9 by dropping the Auxiliary *thá*, and using *hotá* in its place.

(5) As regards the nomenclature, *Muzári*' (No. 2) is a misnomer, and out of harmony with the rest of the designations. It means 'resembling,' and is borrowed from Arabic grammar, in the tense-system of which what we call the Aorist has noun-like inflections. Some native scholars have suggested the term *gair-mo'ayyan* to correspond with our term Aorist.

As regards the order of the Tenses, English grammarians place the Tense No. 8 where No. 4 stands in the arrangement here adopted. In so doing they forget the fact that No. 8 is a *Past Tense*, formed, as said above, by dropping the Auxiliary in No. 7.

---

## APPENDIX C.

ON THE USE OF THE ROMAN CHARACTER IN  
TRANSLITERATION.

1. There are three difficulties in practice, viz.—

(1) The due representation of the short vowels, viz., of *Zabar, Zer, Pesh* or *Fatha, Kasra, Zamma*. Sir W. Jones's adoption of *a, i, u*, is undoubtedly the most convenient for Englishmen, and the word *insular*, which might be written *انسَلَر* is a compendious exhibit of the sounds intended to be conveyed, the only objection being that, in English, *a* rarely has the sound which is here assigned to it. But, as a matter of fact, each of the vowels *Zabar, Zer, Pesh*, is liable to considerable modification of tone in connection with certain consonants, notably, so far as Hindustani is concerned, when the syllables in which they occur are closed by *ح* or *ه* or *ع*. A hard and fast rule is, therefore, misleading. Thus, the vowel *Zabar* has the sound of *e* rather than *a* before *ح* and *ه*. For example, *تَحْصِيل* is better written *tehsil* than *tahsil*; and this variation in sound is due to the necessity of clearly aspirating the consonant. In several common words, such as *كَهْنَا kahná*, *پَهْلَا pahlá*, the *Zabar* approaches the sound of *ei*, and can be acquired by the ear only. *Zabar* before *ع* hardens to *á*, as was noticed at 85. 7, an effect due to the peculiar phonation of that consonant, for which see below.

Again, the vowel *Zer* has the sound of *e* rather than *i* before *ح* *ه* and *ع* when these letters close the syllable. Thus, *مِهْنَت* is *mehnat*, not *mihnat*, and *مِهْمَان* *mehmán*,

not *mihmân*. In the same way دہلی is rightly written *Dehli*, not *Dihli*. (*Delhi* is doubly wrong.) On the other hand, the native fashion of spelling دلی is correctly given in *Dilli*. Hence, too, ے is better rendered *yeh* than *yih*. Similarly, استعداد is more exactly pronounced *iste'dâd* than *isti'dâd*, and اعتبار is *e'tibâr*, not *i'tibâr*, فعل *fe'l*, not *fi'l*. The vowel *Pesh* before these same consonants is *o* rather than *u*, under the same circumstances. Thus, محتاج is *moh'tâj*, not *muhtâj*, and عہدہ is rather *'ohda* than *'uhda*. The pronoun وہ is better rendered *woh* than *wuh*. Similarly, معلم is *mo'allim*, not *mu'allim*, معاملہ *mo'âmala*, not *mu'âmala*.

It may be added here that, in such words as فتح or صلح which, exactly transliterated, would be *fath* and *sulh*, the necessity of clearly enunciating the aspirated final, produces the di-syllabic utterance *fateh* and *suleh*. For a case in point see **85. 6**.

(2) The representation of different consonants which have approximately the same sound to the European ear; such as, ط, ظ, ذ, ز, ص, ص, etc. The ordinary practice is to use one Roman letter, and to differentiate the Oriental letters by placing a dot or dots below this Roman letter. The only other alternative is to invent separate symbols, such as those used by Prof. Newman in his *Handbook of Modern Arabic*; but one might as well use the originals themselves. The objection to the dot system is that it is not sufficiently distinctive, and fails to catch the eye and impress the memory, so that when an exercise is written in the native character, misspelling is unavoidable by students who lean too much upon the romanization of the words. The hints given in the first Exercise, if studiously attended to, will help to minimise the evil. The subscript

dots are omitted in this work by way of compelling the student to refer to the original words.

(3) The representation of the letter  $\xi$  'Ain. The real vocal affinity between this letter and *Hamza* is indicated in the symbol adopted by the Arabs to denote the latter, which symbol is the upper portion of the 'Ain. Consequently, if the comma is accepted as a representative of *Hamza*, it is consistent *pro tanto* to take the inverted comma, inconvenient as it is, as the sign for 'Ain.

2. As regards the pronunciation of the 'Ain, the author above referred to says:—"The letter *Ain* is not merely a hiatus like *Hamze*, but a muscular upward jerk of the chest and stomach, accompanied with an elevation of musical note to the vowel." Whatever may be the case in the Desert, the Indian Mahomedan is content with a less spasmodic phonation. Without apparent effort he emits the sound directly from the larynx.

The letter *Gain*, which represents the *Gimel* of Hebrew and the *Gamma* of the Greeks, is produced in much the same way, but has a harsher and coarser sound than 'Ain. The Arabs themselves describe it as غرر *garr*, غرارة *garâra*, or غرغرة *gargarat* 'gargling.'

---

## VOCABULARY No. 1.

### OF WORDS CONTAINED IN THE HINDUSTANI SENTENCES OF PARTS I. AND II.

(The numbers refer to the Exercises in which the words occur.)

- |  
 اب *ab* now ; *ab* to just now, for the present ; *abtak* up to the present time, till now, as yet, 51.  
 ابابیل *abábíl* swallow, 164. *a.*  
 ابتر *abtar* ruined, impoverished, disorganized, 18. *a.*  
 آبرو *âbrú* honour ; *âbrú* *barhânâ* to increase the honour paid to a person, to honour, do honour to, 84. *p.*  
 آپ *âp* self or selves, whatever the person : you, Sir, Your Honour ; 3rd p. pl. (in addressing friends, equals, or superiors) ; *âp hî âp* or *âp se âp* of one's own accord, 91.  
 اپنا *apná* own ; applicable to all persons and numbers (see 43) ; *apne* pl. one's own folk (44) ; *apne âp se* of one's own accord.  
 اٹارنا *utárnâ* to take or bring down, 1st caus. of *utárnâ*, 68.  
 اتیس *atis* aconite, 18.  
 آٹا *âtâ* flour, 18.  
 آٹھ *âth* eight.  
 اٹھارہ *athâra* eighteen, 68.  
 اٹھانا *uthânâ* to raise, take up, etc., 1st caus. of *ûthnâ* ; *uthâ na rakhnâ* to take a thing up and not put it down (till done with), 84.  
 اثر *asr* effect, 10. *a.*  
 آج *âj* to-day ; *âj-kal* now-a-days, 10.  
 اجازت *ijâzat* leave, 143, 150. *a.*  
 اجنبی *ajnabî* foreign, 60. *a.*  
 اچھا *achchhâ* good, etc.  
 احتمال *ehtimâl* presumption, assumption, 143. *a.*  
 احتیاط *ehtiyât* care, caution, circumspection, 34. *a.*  
 اخبار *akhbâr* (pl. of *khavar*) newspaper, 122, 143. *a.*  
 اختیار *ikhtiyâr* authority, power, control, 150. *a.*

آخر *âkhir* at last; *âkhir* ko ditto, 187. *a.*

احلق *akhlâq* morals; *akhlâq* se courteously, kindly, 60. *a.*

ادب *adab* et quette, good manners, 76. *a.*

آدمی *âdmî* man, human being, 4. *a.*

آدھر *idhar* hither: *idhar* *ûdhar kî bâten* small talk, 76.

آدھ *âdh* half, 44.

آرادہ *irâda* intention, determination, 51, 157. *a.*

آرام *ârâm* ease, rest; *ârâm-talab* lazy, ease-loving, indolent, 91. *p.*

اردو *Urdû* name by which the Hindustani language was first known at Dehli, camp-language, 84. *t.*

آرستو *Aristû* Aristotle, 164. *a.*

آرے *are* vocative particle, like English O! hallo! you there! etc.

آزبسکہ *azbaski* inasmuch as, 157. *p.*

آسان *ûsân* easy, 182.

اسباب *asbâb* (pl. of *sabab*), things, baggage, furniture, etc., 18, 150. *a.*

استعداد *iste'dâd* proficiency, 44. *a.*

اسکو اسکا etc. *iskâ*, *isko* or *uskâ*, *usko* inflected forms of *yeh*, *woh*.

آسمان *asmân* sky, heaven, 34. *p.*

آشکار *âshkâr* known, evident, 34. *p.*

اصراف *isrâf* extravagance, 122. *a.*

اصلاً *aslan* totally, quite, 91. *a.*

اطلاع *ittilâ'* information, 137. *a.*

اعتبار *e'tibâr* reliance, 102. *a.*

آفتاب *âftâb* sun, 182. *p.*

آفسوس *afsos* alas! 60. *p.*

افشا *ifshâ* disclosure, 76. *a.*

افعال *af'âl* (pl. of *fe'l*) acts, deeds, proceedings, 176. *a.*

اقبال *iqbâl* prosperity, good fortune, 84. *a.*

اقرار *igrâr* confession, agreement; *igrâr k.* to confess, 91. *a.*

اکتھا or اکٹھا *ikathâ* or *ikhattâ* assembled, gathered together in one place, 18.

اکثر *aksar* most, many, the greater number; generally, 18. *a.*

آگاہ *âgâh* informed; *âgâh h.* to be informed, 157; *âgâh k.* to inform. *p.*

اگر *agar* if; *agarchi* although, 176. *p.*

آگرہ or آگرا *Agra* 27.

آگے *âge* in front of, before, in comparison with, 27, 97.

البتہ *albatta* certainly. *a.*

التا *ultâ* up-turned, 198; *ulti hawâ* adverse wind.

امر *amr* thing, matter, proceeding, affair, etc., 60, 137. *a.*

امیر *amîr* (from same root as above), prince, ruler, 193. *a.*

آمدنی *âmdanî* income, 137. *p.*

امکان *imkân* possibility, 193. *a.*

امیدوار *ummedwâr* hoping,

143; applicant for employment, 198. *p.*  
 آنا *ânâ* to come; *â-jânâ* to arrive, 187; *âne-do* let him come, 76.

آناری *anâri* rustic, 60.

انتظار *intizâr* expectation, waiting, 84. *a.*

انتظام *intizâm* administration, 109. *a.*

اندر *andar* inside, within, 109.

انسان *insân* human being, 176; *insânîyat* humanity, 44. *a.*

انسداد *insidâd* prevention, putting down, 27. *a.*

آنکھ *ânkh* eye, 102, 114.

انگریز *angrez* English (applied to persons), 84.

انگلی *ungli* finger, 27.

آواز *âwâz* voice, sound, 91. *p.*

اوپر *ûpar* over, above, 97.

اٹھنا *ûthnâ* to rise, get up.

اوسکو *ûskâ*, *ûsko* infl. forms of *woh*.

اوقات *auqât* (pl. of *waqt*) times, 164; wage, means, 198. *a.*

اهل حرفہ *ahli-hirfa* tradesmen, 193. *a.*

ایسا *aisâ* such, so, like this.

ایک *ek* (P. *yak*) one, a or an.

آینہ *âina* mirror, 143. *p.*

## ب

بابو *Bâbû* Hindû title of respect, corresponding with our 'Master,' 84.

باپ *bâp* father.

بات *bât* word, thing, matter (acc. to context), 4; *gâ'î guzrî bât* thing of the past, by-gones, 198.

بادشاہی *bâdshâhî* royal, 18. *p.*

بادل *bâdal* cloud, 109.

بارش *bârish* rainfall, 10. *p.*

بارہا *bârhâ* (Persian pl.) many times, again and again, 198. *p.*

باری *bâri* turn; *bâri bâri* (se) in turn, turn-about, 122.

باز *bâz* back; *bâz-rahnâ* to leave off, 157; *bâz-ânâ* do., 114, 176. *p.*

بازپرس *bâz-purs* inquiring, questioning, 157. *p.*

باغ *bâg* garden, 171. *p.*

باغی *bâgî* mutineer, rebel, 84. *a.*

باقی *bâqî* due, left, 44. *a.*

بال *bâl* child, 130; *bâl-bachche* children.

بالائی *bâlâ'î* over; extra, general (as applied to a charge, or duty), 130. *p.*

بالفعل *bilfe'l* at present, 198. *a.*

باندھنا *bândhnâ* to bind, fasten, 109; *zîn lagâm b.* to put on saddle and bridle, 68.

باوجود *bâ-wujûd* notwithstanding, 122. *a.*

باہر *bâhar* outside, 76; *bâhar kâ sâhib* a stranger or visitor, 34.

بائیں *bâ'en* construct form of *bâyân* left, 130.

بتانا *batânâ* to say, declare, state, tell, etc., 122, 137.

بچنا *bajnâ* to strike (of the hour); *bajâ*, *baje* correspond to our 'o'clock,' 114; *bajânâ* to strike, beat, 193, 1st caus. of above.

بچس *bi-jinsihi* intact, 150. *a.*

بچنا or بچانا *bachnâ* or *bach-jânâ* to escape, 164.

بچھنا *bichhnâ* to be spread, 102.

بچھونا *bichhonâ* bedding, 130.

بچھہ *bachcha* babe, child, 176. *p.*

بخشنا *bakhshnâ* to give, bestow on, pardon, 84.

بدکردار *bad-kardâr* ill-doer, 157. *p.*

بدمزاجی *bad-mizâji* bad-temper, 193. *p.*

بدنامی *bad-nâmi* disgrace, 27. *p.*

بذات خود *bi-zût-i-khûd* in person, 187. *a.*

برا *burâ* ill, bad, etc.; *burâ-mânnâ*, to take a thing ill, 187. *p.*

برابر *barâbar* like, equal to, 137, 51. *p.*

برادری *birâdari* brotherhood, caste-fellows, 34. *p.*

برس *baras* year, 164.

برندآ *barandâ* verandah, 150.

برا *barâ* great (in most of the English senses), 10, 51; is also used in the sense of 'very'; *barâ* old or elder (as noun), 68, 102, 187.

برھنا *barhnâ* to increase, grow, be extended, 122; *barhkar* more, 102.

بزرگ *buzurg* venerated, 60. *p.*

بس *bas* enough, hold! 'that's all,' 'and nothing else,' 51, 193. *p.*

بس *bas* power, 76.

بشرة *bashra* countenance, 198. *a.*

بعد *ba'd* after (post.), 44, 137. *a.*

بعض *ba'z* some (used as pl. of *ko'î*), 182. *a.*

بغیچہ *bagicha* garden, 76. *p.*

بغیر *bagair* without, 97. *a.*

بکری *bakri* she-goat, 76.

بکری *bikri* selling, 182.

بلا *balâ* misfortune, 114; *balâ kâ* awful or terrible, 60; *balâ se* bother it! 76, 198. *a.*

بلکہ *balki* but, nay more, rather, 197. *p.*

بندر *bandar* monkey, 176; *bandrî* she-monkey, 130.

بندوق *bandûq* gun, 68. *p.*

بند ہونا *band-honâ* to be shut, 114.

بنسبت *ba-nisbat* in comparison with, 60. *p.*

بنگالی *Bengâlî* 60.

بنگلا *banglâ* bungalow, 10.

بننا *bannâ* to be made, managed, etc. 164; *ban-ânâ* to make, 1st caus. of above, 102; *banâ-lenâ* to build or make for oneself, 84; *ban-parnâ* to be managed (somehow), 76.

بنی آدم *benî-âdam* mankind, 193. *a.*

بوجھ *bojh* weight, 137.

بورھا *bûrhâ* old, old man, 34.



بولنا *bolnâ* to speak, utter sounds, 68; *bol-úthnâ* to speak suddenly, ejaculate, 76, 187; *bulânâ* 1st caus., to call, 97.

بھاری *bhâri* heavy, 27.

بھاگنا *bhâgnâ* to flee, to scud (of clouds), 109; *bhâgtâ* runaway, 97.

بھائی *bhâi* brother, mate, 51.

بھار *bahâr* spring, 164. *p.*

بہت *bahut* very, much, 10.

بھتیجا *bhatijâ* nephew, 84.

بہتر *bhtar* better. *p.*

بہر حال *ba-har-hâl* in every case, on the whole, 91.

بھرننا *bharnâ* to fill; *bhur-denâ* int., 102.

بھسا *bhusâ* chaff (fodder), 102.

بھلا *bhalâ* well! 76, 187.

بھین *bahin* sister, 84.

بھتیان *bahû - betiyân* (younger women of a family), 137.

بھوج *Bhoj* name of an ancient Hindû monarch, 187.

بھوکھا *bhûkhâ* hungry, famished, 18.

بھی *bhi* also, even, too; *kuchh bhi* anything at all; *ko'i bhi* anyone at all.

بھیجنا *bhejnâ* to send, 84, 130; *bhijwânâ* or *bhijwâ-denâ* to cause to be sent, 76.

بھیر *bher* sheep; *bher bakri* sheep and goats, 76.

بے *be* without, 97; *be-tamîz* silly, indiscreet, 176; *bedil* out of heart, disheartened, 198. *p.*

بیان *bayân* description, 157; *b. karnâ* to describe, 68, 84, 164. *a.*

بی بی *bibi* lady, wife, 109. *p.*  
بیٹا *betâ* son, 76; *beti* daughter.

بیٹھنا *baithnâ* to sit; *bith-ânâ* to seat, 102; *baith-rahnâ* to remain seated, 150; *baithe-bithâe* at ease, coolly, without effort, etc., 109.

بیچ *bich* middle; *bich kâ* middle, 27; *bich men* in the middle (of what is going on), 187.

بیچوہا *bechobâ* kind of tent (poleless), 84. *p.*

بیدار *bedâr* awake, 143. *p.*

بیس *bis* twenty, 34.

بیگم *Begam* fem. of *Beg*, 198. *t.*

بیمار *bimâr* sick, a sick person, 97, 164; *bimârî* sickness, 114, 193. *p.*

## پ

پاس *pâs* by, near to, in possession of; *pâs hi* close by, 27.

پانا *pânâ* to find, obtain, acquire, 109, 150.

پانوں or پانوں or پانوں *pânôn* or *pâ'on* or *pânw* foot, 60.

پانی *pânî* water, rain, 10, 51; *pânî kâ pânî* really water, the real thing.

پاؤ *pâ'o* quarter, 114.

پتا *patâ* trace, address (of a letter), 10, 182.

پتاماری *pittā-māri* spleen-  
striking; *p. kā kām*  
troublesome work, 102.

پچاس *pachās* fifty, 18.

پر *par* on. See 50 (2).

پر *par* but.

پرور *parwā* care, anxiety,  
10. *p.*

پرورس *parwarish* cherishing,  
taking care of, 44. *p.*

پونا *parnā* to fall, befall,  
happen, lie, 51; *par-jānā*  
to be brought to bear, 157.

پڑھنا *parhnā* to read, 164.

پس *pas* so, 187.

پسند *pasand* pleasant; *p.*  
*ānū* to be agreeable, 44;  
*pasandīda* agreeable, 176.  
*p.*

پشت *pusht* generation  
(past), ancestry, 137. *p.*

پکرن *pakarnā* to seize, take,  
catch, etc., 91, 150; *pak-*  
*rā'i denā* to be caught or  
catchable, 91

پل *pul* bridge, 164.

پلنگ *palang* bed, 102.

پندرہواں *pandrawān* fif-  
teenth, 143.

پنکھا *pankhā* fan, 114.

پوتا *potā* grandson, 27.

پوچھنا *pūchhnā* to ask, make  
inquiry, 143; *pūchh-*  
*pūchhke* asking and ask-  
ing, 76.

پورا *pūrā* full, complet., 44.

پونی *paune* a quarter less,  
114.

پھٹکار *phitkār* curse, 102.

پھٹنا *phatnā* to be broken  
or burst, to open (as the

earth in an earthquake),  
109, 171.

پہچاننا *pahchānnā* to know,  
recognise, 68, 109.

پھر *phir* then, 91, 187.

پہر *pahar* eighth part of a  
day, equal to three hours,  
a watch, 114; *do pahar*  
noon, 60.

پہرا *pahrā* sentry, 157; *p.*  
*lagānā* to post a sentry.

پھرنا *phirnā* to wander about,  
traverse, 176.

پہلا *pahlā* first; *pahle* before  
(*se*), 193.

پہننا *pahnnā* wear (clothes),  
etc., 91, 137.

پھوٹنا *phūtnā* to be broken;  
*phūtā pānī* boiling water,  
102.

پہنچنا *pahūchnā* to arrive;  
*pahūch-jānā* int., 76.

پھیرنا *phernā* to return; *pher-*  
*denā* to give back, 187.

پھیلنا *phailnā* to spread,  
122.

پیار *pyār* love, affection, 176.

پیاس *pyās* thirst, 97.

پیٹنا *pītnā* to beat; *sir*  
*pītnā* to beat the head in  
token of grief, 143.

پچھہ *pichhe* behind, 97.

پیدا *paidā* produced, created,  
born, 10, 18. *p.*

پیدل *paidal* footman, on  
foot, 27, 143. *p.*

پیروی *pairawī* pursuit, prose-  
cution, 157. *p.*

پیش *pesh* before; *pesh-ānā*  
to treat, 60; *peshā* pro-  
fession, occupation, 137;  
*peshgī* advance (of mo-

ney), 51; *pešhî* presentment, 176. *p.*

پینا *pînâ* to drink; *pilânâ* to make drink, 130.

## ت

تا *tâ, tâki, ki tâ* that, in order that, etc. (See 155.) *p.*

تاریخ *târikh* date, 143, 176. *a.*  
تازه وارد *tâza-wârid* newly arrived, 18. *a. p.*

تاهم *tâham* yet, still, 197. *p.*  
تپاک *tapâk* zeal, warmth, 130. *p.*

تجهکو or تچهجه *tujhko* or *tujhe* objective form of *tû*.

تحصیلدار *tehsildâr* collector (native official), 187. *a.*

تحقیقات *tahqîqât* investigation, 187. *a.*

تذکره *tazkira* mention, 137. *a.*

ترغیب *targîb* temptation; *t. denâ* to induce, 157. *a.*

ترمیم *tarmîm* emendation; *t. karnâ* to correct, emend, etc., 91. *a.*

تشخیص *tashkhîs* diagnosis, 97. *a.*

تشریف *tashrif* honouring (by a visit), 91; *t. farmânâ, t. lânâ* to visit, 198; *t. lejânâ* to depart. *a.*

تصور *tasawwur* imagination; *t. karnâ* to imagine, suppose, 150. *a.*

تصویر *taswîr* picture, 68. *a.*

تعرض *ta'arruz* interference, 176. *a.*

تعریف *ta'rif* praise, definition, 34, 102. *a.*

تعطیل *ta'til* holiday, vacation, 44. *a.*

تعلیم *ta'lîm* education, 122; *ta'lîm - i - niswân* female education. *a.*

تعیّنات *ta'inât* Ar. pl., lit. appointments; *ta'inât k.* to tell off (for duty), to appoint, 84. *a.*

تکلف *takalluf* ceremony, trouble, 171. *a.*

تلاش *talâsh* search; *t. karnâ* to search for, 68. *p.*

تلفظ *talaffuz* pronunciation, 60. *a.*

تم *tum* you, pl.; *tumhârâ* your; *tumhen* you.

تماشا *tamâshâ* (taking amusement or recreation), a bit of fun, spectacle, 10. *a.*

تمیز *tamîz* discretion, discernment, 171. *a.*

تنباکو *tambâkû* tobacco, 18.

تندرست *tandurust* in good health, 150. *p.*

تنخواہ *tankhwâh* pay, 193. *p.*

تنگ *tang* tight, short (time), 10. *p.*

تو *tû* thou.

تو *to* illative particle, 9; *to-bhî* yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding.

توا *tawâ* griddle, 198.

توپ *top* gun; *top-dagî* gunfire, 114.

تورّا *thorâ* small, little, 51, 198.

تیرا *terâ* thy, thine.

تیزرفتار *tez-raftâr* swift, fleet, 60. *p.*

تیلی *telî* oilmat, 187.

تین *tin* three; *tinon* all three.

## ت

- تالا *tálá* rick, 143.  
 تکرہا *tukrá* piece, 130.  
 تھانا *tháná* police-station ;  
*tháne - wálá* policeman,  
 143.  
 تھیکیدار *thekedár* contractor,  
 51.

## ج

- جاگنا *jágná* to be awake, 97,  
 114, 193.  
 جامع مسجد *Jámi masjid*  
 congregational mosque,  
 the Chief Mosque (in  
 Dehli), 97. a.  
 جان *ján* life, 164. p.  
 جانا *jánú* to go; *já-chukná*  
 to have already gone, 76.  
 جانکنی *jánkani* death-agony,  
 the being at the point of  
 death, 114.  
 جانا *jánná* to know, 171 ;  
*ján-lená* do., 143.  
 جتنا *jitná* as many as, the  
 amount which, 135.  
 جدھر *jidhar* whither.  
 جزیرہ *jazíra* island, 187. a.  
 جست و جو *just o jú* search,  
 176. p.  
 جسر قدر equiv. to *jitná*.  
 جگہ *jagah* place, 60, 182.  
 جلاھا *juláhá* weaver, 34.  
 جلد *jild* volume (*lit.* parch-  
 ment), 182. a.  
 جمنا *Jamuná* or *Jamná*, 68.  
 جن *jinn* genius, demon, 97.  
 a.

- جو *jo* who, which, etc. 135 ;  
*jiská, jinká*, etc. inflect.  
 جواب *jawáb* answer, 76 ;  
*j. dená* to reply, 171. a.  
 جوان *jawán* young, vigorous,  
 97.  
 جوتنا *jotná* to yoke, 114.  
 جوکھم *jokhim* risk, 143.  
 جوگی *jogí* religious mendi-  
 cant, ascetic, etc. 97.  
 جولان گاہ *jaulán-gáh* riding-  
 school, 171. p.  
 جون *jon* or *jaun* as ; *jonhin*  
 precisely as ; *jon ká ton*  
 as before ; *jaun taun*  
 somehow. (See 149.)  
 جوھر *jauhar* jewel, excel-  
 lence, faculty, 176. a.  
 جھاڑنا *jhárná* to sweep, 150.  
 جہاز *jeház* ship, 91. a.  
 جہان *jehán* world, 60. p.  
 جہان *jehán* where ; *jehán-*  
*par* where to ; *jehán se*  
 whence.  
 جھگڑا *jhagrá* quarrelling,  
 sedition, mutiny, 102, 193.  
 جھلنا *jhalná* to swing, 114.  
 جھوٹہ *jhúth* lie, falsehood,  
 182.  
 جی *ji* soul, spirit, life,  
 energy, 97 ; *ji lagáná* to  
 apply the mind, 164.  
 جی *ji* (title of respect), Sir,  
 182.  
 جینا *jiná* to live, 164.  
 جیون *jjún* as (manner), 149.

## چ

- چادان *chádán* teapot, 102. p.  
 چار *chár* four.

ڏهاڻ چال *châl-dhâl* manners, behaviour, 44.

چاند *chând* moon, 109.

چاهنا *châhnâ* to wish, desire, love, 130; *hûâ châhnâ* to be about to happen.

چاهي *châhi* 'e see 90.

چراغ *chirâg* lamp, 109. *p.*

چرسا *charsâ* hide (of land), 84.

چريو *chiriyâ* bird, 60.

چرهنو *charhnâ* to ascend, 114, 137; *charh-baithnâ* to go up and sit, 102; *din-charhnâ* forenoon, 114; *sahm-charhnâ* (*par*) paucie to seize a person, 193.

چشم نمائي *chashm-numâi* reprimand (prop. by the look), 122. *p.*

چلنا *chalnâ* to move, go, etc.; *chalî'e*, *chalî'egâ* 91; *chalânâ* 1st caus. 198; *chaltâ* thriving, recurring; *chaltâ-phirtâ nazar ânâ* to be on the move, to be off, 193; *chal-denâ* to start, set off, etc., 91.

چنانچه *chunânchi*, accordingly, 130, 187. *p.*

چند *chand* some, some few, several, 44; *chandân* somewhat, 76. *p.*

چنده *chanda* levy, subscription, contribution, 137. *p.*

چور *chor* thief, 18; *chor-jahâz* pirate-ship, privateer, 91; *chor-darwâza* postern, back door, 157.

چوري *chorî* theft, 44; *chorî-honâ* to be stolen; *chorî-karnâ* to steal.

چوڪي *chauki* chair, 34.

چوڪيدار *chokidâr* watchman, 84.

چونڪ *chûnki* as, since, 157.

چونا *chaunk-parnâ* to start up from sleep, 157.

چهاپنا *chhâpnâ* to print; *chhapwânâ* to get printed, 182.

چھوٽا *chhotâ* small, 60.

چھوٽنا *chhûtnâ* to be loose, leave, be set free, be let go, 91, 150.

چھوڙنا *chhornâ* to set free, etc., 1st causal of above, 150, 171; *chhor* let alone, 68; *chhor-ânâ* to leave (and come away), 109.

چھيڙنا *chîrnâ* to split, 130.

چھيڙ *chîz* thing, 34. *p.*

ح

حاجت *hâjat* want, need, 137, 171. *a.*

حاصل *hâsil* resultant; *hâsil honâ* to be obtained, 176. *a.*

حاضر *hâzir* present, in waiting, ready, 4, 10, 60. *a.*

حال *hâl* state, condition, circumstances, present time, 187; *hâlat* do. do. status, 176; *hâlânki* al-beit, 176. *a.*

حسن *Hasan* prop. name, (Mahomedan), 198. *a.*

حضرت *hazrat* Excellency, religious title of saints, etc., 187. *a.*

حضور *huzûr* presence (of a superior), term of obsequious address, 27, 34; *âp ke huzûr*, 76. a.  
 حکم *hukm* order, command, 68, 182. a.  
 حکمت *hikmat* science, 171. a.  
 حکیم *hakim* physician, 68, 122. a.  
 حل *hall* solution; *h. karnâ* to solve, 171. a.  
 حوالہ *hawâla* reference; *hawâla denâ* to quote, or refer to, 193. a.  
 حیران *hairân* being in doubt, at a loss, perplexed, 143. a.

## خ

خاصکر *khâskar* especially, 102.  
 خاک *khâk* lit. dust, used idiomatically for *kuchh*, 10, 68. p.  
 خاطر *khâtir* heart; *meri khâtir* obliging me, 157; *khâtir-khwâh* suited to one's ideas, or tastes, 198. a.  
 خالی *khâlî* empty, 10; sometimes 'only,' 'barely,' 198. a.  
 خاموش *khâmosh* silent, 182. p.  
 خبر *khavar* news, intelligence, 114, 187; care, 193; *khâbardâr* take care! 34. a.  
 خدا *khudâ* God, 84; *khudâ kî qasam* By heaven! 34. p.  
 خدمت *khidmat* service, 102. a.

خرج *kharch* money for expenses; *kharch-honâ* to be expended; *kharch-karnâ* to expend, 34. p.  
 خصومت *khushûmat* enmity, 193. a.  
 خطا *khatt* letter, 76, 84; line (geom.), 102. a.  
 خطا *khatâ* offence, sin, crime, 91. a.  
 خطرہ *khatra* danger, 164. a.  
 خفا *khafâ* angry, 91. p.  
 خلاف *khilâf* contrary to, 60; *khilâf-ma'mûl* unusual, 137; *khilâf-qiyâs* inconceivable, 34, 137; *khilâf-adab* contrary to etiquette, 76. a.  
 خمیازہ *khamyâzah* retribution; *kh. khainchnâ* to suffer retribution, 137. p.  
 خواب *khwâb* dream; *kh. dekhnâ* to dream, 193. p.  
 خواجہ *khwâja* title of respect, like our Mr., 84, 198. p.  
 خواہ *khwâh* either . . . or, 193; *khwâh ma-khwâh* will he nill he, 176; *khwâhân* desiring, desirous of, 27; *khwâhish* desire, inclination, 187. p.  
 خوب *khûb* well, 68, 164. p.  
 خود *khûd* self (with all persons), 44, 150. p.  
 خوش *khûsh* pleased, 193; *khûsh-hâl* well off, comfortable, etc., 198. p.  
 خیال *khayâl* thought, imagination, 198. a.  
 خیر *khair* well! 18, 182. a.

## د

داخل *dâkhl* entering; *dâkhl honâ* to enter, be admitted, 60. *a.*  
 داغ *dâg* spot, blemish, 150. *a.*  
 دال *dâl* pulse, 18.  
 دام *dâm* price, 4.  
 دباؤ *dabâû* pressure, 157.  
 دبا *dabnâ* to be pressed down; *dabî zabân se* in subdued tones, gently, 102; *dabe pâ'on* with light tread, 109.  
 دخل *dakhl* entrance, power of interference, 109.  
 درباری *darbâri*, *darbâri kaprâ* full dress, 91. *p.*  
 درپیش *darpesh* on the tapis; in prospect, ready for presentation, etc., 34. *p.*  
 درجہ *darja* degree, 193. *a.*  
 درگا *Durgâ* prop. name (Hindû).  
 دروازہ *darwâza* door, 150. *p.*  
 دریا *daryâ* river, sea, 109, 157. *a.*  
 دریافت *daryâft* finding out; *d. karnâ* to find out, 76. *p.*  
 دریغ *dareg* reluctance; *dareg k.* to grudge, 157. *p.*  
 دس *das* ten.  
 دستخط *dast-khatt* signature (*dast hand*), 109. *p.*  
 دسہرا *Dasehrâ* a festival held on the 10th Jaith, 44.  
 دسواں *daswân* tenth, 44.  
 دشمن *dushman* enemy. *p.*  
 For peculiar use, see 199 (7).

دشوار *dushwâr* difficult; *chandân d. nahîn* not so very difficult, 76. *p.*  
 دعا *du'â* prayer, salutation, 114. *a.*  
 دعوت *da'wat* feast, entertainment; invitation, 34, 171. *a.*  
 دکھانا *dikhânâ* (1st caus. of *dekhnâ*) to show; *dikhâ'i denâ* to be visible, 91.  
 دلیل *dalil* proof, 164. *a.*  
 دم *dam* breath, time; *dam nâk men ânâ* (breath coming into nose), gasping for breath; *marîe dam* at time of death, 114. *p.*  
 دن *din* day, 44; *din-bhar* all day, 109; *â'e din* every day, 102.  
 دنیا *dunyâ* world, 102. *a.*  
 دو *do* two; *donon* the two, both, 18; *do pahar* noon.  
 دوا *dawâ* medicine, 18, 114. *a.*  
 دودھ *dûdh* milk, 44, 176.  
 دور *dûr* distance, or distant, 4; *barî dûr se* a long way off, 91; *dûr-bîn* telescope, 176. *p.*  
 دوسرا *dûsrâ* second, other, 10, 91.  
 دولتی *dû-lattî* kicking with both heels (of a horse), 198.  
 دہلی or دلی *Dehli* or *Dilli*.  
 دیدار *didâr* sight (of person), 60, 182. *p.*  
 دیر *der* or *derî* delay, 51. *p.*

دیسى *desi* belonging to country, 18; country-bred, 87.

دیکھنا *dekhnâ* to see, to look for, 68, 182; *dekhâ-dekhi* imitation, following example of, 130.

دین *din* religion, 137. *p.*

دینا *denâ* to give.

### ڈ

ڈاکا *dākâ* dacoity, 187.

ڈاک گھر *dāk-ghar* post-office, 4; *dāk-banglâ* *dāk-bungallow*, 27.

ڈالنا *dâlnâ* to throw, cast; *dâl-denâ* to cast (into), 109.

ڈبنا *dubnâ* sinking, descending, 114; *din dubnâ* afternoon.

ڈرنا *darnâ* to fear, 109, 143.

ڈوبنا *dûbnâ* to sink; *dûb-marnâ* to be drowned, 157.

ڈولی *dûli* litter, 51.

ڈھائی *dhâ'i* two and a half, 51; *dhâ'i sau* two hundred and fifty.

ڈھنگ *dhang* fashion, manner of life, 68.

ڈھول *dhol* drum, 193; *dh. bajânâ* to beat a drum.

ڈھونڈنا *dhûndhnâ* to seek, search for, 68, 193.

ڈیرہ *derh* one and a half, 10; *derh baje* half-past one; *derh sau* a hundred and fifty.

### ذ

ذره *zarra* just a little, 76, 91. *a.*

ذریعہ *zari'a* means; *zarî'a se* by means of, 176. *a.*

ذکر *zikr* mention, 182. *a.*

ذمہ *zimma* charge, responsibility; *merâ zimma* 'I warrant it.' 164. *a.*

### ر

رات *rât* night; *rât ko* at night, 51.

راجا *râjâ* Hindû title, head of Kshatri caste, 187.

راز *râz* secret, mystery, 76. *p.*

راضی *râzi* satisfied, contented, 97, 193. *a.*

رائی *râinî* fem. form of *rânâ*, a Rajput title ranking above Râjâ, 114.

راہ *râh* road, way, 143; *râh-chaltâ* wayfarer, 97. *p.*

رخصت *rukhsat* leave; *r. honâ* to take leave, 76; *r. karnâ* to dismiss, 44; *r. lenâ* to take leave (of absence), 84. *a.*

راستہ or راسته *rasta* or *râsta* road, way, 76. *p.*

رسی *rassi* rope, 97.

رشتہ ناتا *rishta-nâtâ* kinship, 60. *p.h.*

رکھنا *rakhnâ* to put, place, hold, 102; *rakh-lenâ* to keep for one's own, 187.

رواج *ricâj* customary, 137. *a.*

روانہ *rawâna* started, despatched, 18. *p.*



- رو بکار *rūbakār* proceedings (written official), 68.  
 روپہ *rūpaya* money, 10; a rupee.  
 روٹی *rotī* bread (leavened or unleavened), 10.  
 روز *roz* day; *roz roz* daily, 44, 102. *p.*  
 رومی *Rūmī* inhabitant of Rūm, the Sultan of Turkey, 193.  
 رونا *ronā* to weep, 109.  
 رہائی *rihā'i* release, 187. *p.*  
 رہنا *rahnā* to remain, dwell, stay, abide; *rah-jānā* to be left over, or behind, int. 51.  
 رہنمائی *rah-numā'i* showing the way, guidance, 84. *p.*  
 رئیس *ra'is* chief, 198. *a.*  
 ریل *rel* railway or railway train, 27, 44. *e.*

## ز

- زخم *zākhm* wound, 51. *p.*  
 زبان *zabān* language; *ba-zabān-i-hāl* 'in such language as an animal has,' 176; *zabānī* by word of mouth, used as a prep. or post., 34. *p.*  
 زر *zar* money; *zar-kharīd* purchase-money, 76. *p.*  
 زمانہ *zamāna* time, fortune, 60. *p.*  
 زمین *zamīn* earth, land, 34; *zamīndār* landowner. *p.*  
 زنجیر *zanjīr* chain, 60. *p.*  
 زنبار *zinhār* beware! 76. *p.*  
 زین *zīn* saddle, 68. *p.*

## س

- ساتھ *sāth* companionship, 27; *sāthī* companion, 157; *sāth* postp. with, 60; *sāth-denā* to accompany, 91.  
 ساٹھ *sāth* sixty, 143.  
 سارا *sārā* all, the whole, 84.  
 ساڑھے *sārhe* a half more, 114.  
 سال *sāl* year; *sālhā-sāl* year after year, for years, 176. *p.*  
 سائیس *sā'is* syee, groom, 34. *a.*  
 سائل *sā'il* questioner, petitioner, 182. *a.*  
 سب *sab* all, every, 18; *sab ke sab* the whole lot, 27; *sabhon* pl. of totality, 176.  
 سبب *sabab* cause, 68; as a postp. 76. *a.*  
 سبق *sabaq* lesson, 44. *a.*  
 سپاہی *sipāhī* or *s'pāhī* sepoy, soldier, policeman, 18. *p.*  
 ستانا *sitānā* to worry, oppress, bully, 198.  
 ستاون *sattāwan* fifty-seven, 68.  
 ستائیس *sattā'is* twenty-seven, 68.  
 سخت *sakht* very, 122. *p.*  
 سر *sir* head, 193; *sir (par) honā* to annoy, 97.  
 سر *sar* head; *sardār* chief, head servant or 'bearer,' 143; *sarkār* government; *sar-guzasht* adventures, 84, 164. *p.*  
 سرا *sirā* end, extremity, 122.  
 سرای *sarā'e* 'serai,' inn, 60. *p.*  
 سریشٹہ *sarishta* office, 27;

- sarishta-dâr* head of office (native), 34, 60. *p.*  
 سڑك *sarak* road, 27, 44.  
 سستا *sastâ* cheap, 18.  
 سفر *safar* journey; *safar k.* to journey, to travel, 157. *a.*  
 سليقہ *salîqa* taste, breeding, manners, 27. *a.*  
 ساما *samânû* to be swallowed up (*lit.* to be contained in), 171.  
 سمجھ *samajh* thinking, 150; *samajhnâ*, to understand, think, 84, 193; *samajhlenâ* do.; *samjhnâ*, 1st caus., to explain; *samjhâlenâ*, do., do.  
 سنا *sunnâ* to hear, 97; *sunâ'î denâ* to be audible, 91.  
 سند *sanad* authority, 27. *a.*  
 سنہ or سن *san* year, 68. *a.*  
 سو *sau* hundred, 10.  
 سوا *sawâ* quarter more, 114; *sawâ-sau* one hundred and twenty-five.  
 سوا or سواى *siwâ* or *siwâe* besides, except, 150.  
 سوال *sû'âl* question, problem, 171, 182. *a.*  
 سوچنا *sochnâ* to think, 187.  
 سورج گہن *sûraj-gahan* eclipse of the sun, 143.  
 سونا *sonâ* to sleep; *sotâ* sleeping, sleep, 97; *sone-wâlâ*, 60.  
 سویرے *savere* early, 114.  
 سہاگ *sohâgâ* borax, 18.  
 سہم *sahm* panic, 193. *a.*  
 سہوا *sahvan* inadvertently, 164. *a.*  
 سہی *sahî*; for the idiomatic

- sense of this particle, see 150 (*bis*), 176, 182.  
 سیاہی *siyâhî* ink, 68. *p.*  
 سید *Sayyid* appellative of the Prophet's descendants, 60. *a.*  
 سیر *ser* a weight (about 2 lbs. av.), 44.  
 سیکڑوں *saikron* hundreds, 122; *P. sadhâ*, plural of totality.  
 سیکھنا *sikhnâ* to learn, 164.  
 سینا *sinâ* to sew, sewing, 102.  
 شادی *shâdî* marriage, wedding, 34. *p.*

## ش

- شاعر *shâ'ir* poet, 60. *a.*  
 شام *shâm* evening, 114.  
 شاہ *shâh* king. *p.*  
 شاہ روس *Shâh-Rûss* the Czar, King of Russia, 193.  
 شاید *shâyad* perhaps, 97. *p.*  
 شبازوی *shabârozî* of night and day, 164.  
 شخص *shakhs* person, fellow, individual, 10. *p.*  
 شرارت *sharârat* wickedness, 114. *a.*  
 شرط *shart* condition, bet, 44. *a.*  
 شرم *sharm* shame, 68. *p.*  
 شروع *shurû'* beginning; *shurû'-honâ* to begin, 44; *sh. karnâ* to begin, trans. *a.*  
 شریر *sharîr* wicked, 122. *a.*  
 شریک *sharik* sharing, partner, 18. *a.*  
 شطیر *shatîr* a beam, 130. *a.*  
 شفعاخانہ *shifâ-khâna* dispensary, 60. *a.p.*

شکرگزار *shukr-guzâr* thankful, grateful, 27. *p.*  
 شهر *shahr* city, 114, 193. *p.*  
 شی *shai* thing, 51. *a.*  
 شیر *sher* lion or tiger, 143. *p.*

## ص

صاحب *sâhib* lord, master, appellative of Englishmen in India, 34; *sâhibân* or *sâhib log*, pl. *a.*  
 صاف *sâf* clean, 68. *a.*  
 صحن *sahn* courtyard, 76. *a.*  
 صحیح *sahîh* correct, 84. *a.*  
 صراف *sarrâf* money-changer, 198. *a.*  
 صرف *sirf* only, 164. *a.*  
 صرف *sarf* expenditure, *sarf-i-zar* do., 182. *a.*  
 صفت *sifat* quality, attribute (tech. adjective), 84. *a.*  
 صلاح *salâh* what is right, good advice, counsel, etc., 187. *a.*  
 صوبہ *sûbah* province; *sûbajât* Pers. pl. 18. *a.*  
 صورت *sûrat*, appearance, good looks, 97. *a.*  
 صیغہ *sîga* form, tense-form, 157; *sîga-i-mâzi* past tense. *a.*

## ض

ضابطہ *zâbita* rule, regulation, 34. *a.*  
 ضد *zidd* opposition, vexatious conduct, 176. *a.*  
 ضرور *zarûr*, necessary, necessarily, 34, etc. *a.*  
 ضلع *zila* district, side, 51. *a.*

## ط

طالب علم *tâlib-'ilm* seeker of knowledge, student, 34. *a.*  
 طبابت *tibâbat* the profession of medicine, 76. *a.*  
 طرح *tarah* manner, way, etc., 76. *a.*  
 طرف *taraf* direction, side, 150; *taraf-dâri* siding with, 157. *a.*  
 طریقہ *tarîqa* plan, method, way, 44. *a.*  
 طور *taur* manner; *bataur* (*ke*) in the shape of, like, 150. *a.*  
 تیار sometimes written تیار ready, 4, 164. *a.*

## ظ

ظالم *zâlim* tyrant, 109. *a.*

## ع

عالم *'alam* world, 176. *a.*  
 عبارت *'ebârat* style, diction, written text, 164. *a.*  
 عتاب *'etâb* reproof, reprimand, 34. *a.*  
 عجب *'ajb* wonder, 164; *ajb k.*, to wonder. *a.*  
 عربی *Arabî* the Arabic language, Arabic, 18. *a.*  
 عزت *'izzat* honour; *'izzat-dâr* honourable, held in respect, 27. *a.*  
 عزیز *'azîz* (from same root as above) dear, a friend or intimate, 157; *'azîz rah'nâ* to hold dear, to value, 193. *a.*

عط *'atû* gift; *'atû karnâ* to bestow, 171. *a.*

عقل *'aql* common sense, intelligence, wisdom, 84. *a.*

عكس *'aks* reflection (optical), 68. *a.*

علاج *'elij* cure, 76. *a.*

علالت *'alâlat* indisposition, 76. *a.*

علامت *'alâmat* mark, sign, denotation, 157. *a.*

علم *'ilm* knowledge, 176. *a.*

عمده *'umda* excellent, 176. *a.*

عمر *'umr* life, age, 164. *a.*

عمل *'amal* action, practice; *'amal k. (par)* to act upon, 164. *a.*

عنایت *'enâyat* favour, kindness; *'en. karnâ* or *farmânâ* to grant, 143, 187; *'en. honâ* to be granted; *'en. nâma* a letter, 51. *a.*

عورت *'aurat* woman, 76. *a.*

عیب *'aib* defect (in mind or body), wrong, 198. *a.*

عين *'ain* (lit. eye) 198. *a.*

### غ

غافل *gâfil* forgetful; *gâfil sonâ* to sleep sound, 109. *a.*

غانم *Gânim* name of a worthy in the Alf Laila, 164.

غدر *gadr* mutiny, 68. *a.*

غریب *garîb* poor, pauper, 193; *garîb-khâna* humble abode (used by an inferior in mentioning his house or home), 91. *a.*

غمص *gussa* anger; *gusse* angry, 51. *a.*

غضب *gazaḥ* misfortune, something awful or calamitous, 27, 130. *a.*

غل *gul* uproar, noise, 143. *a.*

غلام *golâm* slave, used by an inferior instead of 1st pers. 27, 44. *a.*

غلط *galat* wrong, 137. *a.*

غول کمرآ *gol-kamarâ* drawing-room, 102. *a.*

غیرت *gairat* sense of shame, 150. *p.*

### ف

فارسی *Fârsî* Persian, the Persian language, 18. *p.*

فاعل *fâ'il* agent (gr.), 157. *a.*

فالتو *fâltû* extra, spare, 18.

فائده *fâ'ida* profit, advantage, 27, 176. *a.*

فتیگره *Fatehgarh* (lit. Victory-Fort) 84.

فجر *fajr* early morning, 114. *a.*

فدا *fidâ* devoted (*par*) 176. *a.*

فدوی *fidwî* (same root as above), devoted (used by an inferior in speaking of self, like *golâm*, *kamtarîn* etc.), 91. *a.*

فاراموشکاری *farâmosh-kârî* forgetfulness, omitting to mention, 44. *p.*

فرش *farsh* carpeting, 34, 102. *a.*

فرصت *fursat* leisure, 44. *a.*

فرق *farq* difference, 34, 51; dissension, 137. *a.*

فریب *fareb* deceit, 143. *a.*

فساد *fasâd* disturbance, rebellion, tumult, etc., 27. *a.*

- فصل *fasl* season, 164. *a.*  
 فضول *fuzûl* excessive; *fuzûl-kharchi* extravagance, 27. *a.*  
 فعل *fe'l* deed, act (gram. *a* verb), 34. *a.*  
 فقير *faqîr* beggar, 97. *a.*  
 فهرست *fehrist* list, 198. *p.*  
 فی الفور *filfaur* instantly, 137. *a.*  
 فیصله *faisala* decision (law); *f. honâ* to be decided, 176. *a.*

## ق

- قابل *qâbil* worthy, deserving, 34, 137. *a.*  
 قبل *qabl* before, 150. *a.*  
 قبر *qabr* tomb, 150. *a.*  
 قدر *qadr* worth, quantity, value, consideration, 27, 122, 137. *a.*  
 قدم *qadam* step; *qadam rakhnâ* to step, 193. *a.*  
 قريب *qarîb* near, nearly, 122, 150. *a.*  
 قصد *qasd* intention, 114. *a.*  
 قصور *qusûr* fault, 164. *a.*  
 قضا *qazâ* that which is allotted, death; *qazâ karnâ* to die, 150, 187. *a.*  
 قزازق *qazzâq* marauder (Cos-sack); *qazzâqi* marauding, 137. *a.*  
 قلم *qalam* reed-pen, 68. *a.*  
 قیافه *qiyâfa* physiognomy, 143. *a.*

## ک

- کا *kâ* sign of *izâfat*.  
 کاتنا *kâtnâ* to cut; *bât kâtnâ*

- to contradict, interrupt, 187.  
 کار *kâr* work; *kârî* effective, fatal, 51; *kârâmad* useful, 18; *kâr-rawâ'i* business procedure, 34; *kâr-guzârî* performance of work or duty, 193. *p.*  
 کارتوس *kârtûs* corr. cartridge, 193. *e.*  
 کاش *kâsh* or *kâshki* optative particle, 164, 171. *p.*  
 کاغذ *kâgaz* paper, 68. *p.*  
 کافی *kâfi* sufficient, 157. *a.*  
 کالا *kâlâ* black, 27.  
 کام *kâm* work, 27; use, 187.  
 کان *kân* ear, 68.  
 کائنات *kâ'inât* possessions, 44. *a.*  
 کب *kab* when, or *-kis-waqt*; *kab kâ* or *kabhî kâ* long ago, some time ago, 76; *kabhî nahîn* never, 10.  
 کپّا *kuppâ* leathern vessel for holding oil, ghee, etc. 122.  
 کپاس *kapâs* cotton-plant, 10, 18.  
 کپتان *kaptân* capitano, captain, 60.  
 کتا *kuttâ* dog, 198.  
 کتاب *kitâb* book, 18, 84, 91; Arab. pl. *kutub. a.*  
 کتنا *kitnâ* how much, how many?  
 کچه *kuchh* anything, something; *kuchh kuchh* some little; *kuchh na kuchh* something or other; *aur kuchh* or *kuchh aur* some more.  
 کرایه دار *kirâya-dâr* tenant (rent-payer), 122. *p.*

- کرنا *karná* to do, make, etc.; *karke* (P.C.P. of *karná*), 68, 198; *karáná* (1st caus.), 109; *kar-rakhná* to do a thing and keep it done, 84; *apná kar-lená* to make one's own, 84.
- کروت *karwat* lying on one side; *k. badalná* to change to the other side in lying, 114.
- کسر *kasr* fraction, 102; *chaltí kasr* recurring decimal. *a.*
- کل *kal* to-morrow or yesterday.
- کل *kal* machine, 10.
- کل *kull* all, the whole, 44, 109. *a.*
- کمبخت *kambakht* wretch, wretched (*lit.* little-fortunate), 114. *p.*
- کمترین *kamtarín* (*lit.* least) term used by inferiors in speaking of self, 84. *p.*
- کمی *kamí* reduction, 198. *p.*
- کمیت *kumet* bay (horse), 60. *p.*
- کنوان or کوان or کوا *kunwán* or *kuwán* or *kúá* a well.
- کو *ko* sign of object (near or remote).
- کوتھا *kothá* house-top, 102.
- کوچ *kúch* march, 114. *p.*
- کون *kaun* who, what? *kaun-sá* what-like, what? (asks for a description, either of persons or things).
- کوئی *ko'í* anyone, someone; *ko'í sau* etc. some hundred etc.; *ko'í ko'í* some few; *ko'í na ko'í* some one or other, 198.
- کہا *kahá* (verb. noun), order, 97, 171.
- کھار *kahár* appellative of the bearer or carrier class, 18.
- کھار *khár* alkali, potash, 18.
- کھان *kahán* where?
- کھانا *kháná* food, a meal, dinner; (as a verb), to eat; *khá-jáná* to eat up.
- کھردری *khurdarí* rough (of surface), 27.
- کھڑا *khará* erect, standing, 34, 68.
- کھلانا *kahláná* to be called, 182.
- کہنا *kahná* to say, speak, 84; *kah-dená*, intens.
- کھودنا *khodná* to dig, examine closely, 157.
- کھولنا *khohná* to open, 122.
- کھیت *khet* field, 137.
- کہیں *kahín* somewhere; *ka-hín nahín* nowhere; *ka-hín na kahín* somewhere or other, 10.
- کی *kí* or کے *ke* sign of *izáfat*.
- کی *kai* how many?
- کیا *kyá* what? *kyá . . . kyá* whether . . . or?
- کیسا *kaisá* what-like? of what sort or kind? how or what (with adjective of quality)? in what state?
- کیوں *kyún* why? *kyúnkar* how? *kyúnki* because.

## ک

- گاری *gâri* carriage, 150.  
 گانوں or کانون or گانو *gânon* or *gâ'on* or *gânw* village; *gâon-wâlâ* villager, 76.  
 گزاره *guzâra* living, subsistence, 187. *p.*  
 گذرنا *guzarnâ* to pass, 109; *guzar-jânâ* to pass away, 114.  
 گرامی *grâmî* villager, thatcher, 143.  
 گرد *gird* around, 182. *p.*  
 گرفتار *giriftâr* caught, apprehended, taken prisoner, 18. *p.*  
 گرنا *girnâ* to fall; *gir-parnâ* to fall down, 97.  
 گزجانا *gar-jânâ* to be rooted, 150.  
 گز *gaz* yard measure, 97. *p.*  
 گسائین *gosâ'in* saint, holy man, 97.  
 گستاخ *gustâkh* insolent, impertinent, 122. *p.*  
 گفتار *guftâr* speech, 182. *p.*  
 گلا *galâ* neck, 122; *gale milnâ* to embrace.  
 گنبد *gumbaz* dome, 150. *p.*  
 گنگا *gangâ* proper name, the Ganges, 68.  
 گننا *ginnâ* to count, 143, 193.  
 گو or گوک *go* or *goki* although, 176. *p.*  
 گودام *godâm* 'godown,' warehouse, store-room, 102.  
 گوشه نشین *gosha-nishîn* a recluse, 68. *p.*  
 گویا *goyâ* so to say, 102, 157, 158. *p.*

- گویائی *goyâ'i* speech, 176. *p.*  
 گھبراننا *ghabrânâ* to be in alarm, 91.  
 گھر *ghar* home, house, 76; *ghar-wâlê* members of family.  
 گھڑی *gharî* a period of time equal to one sixty-fourth part of natural day; the eighth part of a *pahar*; a watch or clock, 114, 187.  
 گھسنا *ghusnâ* to rush in, 143.  
 گھنٹا *ghantâ* gong, hour, 114.  
 گھوڑا *ghorâ* horse; *ghorî* mare, 27.  
 گھومنا *ghûmnâ* to go round, 182.  
 گھی *ghî* 'ghee,' clarified butter, 18.

## ل

- لا *lâ* (privative); *lâ-hâsil* without success, 176; *lâ-kalâm* unquestionable, 157. *a.*  
 لازم *lâzim* intransitive (gr.), 157. *a.*  
 لانا *lânâ* to bring; *tashrif lânâ* to honour with a visit, 68.  
 لائق *lâ'iq* capable, suitable, worthy, 198. *a.*  
 لحاظ *lihâz* modesty, consideration (for others), respect, observance, etc. 84. *a.*  
 لڑائی *larâ'i* quarrel, fighting, battle, 102, 193.  
 لڑتا *lartâ* (from *larnâ*) combatant, 97.

لڑکا *larká* boy, son, child, 18; *larkí* girl, 10; *larakpan* childhood, 60.

لطف *lutj* zest, enjoyment, 130. *a.*

لغات *logat* vocabulary, 91. *a.*

لفظ *lafz* word, 34. *a.*

لکھنا *likhná* to write, to translate, 84.

لگام *lagám* bridle, 68.

لگنا *lagná* to be set, be fixed, fit, etc.; *burá lagná* to come amiss, 51. *p.*

لالچانا *lalacháná* to long for, covet, 97.

لورنڈی *laundi* slave-girl, 109.

لوہا *lohá* iron, 60.

لہر *lahar* idea, 143. *a.*

لیاقت *liyáqat* the being qualified, suitability, capability, merit, etc. 137. *a.*

لیکن *lekin* but, 197. *p.*

لینا *lená* to take, buy, 84; *le-jáná* to take away, 68; *le-lená* to keep in one's own hands, 130; *lî'e* postp., for sake of, on account of.

م

مادیان *mádyán* mare, 60. *p.*

مارنا *márná* to strike, beat, slay, etc. 122; *márá-phirná* to wander or knock about, 182; *máre* postp., on account of, 150.

مال *mál* wealth, 51; *mál o daulat* wealth and riches, 27. *a.*

مالک *málik* proprietor, 182. *a.*

مالی *máli* financial (relating to revenue), 109. *a.*

مان *mán* mother; *mán-báp* or *má-báp* parents, 18, 44.

مانا *máná* granted, 176.

مانده *mánda* tired, 18. *p.*

مانگنا *mángná* to ask for, 198; *máng-láná* to ask for and bring, 91.

مانند *mánind*, postp., like, 27. *p.*

ماه *máh* month, 143; *máh-wári* monthly, month by month, 122. *p.*

مباحثہ *mubáhasa* discussion, 114. *a.*

مبتلا *mubtalá* involved in, 91. *a.*

مبہم *mubram* urgent, irresistible, 187. *a.*

مت *mat* prohibitive particle, 198.

متبنی *mutabanna* adopted son, 130. *a.*

متصور *mutasarwar* supposed, imagined, 137. *a.*

متلانا *matláná* or *jî ká matláná* to feel nausea, 187.

متواتر *mutawátir* consecutively, 130. *a.*

متوسط الحال *mutawassit ul hál* in middling circumstances, 198. *a.*

متوفی *mutawofá* deceased, the deceased, 157. *a.*

مٹھور *mathor* earthen jar, 102.

مثال *misál* proverb, aphorism, similitude, 164. *a.*

مثلث *musallas* triangle, 51, 102.

مجبور *majbúr* forced, 84. *a.*

مجھکو or مجھ *mujhko* or *mujhe* obj. form of *main*.



مچھلی *machhlî* fish, 51.  
 محاصرة *mohâsara* siege, 132. *a.*  
 محاوره *mohâwara* idiom, dialect, fashion of speech; *bâ-mohâwara* idiomatic, 34; *be-mohâwara* unidiomatic. *a.*  
 محبت *mahabbat* affection, 176. *a.*  
 محتاج *mohtâj* poor, 171. *a.*  
 محتمم *mohtamim* editor, 122. *a.*  
 محروم *mahrûm* deprived of, 60. *a.*  
 مختصر *mukhtasar* abridged, shortened; *m. karnâ* to abridge, abbreviate, 68. *a.*  
 مدت *muddat* long period of time, 156. *a.*  
 مدد *madad* help, 171; *madad-gâr* helper. *a.*  
 مربع *murabba'* square, 51. *a.*  
 مرتكب *murtakib* guilty, sin-committing, 34. *a.*  
 مرد *mard* man, 137. *p.*  
 مرض *marz* disease, 97. *a.*  
 مرضی *marzî* pleasure, 60. *a.*  
 مرنا *marnâ* to die, 97; death, 157.  
 مریض *marîz* sick man, patient, 97. *a.*  
 مزاج *mizâj* temperament, state of health, temper, 4. *a.*  
 مسافر *musâfir* traveller, 60. *a.*  
 مستعار *musta'âr* borrowed; *musta'âr lenâ* to borrow, 84. *a.*  
 مستقیم *mustaqîm* straight, 102. *a.*  
 مسلمان *musalmân* Moslem, Mahomedan, 60, 193. *a.*

مسوده *musawwada* rough draft, M.S. 91. *a.*  
 مشتاق *mushtâq* desirous, 34. *a.*  
 مشکل *mushkil* difficult, 182, may be used as a noun. *a.*  
 مشهور *mashhûr* known, published, 114. *a.*  
 مصارف *masârif* (pl. of *masraf*) expenses, 198. *a.*  
 مصلحت *maslahat* expedient, expediency, 51. *a.*  
 مصیبت *musibat* misfortune, 44. *a.*  
 مطابق *mutâbiq* according to; *mutâbiq-asl* exact copy (*lit.* according to original), 34. *a.*  
 مطبع *matba'* press, 182. *a.*  
 مطلق *mutlaq* or *mutlaqan* quite, 91. *a.*  
 معاف *mo'âf* forgiven; *m. farmânâ* to forgive, 164. *a.*  
 معامله *mo'âmala* affair, business matter, 76. *a.*  
 معاینه *mo'âyana* inspection; *m. farmânâ* to inspect, 171. *a.*  
 معلم *mo'allim* preceptor, teacher, 109. *a.*  
 معلوم *ma'lûm* known, 4. *a.*  
 معنی *ma'nî* meaning, 182. *a.*  
 مفت *muft* gratis, 51.  
 مقابل *muqâbala* comparison, opposition, 198; *ba-muqâbala* in comparison with. *a.*  
 مقدمه *muqaddama* case (in law), 84, 176. *a.*  
 مقرر *muqarrar* appointed, fixed, settled, 34; *muqarrara*, fem. of above, 176. *a.*  
 مکان *makân* place, abode,

house (of a better sort),  
4, 84. *a.*

مگر *magar* but, 197. *p.*

مگرا *magrá* cross, sullen,  
peevish, etc. 4.

ملاحظه *muláhaza* considera-  
tion of, inspection, 137. *a.*

ملاقات *muláqât* visit, inter-  
view; *m. karnâ* to pay  
a visit, interview, etc., 34,  
68. *a.*

ملتوی *multawí* deferred,  
postponed, adjourned; *m.*  
*kar-rakhnâ* to adjourn,  
84. *a.*

ملکی *mulki* (relating to  
country), civil, 109. *a.*

ملنا *milná* to receive, intr.  
to meet, combine, be like,  
correspond, etc. 51; *jâ-*  
*milná* to fall into (of a  
river), 68; *milkar* (P.C.P.  
of *milná*) united, summed  
up, in combination, 68.

ملول *malúl* grieved, discon-  
tented, 176. *a.*

ممکن *mumkin* possible, 143,  
176. *a.*

منار *manâr* minaret (Ar.  
noun of place), 97. *a.*

مناسب *munásib* befitting,  
187. *a.*

منتظر *muntazir* expecting,  
143. *a.*

منصرم *munsarim* manager,  
143. *a.*

منظور *manzúr* agreeable,  
approved, 150. *a.*

منه or منه or منہ mouth,  
face, 60, 68, 187.

موجود *maujúd* available, in

hand, ready, in existence,  
10, 198. *a.*

مولوی *maulaví* Moslem title  
of learning, 187. *a.*

مہاراجا *mahárájá* chief Rájá.  
198.

مہربانی *mehrbáni* kindness,  
favour, 27. *p.*

مہلت *mohlat* delay, respite,  
grace, 143. *a.*

مہمان *mehmân* guest, 51. *p.*

مہیا *mohaiyá* provided, 18. *a.*

مہینا *mahiná* month.

میان جی *miyân jî* title of  
teacher, 91. *p.*

میخ *mekh* tent-peg, 109. *p.*

میز *mez* table, 34. *p.*

میسر *muyassar* obtained,  
176, 182. *a.*

مین *main* I; *merâ* my, mine.

مین *men* post. affix locative,  
in, into, among, between,  
etc.

مینہدی *menhdí* henna, 102.

## ن

نا *nâ* (privative); *nâ-insûfi*  
injustice, 27; *nâ-tamâm*  
unfinished, 44; *nâ-haqq*  
unfairly, 109; *nâ-guwâr*  
displeasing, disgusting,  
122. *p.*

ناپنا *nâpnâ* to measure, 97.

نادانی *nâdâni* ignorance, 34.  
*p.*

نادر *nâdir* rare, 176. *a.*

نالا *nâlâ* ravine, 'nullah,'  
157.

نالش *nâlish* complaint,  
plaint; *nâlish karnâ* to

lodge a complaint, file a suit, etc. 84, 157. *p.*  
 نام *nâm* name; *nâm-lenâ* to mention a person's name, 91, 198.  
 نبض *nabz* pulse; *nabz dekh-nâ* to feel the pulse; *nabz dikhânâ* to let the pulse be felt, 130. *a.*  
 نجات *najât* salvation; *najât-pânâ* to escape, 157. *a.*  
 ندى *nadi* river, 68.  
 نسبت *nisbat* proportion, relation, 137. *a.*  
 نسخه *nuskha* MS. 84. *a.*  
 نسوان *niswân* or نسا *nisâ* women, female sex (Ar. pl.) 122. *a.*  
 نصرانی *nasrânî* Nazarene, Christian, 193. *a.*  
 نصیب *nasîb* pl., destinies, fate, fortune, 143. *a.*  
 نصیحت *nasîhat* advice, admonition, 91, 164. *a.*  
 نظر آنا *nazar ânâ* to appear, 164; *nazar parnâ* to appear casually or unexpectedly, 97.  
 نظیر *nazîr* exemplar; *be-nazîr* unrivalled, 171. *a.*  
 نکالنا *nikâl-nâ* to turn out, take out, drive out, etc. 1st caus. of *nikal-nâ*, 76, 193.  
 نکلنا *nikal-nâ* to issue, come out, turn out, turn up, etc. 51, 198.  
 نمک *namak* salt, 18, 137. *p.*  
 نو *nau* nine, 68.  
 نواب *Nawwâb* (Nabob) viceroy (Mahomedan title), 34. *a.*  
 نوکر *naukar* servant, 10 *nau-*

*karî* service (esp. under Government), 176. *p.*  
 نہایت *nehâyat* very, exceedingly, 198. *a.*  
 نہیں *nihîn* or نہ *na no*, not; *nahîn* to else, 193.  
 نیا *nayâ* new, 51, 68.  
 نیل *nîl* indigo, 18.  
 نیم *nîm* tree with leaves of a bitter taste, 18.

## و

والد *wâlid* father, 150. *a.*  
 واسطے *wâste* for the sake, on account, etc. *a.*  
 وجہ *wajh* reason, cause, 34. *a.*  
 وزیر *wazîr* vizier, chief minister, 109. *a.*  
 وصول *wusûl* collected (money), 137. *a.*  
 وطن *watan* native country, 44. *a.*  
 وظیفہ *wazîfa* scholarship, stipend, 34. *a.*  
 وغیرہ *wa-gaira* et cætera, 18, 34, 97. *a.*  
 ورق *warq* page or leaf (of a book or MS.), 164. *a.*  
 وزن *warna* else (to be translated acc. to context), 193. *p.*  
 وقت *waqt* time, pl. *auqât*, 10, 44, 60. *a.*  
 وہ *woh* he, she, it, that, the remote of two persons, the latter as compared with the former (pl. as well as sing.); *wohî* that same, that very.  
 وہاں *wahân* there; *wahîn* just there, 150.

ه

- هاتھ *hâth* hand, 51; *hâth lagnâ* to come into one's hands, be acquired, 109.  
 ہاتھی *hâthî* (*unimanus*) elephant, 60.  
 ہونا *hâmî bharnâ* to assent, 76, (10).  
 ہاں *hân* yes, 10, 198.  
 ہر *har* every, 68; *har ek* everyone, 27. *p.*  
 ہرچند *harchand* although, 176. *p.*  
 ہرکارہ *harkâra* messenger, 34. *p.*  
 ہرگز نہ *hargiz na* never, 176. *p.*  
 ہزار *hazâr* thousand; *hazâron* or *hazârhâ* (pl. of totality), thousands, 176.  
 ہست و نیست *hast o nîst* yes or no, 182. *p.*  
 ہلکا *halkâ* light, 137.  
 ہم *ham* we; *hamârâ* our.  
 ہمت *himmat* spirit, pluck, 60. *a.*  
 ہمراہ *hamrâh* companion; used as postp., in company with, 44, 157. *p.*  
 ہمیشہ *hamesha* always, 44. *p.*  
 ہندو *hindû* 193; *Hindûstân* India north of the Ner-budda, 84.  
 ہندی *Hindî* the vernacular of Upper India written in the Nâgrî character, 18.  
 ہنر *hunar* virtue, skill, accomplishments, etc. 27, 84. *p.*

- ہنسنا *hansnâ* to laugh, 102, 150; *hansî* ridicule, 109.  
 ہوا *hawâ* wind, air, atmosphere, 137. *a.*  
 ہوا *hawwâ* ogre, 193.  
 ہونا *honâ* to be, exist, etc.; *hûjî'e* Precative form, 91; *hote hote* gradually, by degrees, 109; *hûâ* P. Part. and P. Abs.  
 هیچ *hech* of no account, mean, 27. *p.*  
 ہینہ *haiza* cholera; *haiza karnâ* to be seized with cholera, 76, 109. *a.*

ی

- یا *yâ* or, instead of, whereas, 193.  
 یاد *yâd* remembrance; *yâd-honâ* to be remembered; *yâd-rakhnâ* to remember; *yâd-ânâ* to come to recollection, be remembered, 44; *yâd-parnâ* to recollect, be reminded of, 150; *yâd-farmâna* to ask after, call for, 187. *p.*  
 یقین *yaqîn* certain, 157. *a.*  
 یکدیگر *yakdigar* one another, = *ek dusrâ*, 198. *p.*  
 یوں *yûn* thus, 51, 182.  
 یہ *yeh* he, she, it, this, the nearer of two persons; former as compared with the latter (pl. as well as sing.); *yehî* this same, this very.  
 یہاں *yahân* here.

## VOCABULARY No. 2.

### OF WORDS CONTAINED IN THE ENGLISH SENTENCES OF PARTS I., II., AND IN THE TRANSLATION EXERCISES OF PART III.

N.B.—(1) See App. C. 1 (2) above for principle of transliteration.  
 (2) Exceptional genders only are marked, with reference chiefly to Part I. 2 (2).

#### A.

Abandon <i>chhornâ</i> alone, or <i>chhor-jânâ chhor-tenâ</i> int.; <i>chhor-rakhnâ</i> or <i>rakh-chhornâ</i> are often useful; <i>chhor-bhâgnâ</i> describes itself. See <i>bhâgnâ</i> .	abuse, v. <i>burâ bhalâ kahnâ, gâli denâ</i> .	active <i>chust o châlâk, hoshyâr</i> .
abandoned (wicked) <i>sharîr</i> .	accept (formally or officially) <i>pazîr aur qabûl furmânâ</i> ; or <i>qabûl fârmânâ</i> alone: (generally) <i>lenâ</i> or <i>le-lenâ</i> .	activity, <i>châlâki, hosh-yâri</i> .
abhor <i>nafrat karnâ (se)</i> .	accompany <i>sâth-denâ</i> ; to accompany me <i>merâ sâth denâ, ho-tenâ, sâth ho-ânâ (ke), hamrâh honâ (ke)</i> .	accrue <i>honâ, hâsul, or paidâ honâ</i> .
ability <i>qâbiliyat, liyâ-qat</i> .	accordance with, in <i>ba-mûjîb (ke), muwâfiq (ke)</i> .	acted upon by elevated sentiments ' <i>âli-him-mat</i> .
able, to be <i>saknâ</i> , as second member of compound verb.	accordingly <i>chunânchi</i> .	addicted to, v. <i>marnâ (par)</i> .
able, adj. <i>qâbil, lâiq</i> .	account or accounts <i>hisâb</i> ; to check accounts <i>hisâb sentnâ</i> ; accounted for <i>man-sûb</i> ; on account of <i>wâste, li e, mâre</i> (usually in connection with an emotion).	address <i>nâm o nishân, or simply patâ</i> ; to his address <i>uske nâm kâ</i> .
about to <i>qarib hai ki, qarib thâ ki</i> ; or the idea may be expressed by the verb <i>châhnâ</i> in combination with perf. part. and occasionally by the use of <i>wâlâ</i> with gerund.	acknowledge (formally) <i>etirâf karnâ</i> .	administration <i>insirâm, intizâm</i> ; administration of law, <i>nifâz-i-qânûn</i> .
about, adv. <i>pâs, âspâs</i> ; about fifty <i>pachâs ek</i> or <i>qarib pachâs</i> .	across <i>pâr</i> ; a. the river <i>nadi pâr</i> .	admit (the force of an argument) <i>taslim karnâ, or qâ'il honâ (kâ)</i> ; admit him <i>usko ûne-do</i> .
absent <i>guâr-hâzîr</i> .	act on, v. ' <i>amul karnâ (par)</i> '; act towards (treat) <i>bartâo karnâ (sâth), pesh-ânâ (sâth)</i> .	admitted, to be <i>dâkhl honâ</i> .
abuse <i>mazammât, burâ i</i> .		admonish <i>tambih karnâ, nasihat denâ</i> .
		adopt (a son) <i>muta-bannâ k</i> .
		adopt, cause to <i>taslim karnâ</i> .
		advance, v. <i>qadam bur-hânâ</i> ; as the morning

- advanced *din charhte chavhte*.
- advance-guard *pesh-lashkar*.
- advantage *jā'ida*, pl. *javā'id*.
- advent *āmad*, *tashrif-āwari*.
- adventure (ambition) *hausila*.
- adventures *sar-guzasht*.
- adverse *mukhālif*; adverse wind *ulti hawā*, *bād-i-mukhālif*.
- adversity *burā'i*, *bad-qismati*, *bad-iqbāli*, *idbār*.
- advice *solāh*, *washwara*, *nasihat*.
- advisable *maslahat*, *munāsib*.
- advocate of, to be an *rawā jānnā*, *rawādār honā*.
- affair *mo'āmala*, *amr*, *bāt*.
- affect to be *apne ta'in zāhir karnā*.
- afflicted (with) *mub-talā*.
- affray *hangāma*.
- Afghan *afgān*.
- aforsaid *muzkūr*, *maz-kūra bālā*; person aforesaid *nām-burda*.
- after *pichhe*, *ba'd*; after some days *chand roz ke ba'd*; afterwards *iske* or *uske ba'd*, or *pichhe*; after that *ba'd iske ki*.
- again *phir*.
- against *muqābil (ke)*.
- age *'umr*, *f*.
- aged *būldhā*, *sinn-rasidhā*.
- agent *kār-pardāz*, *go-māshta*; (in gram.) *fā'il*; through the agency of *ma'rifat (ke)*.
- agree (to take) *qabūl karnā* or *karlenā*, 'ahd *karnā*; to agree (on a course of action) *salāh karnā*; agree (solemnly) *qaul o qasam karnā*.
- agreement *qaul o qarār*, 'ahd o *paimān*, *muwā-jaqat*.
- aggression (minor) *dastandāzī*.
- aid (mutual) *mo'āwanat*.
- aid, v. *madad denā*; to be a great aid *bahut kām ānā*.
- air *nawā*.
- alarming. *khaufnāk*, *khauf kā*.
- alas! *afsos*.
- albeit *hālānki*.
- alert *hoshyār*, *tayyār*; being on the alert *pesh-qadami*.
- alike *yaksān*, *barābar*.
- alive *zindā*, *salāmat*, *sahih-salāmat*, *jitā ji*.
- all *sab*, *sārā*, *tāmān*, *kull*; all the lot *sab ke sab*; all (our) subjects *jamī-i-rī'āyā*.
- allegiance *itā'at*; true allegiance *wafādāri o itā'at*; throw off allegiance *itā'at se phir jānā*.
- alliance 'ahd o *paimān*.
- allow *ijāzat denā*; (approve) *gawārā karnā*; (admit) *taslim karnā*; to make allowance for *lihāz rakhnā*.
- Almighty, the *qādir-i-mutlaq*, *khudāe qādir*.
- alone *tanhā*, *akelā*.
- alphabet *ālif-be*; to learn the alphabet, *ālif be parhnā*.
- although *harchand*, *go-goki*, *agarchi*, *hālānki* altogether (quite) *muhz*, *mutlaq*, *bilkull*, *pet barhkar*, *adj. ikat-thā*.
- always *hamesha*, *har waqt*.
- ambassador *elchi*, *safir*.
- ambitions *hausilamand*, *garz-mand*.
- ammunition (shot and powder) *golā bārūt*, *sāz o sāmān-i-janq*, *sāmān-i-harb o zarh*.
- amnesty *darguzar*, 'afw among men; from among men *se*, *min jumla*.
- amount, to this is *qadr-kā*.
- amuse *dil-bahlānā*.
- amusing *maza kā*, *mazāq kā*, *lutf kā*.
- ancestors *bāp-dāde*, *bu-zurgān*.
- anchor, to *langar dālnā* (to cast anchor) ancient *qadīm*, *qudimi*.
- anecdote *hikāyat*.
- angelic *ferishton kā sā* or *ferishton jaisā*.
- anger *gussa*.
- angry *gusse*, *khaḥā*.
- animal *jānwar*.
- annex *milānā* (lit. make unite).
- anonymous *gum-nām*, *be-nām*.
- announce and proclaim *'ilān farmanā*, *ishte-hār denā*.
- answer *jawāb*; to answer *jawāb denā*; to answer (be useful) *pesh-jānā*, *kām-nikul-nā*.
- answering *jawāb-dihī*.
- anyone *ko'i*; infl. *kisi*.
- anxiety *andasha*, *tarū-dud*, *khaḍsha*.

- anxious *mutajakkir*.  
 apparently *zâhir men, zâhiran, ma'lûm hotâ hai ki*.  
 appear *nazar ânâ* or *parnâ, dikhâ'i denâ, zâhir honâ*.  
 appearance *sûrat*.  
 appoint *tu'inât karnâ, muqarrar k.*  
 appointed *muqarrar*.  
 apportionment of penalty *tajwiz-i-suzâ*.  
 approach, n. *tashrif-âwâri* (ceremonious).  
 approve *manzûr karnâ, qabûl karnâ, pazira k.*  
 approved *manzûr*.  
 Arab (horse) 'arabî.  
 arbitrate *panchâyat k.*  
 archer *tirandâz*.  
 argue *hujjat lânâ, hujjat karnâ, mubâhasa karnâ*.  
 argument *bahs, f.*  
 arise *uthnâ, uth-jânâ*; (spring from) *paidâ honâ, nikalnâ*.  
 army *lushkar, fauj f.*; enormous army, *dalbâdul lushkar*; in arms *hathiyâr-band*.  
 arrangement *bando-bast, intizâm, tajwiz*.  
 arrange, add *karnâ* to either of the above; to be arranged *ban-parnâ*.  
 arrive *pahunchnâ, â-jânâ*.  
 art *fann*.  
 artful *dagâbâz*.  
 artifice *châlâki, fitrat, hikmat*.  
 artillery *top-khâna*.  
 ascend *charhnâ*.  
 ascent *charhâo*.  
 ascertain *ma'lûm karnâ daryâft k., tahqiq k.*  
 ashamed *sharminda*; to be ashamed *gairat men ânâ, sharm ânâ (ko)*.  
 ask *pûchhnâ*; ask after *hâl pûchhuâ, khair o 'âfiyat pûchhnâ*; ask for *darkhwâst k.*  
 ass *gadhâ*.  
 assassin *saffûk*.  
 assembly *jalsa, majlis f., mahfil f., jamiat*.  
 association with *âmezish, sohbat, sanghat, m.*  
 assuredly *albattu, haqiqatan, wâqâ'i*.  
 attack, to *hamlu karnâ, yorish k.*  
 attacking (party) *hamlu-âwar*.  
 attendance, in *hâzir*.  
 attention *tawujjoh f., lihâz*.  
 attract, to *jazb karnâ*.  
 attractive force *quwwat-i-jâziba*.  
 atrocity *shurârat*.  
 audible, to be *sunâi denâ*.  
 audience *hâzirin-i-ijlâs*.  
 author *musannif*; (compiler) *mu'allif*.  
 authority *ikhtiyâr, sanad, f.*; in authority *farmân-pazir*; under authority *farmân-bardâr, mâtaht*.  
 auxiliary *madadgâr, sharik-i-imdâd*.  
 available *maujûd*.  
 avert *daf' karnâ*.  
 awake *be-dâr*; to be awake *jâgnâ*.  
 awaken, to be *jânâ, âgâh honâ, wâqif honâ*.  
 bad *burâ, khvâb, (bad as first member of compound)*.  
 baggage *usbâb* (sing.).  
 band *guroh, dusta*.  
 Baniya *Baniyâ*.  
 banker *mahâjan, sarrâf*.  
 bard *bhât*.  
 bareheaded and bare-footed *sar o pâ barahnâ*.  
 bargain *khûsh-kharid*.  
 bark *bhauknâ*.  
 barley *juvâr*.  
 bastion *burj*.  
 battalion (regiment) *paltan, f.*  
 battle *larâi*.  
 bazaar *bâzâr* (a collection of shops); through the bazaar *bâzâr hoke*.  
 bear *richh*.  
 bear, v. *burdâsht karnâ*.  
 beard *dârhi*.  
 beasts and birds *charrand o parand*.  
 beat *pitnâ, mârâ*; beat (a cover) *jhârnâ*.  
 become *ho-jânâ, ban-jânâ, ho-lenâ, ban-baithnâ*.  
 bed *palang*.  
 bedding *bichhonâ, bistur*.  
 befall *ho-parnâ*.  
 before *âge, pahlê, qubl, qubl iske ki, pesh*.  
 before, prep. *sâmhne, âge, rû-ba-rû, pahlê*.  
 Begam *beyam* (f. of *bey*) a lady of rank (Mah.)  
 beggar *faqir*.  
 begin, int. *shurû' honâ*; tr. *shurû' karnâ*.  
 beginner *mubtadi, nau-âmoz*.  
 beginning and end *âgâz o anjâm*.  
 behalf of, on *wâstê, li'e*; on our behalf *hamâre*

## B.

back *pith f., pusht, f.*  
 back, to *pusht parrahnâ*.

<i>nām se</i> , or <i>hamāri taraf se</i> .	bosom <i>sina</i> .	C.
behind <i>pichhe</i> ; behind the back <i>pith pichhe</i> .	both <i>douon</i> ; both sides <i>tarafain</i> (Ar. dual).	cage <i>pinjrā</i> .
belief <i>‘itiqād</i> .	bough <i>dāl</i> , f.	calamity <i>shāmat</i> , <i>āfat</i> , <i>masibat</i> .
belly <i>pet</i> .	bound <i>chhalāng</i> , f.; to be bound by (obliged); <i>pāband honā</i> .	call (summons) <i>bulāwā</i> .
below <i>niche</i> .	boundary <i>sarhadd</i> , f.	call, v. <i>bulānā</i> ; call upon (insist) <i>tākid farmānā</i> .
belt <i>peti</i> .	bows and arrows <i>tir o kamān</i> .	camel <i>unt</i> ; she-camel <i>untni</i> .
benefit <i>fāida</i> , <i>ifāda</i> ; to promote the benefit of <i>ifāda karnā</i> .	box <i>sandūq</i> .	camp <i>qiyām-gāh</i> , f.
besides <i>‘alāwa (ke)</i> , <i>siwāe iske</i>	boy <i>larkā</i> .	camping-ground <i>khimagāh</i> , f.
besiege <i>mohāsara karnā</i>	bravery <i>dilāwari</i> , <i>dilerī</i> , <i>bahāduri</i> .	canon law (Islām) <i>shar‘</i> , <i>shari‘at</i> .
bet <i>shart</i> , f.; to bet <i>shart bāndhnā</i> .	bread <i>roti</i> .	canvas wall <i>qanāt</i> , f.
better <i>behtar</i> .	breadth <i>chaurā‘ī</i> , ‘arz.	capable of (qualified to), <i>mujāz</i> , <i>qābil</i> .
between <i>men</i> , <i>darmiyān</i> , <i>bich</i> , <i>bich men</i> .	break, intr. <i>tūtnā</i> , <i>tūt-jānā</i> ; tr. <i>tornā</i> .	cape <i>rās</i> .
binding (of book) <i>jild-bandī</i> .	breakfast <i>hāziri</i> .	capital <i>sarmāya</i> .
binding, adj. <i>wājib</i> .	breeches <i>nefa</i> (lit. fastening of the drawers).	captured <i>giriftār</i> , <i>mā-khūz</i> .
bird <i>chiryā</i> , f.	bribery <i>rishwat</i> , <i>rishwat-sitāni</i> .	carcass (of dead animal) <i>murda jānwar</i>
birth, pride of <i>khāndāni fakhr</i> .	brick <i>int</i> , f.	care <i>khābar</i> f., <i>parwā</i> f., <i>parwarish</i> , <i>khābardāri</i> , <i>hoshyāri</i> , <i>ehtiyāt</i> f.
bite <i>kātnā</i> .	bridge <i>pul</i> .	career, military <i>shughli-sipāhgari</i> .
blame, to <i>tohmat lagānā</i> .	briefly <i>mukhtasar karke</i> , <i>mukhtasar taur par</i> .	carry off or away <i>le-jānā</i> , <i>le-chalnā</i> ; carry a load <i>bojh uthānā</i> ; to be carried on <i>hūā karnā</i> ; carried out. to be <i>ta‘mil honā</i> ; to be carried out successfully <i>husn-ikhtitām ko pahunchnā</i> .
bless me! <i>khair to hai</i> .	bring <i>le-ānā</i> , <i>lānā</i> , <i>pahunchānā</i> .	cartman <i>gāribān</i> .
blind <i>andhā</i> ; blind of one eye <i>kānā</i> .	broad <i>chaurā</i> .	case (in law) <i>muqaddama</i> ; (in gram.) <i>hālat</i> ; (condition or circumstances) <i>hāl</i> , <i>hālat</i> , <i>ahwāl</i> , <i>sūrat</i> ; in every case <i>ba-har-hāl</i> , <i>bu-har-kāif</i> ;
blood <i>khūn</i> .	broker <i>dullāl</i> .	grievous case <i>isti-gāsa</i> .
bloodshed <i>khūn-rezi</i> .	brought up by, to be (stopped) <i>ruk-jānā</i> .	
blow (wind), to <i>chalnā</i> , <i>chal-rahnā</i> ; blow up (fort), <i>urānā</i> .	bucket <i>bālti</i> .	
boast, to <i>fakhr samajhnā</i> , <i>lāfzani k</i> .	buffalo (she) <i>bhains</i> .	
boat <i>kishti</i> .	building <i>mākān</i> , ‘imārat.	
body <i>badm</i> .	burn <i>julnā</i> .	
boil, intr. <i>khāulnā</i> , <i>phūtnā</i> .	bush <i>jhāri</i> .	
bold <i>bahādur</i> , <i>diler</i> .	business <i>kām</i> , <i>kār-o-bār</i> , <i>pesha</i> , <i>mo‘āmala</i> .	
bond <i>dastawez</i> , f.	but <i>lekin</i> , <i>magar</i> , <i>balki</i> , <i>par</i> , 197; but stay <i>magar hān</i> .	
book <i>kitāb</i> , f.	buy <i>mol-lenā</i> , <i>lenā</i> , <i>kharidnā</i> , <i>khurid k</i> .	
booty <i>gūnimāt</i> , <i>lūt</i> .	by and by <i>thori der men</i> , <i>ba‘d chande</i> .	
born, to be <i>paidā honā</i> ; a born soldier <i>mādar-zād sipāhi</i> .		
borrowed <i>mānge kā</i> , <i>musta‘ār</i> .		



- cash *naqd*, *naqd rūpaya*.  
 cask *pīpā*.  
 caste *zāt*, *jāt*, f.; rules of caste, *jāt-dharm*.  
 cat *billi*, *gurba*.  
 catch, to *pakarnā*.  
 cattle *maweshi*.  
 cause *sabab*; cause of anxiety *khadsha*.  
 cautiously *āhista āhista*, *khābardāri se*, *chtiyātan*.  
 cavalry soldier *sowār*; cavalry regiment *risāla*.  
 cease (of famine etc.) *rafz honā*; (leave off) *hāz ānā*.  
 Central India *wasat Hind*.  
 centre *madār*.  
 ceremony *takalluf*; religious ceremonies *dharm-rit*, f.  
 certain (indef.), *fulān*, *fulāna*, *koi shakhs*; (sure) *yaqīn*; on certain (special) terms *ba-sharā it-i-makhsūs*  
 certainly *albatta*, *jil-haqīqat*.  
 chairman *mir-majlis*.  
 chamber *kothri*, *kamarā*.  
 change *tabdil*; change of mind *kisi ki niyat budalni*.  
 change, v. int. *budalnā*.  
 chapter *bāb*.  
 character *chāl-dhāl* f., *ādāt*; good character *neknāmi*; of loose character *au-bāsh*; character and actions *atwār o kir-dār*.  
 charge *zimma*.  
 chastisement *tudārūk*, *sazā*.  
 cheap *arzān*, *sustā*.  
 check (accounts), *sent-nā*  
 cheer, to be of good, *khātir jam rakhnā*.  
 cherisher of the poor *garib parwar*.  
 chest *chhāti*.  
 chicken *bachcha* (young of any animal).  
 chief *sardār*, P. pl. *sardārān*.  
 childhood *bachpan*.  
 children *bābā-log*, *larke-bāle*, *larke larkiyān*, *'eyāl o atfāl*.  
 chink *darz*, f.  
 chintz *chhīnt*.  
 cholera, to be attacked with *haiza karnā*.  
 choose, to *ikhtiyār karnā*.  
 Christianity *mazhab-i-'isā'i*.  
 chuck (away) *phenknā*, *phenk-dālnā*.  
 circuit *pher*, m.  
 circumstances *ahwāl* (sing.).  
 citizen *mahalla-wālā*, *shahr-wālā*.  
 city *shahr*.  
 civil and financial *mulki o māli*.  
 civil and military *kyā mulki, kyā fauji*.  
 claim *da'wā*.  
 claim, v. *da'wā karnā*; *da'widār honā*; claim superiority to *sub-qut-lejānā*.  
 clan *quum*, f.  
 class *guroh*, *jamā'at*; large class *jamā'at-i-kasir*.  
 claw *panja*.  
 clemency *ri'āyat*, *rahm*, *rahm-dili*.  
 climate *āb o hawā*, f.  
 climb *charhnā*.  
 cling *liptā-rahnā*.  
 cloak *lubādā*.  
 close to *pās. nazdik*, *muttasil*; quite close to *pās hi*.  
 close, v. *band-karnā*.  
 closely (of dress) *khūb*.  
 cloth *kuprā*; tablecloth *dustār-khwān*.  
 club *sontā*.  
 cluck, to *kukurānā*.  
 coast *kināra*; to coast *kināre kināre jānā*.  
 cock *murg*, *murgā*.  
 coincidence *ittifāq*; a happy coincidence *husn-ittifāq*.  
 collect, to *jam' karnā*, *ikatthā k*.  
 collected (revenue), *wusūl*.  
 collector (revenue) *tah-sildār*, *kalektar sāhib*.  
 colonies *ābādihā*, Per. pl.  
 colour *rang*.  
 comb (honey) *chhattā*.  
 combination *ittifāq*; (conspiracy) *sāzish*.  
 come *ānā*, *tashrif lānā*; come to and fro *ānā jānā*.  
 comfort *chain*.  
 command *hukm*, *irshād*.  
 command, v. *farmānā*, *hukm denā*, *hukm karnā*.  
 commercial venture *ti-jārat*.  
 commission *dhartā*.  
 commit, to *murtakib honā*, *karnā*.  
 committed *sarzad*.  
 committee *panchāyat*, f.  
 common (customary) *murrawaj*.  
 common sense *'aql*, f.  
 Commons in Parliament assembled *mukhtārān-i-'awāmm* *hazirān-i-jalsa Parliament* (lit. repre-

sentatives of the Commons, etc.).	confederate, adj. <i>mut-tafiq hokar</i> .	contention <i>takrâr f.</i> , F. II. (rare).
commotion <i>fusûl</i> .	confess, to <i>igrâr karnâ</i> .	contentment <i>ganâ'at</i> .
communication <i>layâ'û</i> ; (dealings <i>dâd o situd</i> )	confidence <i>bharosâ, e'timâd, e'tibâr, khâtir-jam'î</i> .	contents <i>mazmûn</i> .
compact 'ahd o <i>paimân, qaul o qarâr</i> .	confined <i>muqaiyud</i> .	contest (military) <i>jang, f.</i>
companion <i>sâthi, ham-râh</i> .	confirm, to <i>tâ'id karnâ, ba-hâl farmânâ, qâ'im farmânâ</i> .	continually <i>mutawâtir</i> .
companionship <i>sâth, sanghat, sohbat</i> .	confirmation <i>tâ'id</i> .	continue <i>hûâ karnâ, qâ'im rahnâ</i> .
company <i>mahfil f., majlis f.</i> ; in company with <i>sâth</i> .	confounded (term of abuse) <i>kambakht</i> .	contrary to <i>khilâf</i> ; contrary to law <i>khilâf-qânûn, nâ-jâ'iz</i> .
comparison <i>muqâbala</i> ; what comparison is there between . . . ? <i>kahân. . . kahân</i> (187)	confront <i>muqâbala karnâ</i> .	contrast between <i>imti-yâz, farq</i> .
complain <i>shikâyat k., shâki</i> or <i>mutashakkî honâ</i> .	confusion <i>shorîsh</i> .	contrived, to be <i>tajwiz honâ</i> .
complaint <i>nâlish</i> (legal) cause a complaint to be laid against <i>nâlish karwâ-denâ (par)</i> ; (general) <i>far-yâd, f., shikâyat</i> .	connected with <i>muta-'alliq (se), milâ hûâ (se)</i> ; to be connected with <i>milâ-rahnâ (se)</i> .	control, v. <i>zabt karnâ</i> ; to control the tongue <i>zabân sambhâlnâ</i> ; under control <i>kahe men</i> .
comply with <i>ta'mil karnâ</i> .	conquer <i>fateh karnâ, jitnâ</i> .	converse, to <i>bâten kurnâ, bât-chit</i> or <i>guft-gû karnâ</i> .
compound <i>hâtâ</i> (for <i>ehâtâ</i> ).	conqueror <i>fatehmand, ahl-i-zafar</i> .	conviction (belief), 'aqida ; to impose conviction on <i>khwâh ma khwâh taslim karnâ</i> .
comprehend <i>qiyâs karnâ, samajh-lenâ</i> .	conquest <i>fateh f., pl. fatûhât, fateh-mandi</i> .	convince <i>qâ'il ma'qûl karnâ</i> .
concealed <i>poshidu, chhipâ hûâ</i> .	consequence (result) <i>natija, anjâm-kâr</i> ; (import) <i>parwâ, muzâqa</i> .	convinced, to be <i>yaqîn honâ</i> .
concentration (of troops) <i>fauj-kashi, farâhamî-fauj</i> .	considerable number <i>bahut se</i> .	coolly <i>baithe-bithâe</i> .
concluded (treaty) <i>mun'aqid</i> .	consideration <i>lihâz, mulâhaza, gaur</i> ; full consideration <i>gaur-i-kâmil</i> ; highest consideration, etc. <i>darja-i-'âlijâh o jalâl</i> .	coolness <i>khunuki</i> .
concord <i>mûwâfaqat, ittijâq, ittehâd, ham-dîlî</i> .	conscienciousness <i>râsti, râst-dîlî</i> .	copy <i>naql, f.</i> ; exact copy <i>naql mutâbiq usl</i> .
condition <i>hâl, hûlat</i> ; original condition <i>asali hâlat</i> ; in a ruinous condition <i>kh râb-khasta, tabâh-hâl</i> .	constantly <i>mutawâtir</i> .	cord dori ; (for strangling) <i>phânsi ki dori</i> .
conduct (loyal) <i>khair-khwâhî</i> .	consultation <i>mushâwarat, mashwarat</i> .	corn <i>dânu, anâj, galla</i> .
	consume <i>sarf men lânâ</i> .	corpse <i>lâsh, f.</i>
	contemplate, to <i>tawaj-joh farmânâ (par), mulâhaza k.</i>	correction <i>tahzib, islâh f., tarnim</i> .
	content, to be <i>iktifâ karnâ (par)</i> .	correspondence <i>khatt-kitâbat</i> .
	contented <i>râzi</i> .	cossack inroads <i>guz-zâqâna fauj-kashi</i> .
		cost <i>qimat</i> .
		costly <i>besh-qimat, behbahâ</i> .

cotton *rûi*; (cotton-plant) *kapâs*, f.; cotton cloth *sûti kaprâ*; cotton thread *dhâgâ*; flock of cotton *rûi kâ gâl*.

council *kaunsil*; in council *ba-ijlâs-i-kaunsil* (lit. in session of council); members of council *memberân-i-kaunsil*.

councillor *munshir*.

countenance *muuh*, *chehra*.

country *mulk*, *watan*.

country-bred *desi*.

countryman *dehâti*; fellow - countryman *ham-watan*, *mulk-wâlâ*.

couple *do*, *jorâ*.

courage *shajâat*.

court (law) *kachahri*; (royal) *durbâr*; court-yard *sahn*; open court *bâr-i-'âmm*, *khule kachahri*.

courted, to be *rufiq ho-jânâ* (lit. to become sought as a friend).

cow *gâe*.

coward, adj. *buzdil*.

cow-killing *gâe-kushi*.

crawl, to *rengnâ*.

create, to *paidâk*.

created, to be *paidâ h*.

credit (praise), *wâh-wâh*.

creep on *chalâ ânâ*.

cricket-ground *gend khelne kâ maidân*.

crime *jurm* (pl. *jurâ'im*), *ma'siyat*.

criminal *mujrim*.

critical (of a crisis) *nâzuk*.

cross *pâr honâ*.

crossing *'ubûr*, *ghât*.

cross words *ukhrî ukhrî bâten*.

crow, to *hâng denâ*; (met.) *azân denâ*.

crowd *guroh*, *bhir*, f.

crown (power of) *sal-tanat*.

cruel, *b-rahm*, *sing-dil*, *sakht-gir*.

cultivator *kâshtkâr*.

cultivation *kâshtkâri*, *khetî*, *khetiyân*.

cure 'elâj; to perform a cure 'elâj *karûâ*.

current *jâri*, *murawwaj*.

custom *dastûr*, *riwâj*.

cut *kâtnâ*.

D.

daily *roz-roz*, *roz-roz kâ*, *âe din kâ*, *roz-marra*.

damage (hurt) *zarar*.

danger *khatra*; having a sense of danger *khatra-shinâs*.

dare *yârâ honâ (ko)*.

dashed in pieces, to be *chiknâ chûr honâ*.

date *târikh*.

date-palm, also date *khajûr*.

day *din*, *roz*; to-day *âj*, *âjhi*; days of the Mutiny *ayyâm-i-gadr*; for days *muddat tak*, *muddaton*; at daybreak *fajr hote*; daylight *din ki roshni*; next day *agle din*; some day or other *ek na ek din*.

dead *murida*, *mûâ*.

deal, to *pesh ânâ (sâth)*.

dealings *sar-o-kâr*; wholesale dealings *thok-faroshî*; retail

dealings *khurda-faroshi*.

dear *mahugâ*; (risen in price) *girân*; *pyârâ*, 'aziz; to hold dear 'aziz *rakhuâ*.

death *maut f.*, *ajal f.*; put to death *mâr-dûlnâ*, *qatl-karnâ*; to suffer death *apni jân denâ*.

debauchery 'ayyâshi.

debtor *qarzdar*.

deceased *mutawaffâ*.

deceit *fareb*.

deceive, to *fareb denâ*, *wargulânâ*, *dâm-i-fareb men lânâ*.

decide, to (in law) *faisala karnâ*.

decided, to be *faisala honâ*.

decision *faisala*.

declaration *mahzar*, *iz-hâr*.

declare *bayân karnâ*, *zâhir k.*, 'elân *far-mânâ*; in detail *tashrih k.*

decree, to *fatwâ denâ*.

deemed, to be *mutasawwar honâ*.

deep *gahrâ*.

deer *hiran*.

defeat, v. *shikast denâ*.

defeated, to be *shikast khânâ*, *hârûnâ*, *maglûb honâ*.

defendant *mudda'â-'alâihi*.

defender *qil'a-wâlâ*; Defender of the Faith *zahîru-l-mazhab*.

degree *darja*; by degrees *hote hote*.

delay *tawaqquf*, *der*, f. *derî*.

deliberately *âhista*.

delight *khûshi*; in de-

light <i>khūsh hokar, khūshi ki hālat men.</i>	destroy <i>nist o nābūd karnā, gārat karnā.</i>	discontented <i>nārāz, hāris o muḥṣid.</i>
demand <i>talab karnā, muqtazā honā.</i>	destroyed, to be <i>khāk ho-jānā, nist o nābūd honā.</i>	discover, to <i>duryāft karnā, talūsh k.</i>
denied, to be <i>inkār honā.</i>	detached <i>judā, alay.</i>	disease <i>marz, bimāri.</i>
deny, to <i>inkār karnā.</i>	detached, to be <i>nikul-nā, alay ho-jānā, judā honā.</i>	disgrace <i>bad-nāmi.</i>
depart <i>chul-denā, chulā jānā.</i>	detachment (mil.) <i>das-ta.</i>	disgraceful <i>bad-nām.</i>
department <i>mahkama, serishtu.</i>	detail, in <i>tufsil se, taf-silwār.</i>	disguise oneself, to <i>apne ta'in bhes men banānā, bhes badal-nā.</i>
departure <i>rawānagi; date of departure tarikh-i-rawānagi.</i>	detected, to be <i>khul-parnā.</i>	disguised <i>bhes men honā.</i>
depend on <i>munhasir honā (men).</i>	determined <i>mustaqill-mizāj (possessed of force of character), zabardast (high-handed).</i>	disgust <i>nafrat.</i>
dependencies <i>muzāfāt, muta'alliqāt.</i>	devoted, to <i>fidā (par).</i>	disgusted, to be <i>nāga-wār samajhuā.</i>
depression <i>dabāo.</i>	devotions (Islām) <i>sij-du.</i>	disgusting <i>nā-guwār.</i>
derived from <i>paidā.</i>	deavour, to <i>chat kar jānā, khā-jānā.</i>	disheartened <i>be-dil.</i>
descend, to <i>utarnā; cause to descend utārnā; nāzil karānā.</i>	diamond <i>hirā.</i>	dishonesty <i>bad-diyā-nati.</i>
descended from <i>aulād men honā.</i>	diary <i>roznāmcha.</i>	dislodge, to <i>be-dukhl karnā.</i>
descent <i>utār.</i>	die, to <i>marnā, fanā ho-jānā, qazā karnā, etc.</i>	dismayed, to be <i>ghab-rānā, ghubrā-jānā.</i>
describe <i>bayān karnā.</i>	diet <i>khānā pinā.</i>	dismiss <i>rukhsat karnā, maḥqūf k.</i>
description <i>bayān, kai-fiyat.</i>	different <i>mukhtalif, judāgāna, mutafar-riq.</i>	dismitted, to be <i>mau-qūf honā.</i>
deserve <i>lā'iq honā.</i>	difficult <i>mushkil, dush-wār.</i>	dismount, to <i>zin par se utarnā.</i>
deserving <i>sazāwār, lā'iq, qābil-i-ta'rif; deserving of death wājibu-l-qatl; deserving of punishment sazā ke lā'iq.</i>	difficulty <i>mushkil, f.</i>	disobedience <i>'udūl-huk-mi, nā-farmāni.</i>
desire <i>maushā, ishti-yāq, arzū f. lāluch.</i>	dignity <i>manzilat.</i>	disorder (plague) <i>wa-hāl; (gov.) hāl-naz-mi.</i>
desire, v. <i>chāhnā, khwā-hān honā.</i>	dimitutive <i>past-qudd.</i>	displeased <i>nārāz, nā-khūsh.</i>
despair <i>nā-unmedi, mā-yūsi, be-dili; in despair mujbūr hokar, māyūs hokar, be-dil hokar; blank despair sakhṭ māyūsi.</i>	dinner <i>khānā.</i>	disposed to <i>mā'il.</i>
despair of, to <i>hāth dhonā, māyūs rahnā.</i>	direct <i>ehtimām k.; direct route rāh-i-rāst</i>	disposition <i>mizāj, khas-lut.</i>
desert <i>sahrā, bayābān, janqal-i-wirāna.</i>	direction <i>taraf, f.; direction of operations (mil.) kār-farmā i.</i>	dissatisfied <i>nā-rāz, nā-khūsh, nā-razāmand, kushida-khātr.</i>
	director <i>nāzim.</i>	distance <i>dūr f., dūri, fūsala.</i>
	dirty, to <i>najis kar-denā.</i>	distinct <i>mukhtalif.</i>
	disciplined <i>qawā'id-dān, ta'līm-yāftu.</i>	distinction <i>imtiyāz.</i>
	disclaim <i>inkār karnā.</i>	distracted <i>muztarr, pareshān, parāyanda, be-tāb, be-chūin, be-qarār.</i>

distribution of lands <i>khet-bânt</i> m.; distribution (proportion) <i>tartîb</i> .	<i>khwâhân-i-jung, jung-jû</i> .	employment <i>naukarî, mulâzimât</i> .
district <i>zila'</i> , <i>sûba</i> , pl. <i>sûbajât</i> .	earn <i>kân</i> .	encounter (meet) <i>mil-nâ</i> ; (resistance) <i>ta-qâbul</i> .
ditch <i>khanduq</i> , f.	early <i>munh andhere, sa-vere, bari fujr</i> ; so early (in the day) <i>itne diu rahe se</i> ; (of time) <i>uqlâ</i> .	encroachment <i>pesh-qadamî</i> .
divide, to <i>bântnâ, bânt-lenâ, taqsim k., hisse k.</i>	earn, to <i>kamânâ</i> .	end <i>anjâm, intehâ, ikhtitâm</i> ; in the end <i>anjâm ko</i> ; from beginning to end <i>awwal se âkhir tak</i> .
divided <i>munqasim</i> .	earnest <i>ba-dil o jâu se</i> .	ended, to be <i>khatm honâ</i> .
division <i>taqsim</i> ; (of tribes) <i>got f., got-bandî</i> .	ease <i>âsâni, ârâm, âsâ'ish</i> .	endurance <i>mehnat, sâbit-qadamî</i> .
do <i>karnâ</i> ; doing good <i>fâ'idu-rasâni</i> ; <sup>10</sup> have done with <i>fâ-riq honâ</i> .	eastern <i>mushriq</i> ; eastern countries <i>bilâd-i-mashriq</i> .	endure <i>sahnâ</i> .
doctor <i>hakim</i> .	easy <i>âsân, sahl</i> ; however easy <i>kuisâ hi âsân, etc.</i>	enemy <i>dushman</i> .
document (written) <i>tahrîr, qirtâs</i> (from the Greek).	eat, to <i>khânâ, khâ-lenâ</i> ; eat up <i>khâ-jânâ</i> .	engage in <i>masrûf honâ</i> ; (in battle) <i>muqâbala kurnâ</i> .
dodge (iron.) <i>hikmat</i> . doff, to <i>utâr-phenknâ</i> .	edge, on (of teeth) <i>khattâ</i> .	English <i>angrez</i> ; E. (language) <i>angrezi</i> .
dog <i>kuttâ</i> .	education <i>tarbiyat, tâlim, 'ilmiyat</i> .	enjoy, to <i>fâ'idu utâwâ</i> ; to enjoy good health <i>tandurust rahnâ</i> .
dolefully <i>dard o hasrat ke sâth</i> .	effect <i>asr</i> pl. <i>âsâr, natija</i> pl. <i>natâ'ij</i> ; (gist) <i>mazmûn</i> .	enjoyment (riotous) <i>'uyyâshi</i> .
dominion <i>riyâsut, mam-lakat</i> .	effective <i>kârgar, kâri</i> .	enlightened <i>purûr</i> .
door <i>kiwâr, dar, dur-wâza</i> .	effusion of blood <i>khûn-rezî</i> .	enmity <i>'adâwat</i> .
doubtless <i>be-shakk</i> .	egg <i>andâ</i> ; to lay eggs <i>unde denâ</i> .	ensue, to <i>paidâ honâ</i> .
drain <i>badar-rau</i> , f.	eight <i>âth</i> .	entangled, to be <i>phans-nâ, phans-rah-nâ</i> .
dress <i>libâs</i> .	eighth <i>âthwân</i> .	enter <i>qadam rakhnâ</i> (men) <i>dâkhil honâ, darj karnâ</i> ; enter on (a career) <i>ikhtiyâr k.</i>
drift <i>matlab</i> .	elder <i>barâ</i> .	enterprise <i>mohimm, f.</i>
drink <i>pinâ</i> ; drink up <i>pi-jânâ</i> .	elephant <i>hâthi</i> .	enthusiasm <i>sargarmî</i> .
drink <i>sharâb, f.</i>	else, if not, <i>warna, nahin to</i> .	enthusiastic <i>sargarm</i> .
drinking <i>sharâb pinâ, mai-noshi</i> .	embezzle, to <i>khiyânât k.</i>	entice <i>balkânâ, targîb denâ</i> .
drive in <i>gârnâ</i> .	emente <i>dangâ-fusâd, fasâd, sarkashi, bal-wâ</i> .	entrust, to <i>supurd karnâ</i> .
due <i>bâqi</i> (lit. remaining to be paid).	empire <i>amaldâri, saltanat</i> .	equity <i>'adâlat</i> .
dues <i>mahsûl, ujrat</i> .	employ <i>rakhnâ</i> (of a servant); <i>ist'êmâl karnâ</i> .	era <i>waqt</i> .
dunghill <i>kûre kâ anbâr</i> .	employé <i>mulâzim</i> .	escape, to <i>bach-nâ</i> .
	employed in office <i>'oh-da par mâmûr</i> .	escort, to <i>pahûnchânâ</i> .
		essentials in <i>asal men</i> .
		establish, to <i>sâbit karnâ</i> .

## E.

each *har ek, har ko'i*;  
each other *ek dûsrâ*.  
eager for the fray

eunuch <i>khwāja-sarā</i> .	expose <i>kholnā</i> ; expose the head <i>sir nikālnā</i> .	father <i>bāp, wālid</i> .
Europeans <i>ahl-i-furāng, farāngī</i> .	exposed, to be <i>khulnā</i> .	fatigue <i>thukān f., mān-dāgi</i> .
evasive <i>makkūr</i> .	extended, to be <i>muta-‘alliq honā</i> .	fault <i>qusūr pl. qusūrāt, taqsir pl. taqāsir, khatū</i> .
evening <i>shām, f.</i>	extensive <i>barū, barā barū, wasī</i> .	favour, to <i>tā’id kurnā</i> .
everyone <i>har ek, sub ko’i</i> .	extent, to some <i>kisi qudr</i> .	favourable <i>munāsib</i> .
every day <i>roz-ba-roz, roz-roz, āe din</i> .	extraordinary <i>ājib, ‘ajb kū</i> .	fear, fright <i>dar, khauf</i> .
every six months <i>har chhate mahine men</i> .	extremely <i>badut hi, nehūgat, shidilat se</i> .	feast <i>dar-wat</i> .
exact <i>thik</i> ; exact state of case <i>huqīqat-hāl</i> .	eye <i>ānk, f.</i> ; eye of needle <i>nūke kū munh</i> .	features (of conduct) <i>anzā’ pl. of waz’</i> .
examination <i>imtechān</i> .		feed <i>khilānā</i> ; have fed <i>khilwānā</i> .
example <i>namūna, nuzir pl. nazā’ir</i> .	<b>F.</b>	feel sure <i>yaqin jānūā, khūb jānūā</i> : to be felt <i>dal men huqūā</i> .
excellence <i>khūbi, ‘um-dāgi</i> .	face <i>munh, chehra</i> .	feelings of kindred <i>birādarānu humdili</i> .
excellent (laudable) <i>hamīda</i> .	facility <i>suhūliyat</i> .	fellow <i>shakhs</i> ; you fellow! <i>are tū, are shakhs</i> ; you fellows <i>tum log</i> : fellow countrymen <i>ham-watan</i> .
excessive <i>ba-darjā-i-gāyat</i> .	fact <i>aur, pl. umūr</i> .	female infanticide <i>rasm-i-dukhtar-kushi</i> .
excite <i>abhūrnā</i> .	factor <i>kothi-wālū</i> .	ferry <i>ghāt, utār</i> .
excuse ‘ <i>uzr, ma’zarat</i> .	factory <i>kothi</i> .	fertility <i>zur-khezi</i> .
excuse oneself, to ‘ <i>uzr karnā</i> .	fair <i>melū, adj. munsif, insāf se bar’id nahin</i> .	feudal system <i>jāgir khidmāt lenē dene kā tarīqu</i> .
excused <i>mo’āf</i> .	faithful <i>namak-khwār, wafūdār, imāndār</i> .	fever <i>bukhār</i> .
exemplar <i>peshnihād</i> .	fall <i>girnā, gir-parnā, parnā</i> .	few <i>chand, ko’i ko’i, kuchh kuchh, kumtar</i> .
exempt, to be <i>mo’āf ruhānā</i> .	fall into, to (of a river) <i>jū-wilnā</i> .	field <i>maidān, khet</i> ; to be master of the field <i>maidān hāth rahnā</i> ; of battle <i>maidān - i - kārzār, maidān-i-jung</i> .
exhibition <i>numā’ish</i> .	false <i>jhūthā</i> .	fifteen <i>paudrah</i> ; fifteen hundred <i>derh hazār</i> or <i>paudrah sun</i> .
expectation <i>intizār, chashm-dāshat</i> .	familiarity <i>munh-lagūnā</i> .	fifty <i>pañchās</i> .
expecting <i>muntazir, mutarassid</i> .	family <i>kunba, khāndān, ghar</i> ; the whole family <i>kuube kā kunba</i> .	fifty-seven, <i>sattāwan</i> .
expense <i>kharch, sarf</i> .	famine <i>qecht-sāli, qecht</i> .	fight <i>larnā</i> ; fight one’s way <i>larnā bhīrnā</i> .
experience <i>tajriba, taj-riba-kāri</i> . (In the sense of <i>feel</i> experience, the verb may generally be translated by <i>honā</i> , with <i>ko</i> to mark the person affected.)	famished <i>kāl kā wārā</i> .	filth (dung) <i>bith f.</i>
expert <i>yuktāe rozgār</i> .	far, far off <i>dūr, noun and adj.</i> ; not far <i>thorī dūr, dūr nahin</i> ; not very far <i>chandān dūr nahin</i> .	fill <i>bharnā, bhar-denā</i> .
explain <i>tushrih kurnā, bayān k.</i>	fashion <i>tarah f., tari-qu, taur</i> .	find <i>pānā</i> ; find out <i>dar-yāf’ kurnā</i> .
explanation <i>kufiyat</i> ; for explanation <i>kafiyat likhne ke li’e</i> .	fast <i>tez, tez-raftār</i> .	
	fasten, to <i>lagānā</i> .	
	fate <i>qismat, taqdir</i> ; sad fate ‘ <i>azūb</i> .	

fine <i>jarimâna</i> ; fine fellow (iron.) <i>hazrat</i> .	violent force <i>jabr o ziyâlati</i> .	full, <i>pûrâ, kull, bhara hûâ</i> .
finger <i>ungli</i> .	force, to <i>jabr karnâ</i> .	furniture <i>asbâb</i> .
finish <i>kar-chuknâ, tamâm karnâ, khatm karnâ</i> ; finish a job (in sense of killing) <i>kâm tamâm k.</i>	forced <i>majbûr</i> .	furtively <i>chori se</i> .
fire <i>âg f., âtish</i> ; to catch fire <i>âg-lagni (men)</i> ; to burn <i>jahnâ</i> .	fordable <i>pâyâb</i> .	future <i>âyanda</i> .
firmness <i>istehkâm</i> .	forefathers, <i>bâp-dâde</i> .	
first <i>pahlâ, awwal</i> ; at first <i>pahle, ibtidâmen</i> .	forest <i>jangal</i> .	G.
first-rate <i>awwal darja kâ</i> .	forged <i>ju'li</i> .	gallant <i>bahâdur</i> .
fit, v. <i>lagnâ</i> ; adj. <i>munâsib</i> ; to see fit to ... <i>munâsib samajhnâ ki</i> .	forget <i>bhûlnâ, bhûl-jânâ</i> .	gallantry <i>bahâduri, jân fishâni</i> .
fix <i>lagânâ, qâ'im k.</i>	forgetful <i>gâfil</i> .	gambling <i>qimâr-bâzi</i> .
fixed <i>qâ'im</i> ; fixed rules <i>qawâ'id-i-mo'âyyan</i> .	forgetfulness, <i>gâflat, farâmosh-kâri</i> .	game, <i>bâzi, shikâr</i> .
flesh <i>gosht</i> .	formal (serious) <i>sanjûla</i> .	gang, <i>jamâ'at</i> .
float, <i>bahnâ, bah-jânâ</i> .	fort <i>qil'â</i> .	garden <i>bâg</i> .
flock <i>rewar f.</i> ; (of cotton) <i>gâl</i> .	fortitude <i>istiqlâl</i> .	gasp for breath, to <i>dum nâk men ânâ</i> .
fly <i>urnâ</i> ; (flee) <i>bhâgnâ</i> .	fortnight <i>do hafta</i> .	gate <i>phâtak</i> .
follow <i>pichhe jâna</i> ; (obey) <i>mâmnâ</i> .	fortune <i>zamâna, iqbâl</i> .	gazo <i>dekhnâ, tâknâ</i> ; gazing <i>dekhte ke dekhte</i> .
folly <i>jahâlat, be-wuqûfi</i> .	forty <i>châlis</i> .	generally <i>aksar, 'umûman, bil-'umûm</i> .
fond of <i>shauq honû (kâ)</i> .	foul <i>makrûh</i> .	gently <i>âhistagi se</i> .
food (diet) <i>gizâ</i> .	foundation <i>bunyâd f., binâ</i> .	gesture <i>ishâra</i> .
fool <i>ahmaq</i> .	four <i>châr</i> ; four times as much <i>changuna</i> .	get <i>pânâ, hâsil karnâ, milnâ, int.</i> ; get off <i>utarnâ, utar-parnâ</i> ; get up <i>ûthnâ</i> .
foot <i>pânôn</i> (and by elision of either nasal <i>pânw</i> or <i>pân</i> ), <i>pair, pâ, qadam</i> (pace); to go on foot <i>pâ on pân on chalnâ, paidal chalnâ</i> .	fourth <i>chauthâ</i> ; (part) <i>chautha hissa, chûhârum</i> .	ghaut <i>ghât</i> .
foot-path <i>paydandi</i> .	fowl <i>murg, murgâ (male), murgi (female)</i> .	give, to <i>denâ, de-denâ</i> ; cause to give <i>dilânâ</i> ; give up <i>chhornâ, chhor denâ, hawâla karnâ</i> ; (an intention) <i>fuskh karnâ</i> .
for <i>kyûnki, kis t're ki, etc.</i>	fowl - house <i>darba, murgi-khâna</i> .	glory, for <i>barâe nang o nâm</i> .
forbid <i>man' karnâ</i> .	fox <i>lomri</i> .	glory in <i>apnâ fakhr jânnâ</i> .
forbidden <i>harâm</i> .	framing of laws <i>taj-wiz-i-qânûn</i> .	go <i>jânâ, tashrif lejanâ, chalnâ</i> ; to have to go <i>jânâ parnâ</i> ; go away <i>chalâ jânâ</i> ; go back <i>phir jânâ, wâpas chalnâ</i> ; go about your business <i>chaltâ phirtâ nazar ânâ</i> .
force (of mon) <i>jamâ'at, fauj</i> ; (strength) <i>zor</i> ;	frequent (continual) <i>mutawâtir</i> .	goat (she) <i>bakri</i> .
	fresh <i>tâza, tâza-dum</i> .	God <i>khulâ</i> ; by God! <i>khudâ ki qasam</i> ;
	friend <i>dost, bhâ'i, rafiq, 'aziz</i> ; friends <i>ahbâb (pl. of habib)</i> .	
	fright <i>khauf, sahm</i> .	
	frightened, to be <i>darnâ (se), khunf khânâ</i> .	
	front, in <i>âge</i> .	
	frontier <i>sarhadd f.</i>	
	frozen <i>jamâ hûâ</i> .	
	fulfil, to <i>pûrâ karnâ, wafâ karnâ</i>	

God knows *khudâ jāne*, *khudâ 'alim hai*; for God's sake *khudâ ke wāste*; praised be God! *subhān-allāh*.

gold mohur *ashrafī*.

good *achchkhâ*, 'umdu, *nek*, *durust*, *nek-bakht*, *nek - mizāj*; good government *husn - intizām*; good fortune *iqbāl*.

government *sarkār f.* *riyāsat*, *hukm-rāni*, 'amaldāri, adj. *sar-kāri*.

grace *fuzl*, *taufīq*.

graceless *be-ādab*.

grade *darjā*.

gradually *ba - tadrij*,

*hote hote*, *rafta rafta*.

grain *dānu*, *galla*.

grammar *sarf-nuhw f.*

granary *galla-khāna*.

grand 'āli-shān.

grandson *potā*.

grant 'enāyat *karnā*; granted that *mānā ki*, *sahī* (at the end of sentence).

grasp *pakarnā*.

grass *ghās f.*

gratitude *shukr-guzāri*.

graze, to *charnā*; make

graze *chorānā*.

grease the palm, to (i.e. bribe) *muh mithā karnā* (lit. to sweeten the mouth).

great *barā*; great man *amir-kabir*.

grief *qalaq*, *runj*, *has-rat*, *gam*.

ground *zamin f.*

grow *barhnā*, *hotā jānā*, *paidā honā*; grow up *barā honā*, *jawān honā*.

guard, on one's *khabardār*, *chankas*.

guide *rahnumā*, *rah-dār*.

gulf *khalij*.

gun *bundūq f.*, *top* (cannon) *f.*; (heavy gun) *zurb-top f.*

## H.

habit 'ādāt.

habits (of body or mind) *waz' f.*; (of life) *tarz-i-zindagi*.

'habitation of war' *dāru 'l-harb*.

hair *bāl*.

hair to stand on end *rongte khare hone*.

hair-splitting, *mū-shi-yāfī*.

half *ādhā*.

half kill, to *ādh mūā karnā*.

half-way *ādhi dūr*.

half-yearly *shashmāhi*.

hamlet *kherā*.

hand *hāth*; to take into one's own hands *apne ehtimām men lenā*.

handcuff, to *mushken bāndhnā*.

handful *muthi*.

hang down, tr. lat-*kānā*.

hang it! *bulā se*.

happen *honā*, *wuqū' men ānā*; as it happened *ittijāgan*.

hard (difficult) *mushkil*, *dushwār*; (material) *sakht*; (wind) *tez*; to do hard work *taklij uthānā*, *mehnat karnā*.

hardship *sakhtī*.

Hardwar, *Hardwār* (place where the Ganges enters the plains).

hare *khurgosh*.

harm *qubāhat*.

harvest (spring) *rabī'*; (autumn) *kharif*; harvest to be got in *birā pār honā* (lit. the crossing of the raft).

hatch, to *bachche nikal-wānā* (spokon of breeder).

have, use subst. verb with postp. *pās* or affix *ko* for the possessor; occasionally *rakhnā* may be used.

head *sir H.*, *sar P.*; (chief) *ra'is*, *sardār*, *peshwā*; head over heels *auudhā*.

health *tundurusti*, 'āfī-yat; state of health *mizāj*, *tabī'at*.

hear, to *sunnā*, *sun-lenā*, *sun-pānā*; hearing of *istimā'*.

heart *dil*; out of heart *be-dil*. *uzurda-dil*; heart's content, *khūshi ki hālat*.

heartly *dīli*.

heat *garmi*, *dhūp f.*, *taish*, *tezi*.

heir *wāris*.

hell *dozakh*.

help *sahārā*, *mudud f.*, *madad-gāri*, *imdad*.

help, to *maulud denā* or *karnā*; help oneself *apnā kām nikāl-lenā*.

helpless *nā-kār*, *maj-būr*, *be-ikhtiyār*.

here *yahān*, *yahin*, *is jagah* (men); here and there *jā-ba-jā*.

high 'ālā, *unchā*, *bu-land*.

higher class 'ālā *darjā*. hill *pahār*; 'on the hills' *pahār par*.

Hindooism *hindū-mat*.

hindrance *ta'arruz*.



<p>hint <i>imâ, ishâra.</i>          hold, <i>rakhnâ, tasawwur k.</i>; to be held <i>mutasawwar honâ, jârî honâ</i>; hold out, to (in opposition) <i>zidd kr'e jânâ</i>, to hold oneself bound <i>amâ zimma lâzim jannâ.</i>          home, at <i>ghar par</i>; to go home, <i>ghar jânâ.</i>          honest <i>diyânât-dâr.</i>          honey <i>shahd.</i>          honour 'izzat, <i>hurmat.</i>          hope, <i>ummed f.</i>          hope, to <i>ummed rakhnâ.</i>          horde <i>qum f.</i>          horrible <i>khauf - nâk, balâ kâ. gazah kâ.</i>          horror (aversion) <i>dili nafrat.</i>          horse <i>ghorâ.</i>          hot <i>garm</i>; the hot weather <i>garmî kâ mausim, garmiyân pl.</i>          hound, <i>shikâri kuttâ.</i>          hour <i>ghantâ.</i>          house (general) <i>ghar</i>; (better class) <i>makân, kothî, havelî.</i>          housekeeping <i>khâna-dâri.</i>          however, <i>ba-har hâl, phir bhî, to bhî.</i>          human being <i>âdmî, âdamzâd, insân.</i>          humanity <i>mar-d-âdmiyat, insâniyat.</i>          humble frame of mind <i>'âjizi ki hâlat.</i>          humility <i>inkisâr.</i>          hundred, <i>sau</i>; hundreds <i>saukron, sudhâ.</i>          hunger <i>bhûk f., gur-sinagi</i>; sore hunger <i>zor ki bhûk.</i>          hungry, to be <i>bhûk lagnâ, bhûkhâ honâ.</i>          hunt, to <i>shikâr karnâ.</i></p>	<p><i>hurry jaldi</i>; in a hurry <i>jald.</i>          hurry, to <i>jaldi karnâ.</i>          hurt, to be <i>chot lagnâ.</i>          husband <i>khâwind, shaukar.</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">I.</p> <p>iced water <i>barf kâ pâni.</i>          idea <i>luhar f., khayâl, irâda, fikr m. &amp; f.</i>          idiom <i>mohâwara.</i>          idiomatic <i>bâ-mohâwara.</i>          idiot <i>ahmaq.</i>          idle <i>be-kâr, sust.</i>          ignorant <i>jâhil, nâdân, be-wuqûf.</i>          ill <i>bimâr, 'alil</i>; to be ill <i>ji burâ karnâ.</i>          ill-luck <i>bad-qismati, bad-iqbâli.</i>          ill-use <i>sitânâ.</i>          illegal, <i>nâ-jâ'iz.</i>          illiterate <i>nâ-khwânda.</i>          illustration (verbal) <i>tamsil.</i>          imaginary <i>khayâlî.</i>          imagine, to <i>tasawwur karnâ, khayâl k.</i>          imitation of, in <i>dekhâ-dekhi.</i>          immediately <i>ba-mujur-rail, fûran, filfûr.</i>          impartial <i>bagair taraf-dâri ke.</i>          impeding, <i>muzâhim.</i>          impertinent <i>nâ-humwâr, gustâkh.</i>          implicitly <i>be-chûn o chirâ</i> (lit. without when and why).          implore, to <i>multaji honâ.</i>          impossible <i>nâ-mumkin, muhâl, nahin hosaknâ.</i>          inasmuch as, <i>az bas ki.</i>          incompatible <i>nâ hum-sâz.</i></p>	<p>inconceivable <i>be-qiyâs, khilâf-qiyâs.</i>          increase, to, int. <i>barhnâ, tr. barhânâ.</i>          independent <i>âzâd</i>; independent action, <i>âzâdâna kâr-râwâ'i.</i>          India <i>Hindustân, Hind.</i>          indiscreet <i>be-tamiz.</i>          indiscriminately, <i>be-tashkhis-i-ashkhas.</i>          indispensable <i>lâ-budd.</i>          indisposed 'alil.          indisposition 'alâlat.          indolence <i>kâhili.</i>          indulge in to excess <i>nehâyat be-bâk honâ (men).</i>          indulgence in strong liquors <i>sharâb-khwâri, mai-noshi.</i>          Indus <i>Sindh.</i>          industrious <i>jafâ-kash, mehnati.</i>          inexpedient <i>maslahat nahin.</i>          infantry <i>paidal</i>; foot-soldier <i>piyâda.</i>          inferior <i>kam - rutbâ, adnâ.</i>          infernal deity <i>pâtâl-wâlâ deotâ.</i>          inflame, to <i>ishte'al denâ.</i>          inflict <i>denâ</i> (of punishment).          influence <i>dakhl, ro'ib.</i>          influential <i>ro'ib-dâr.</i>          inform <i>âgâh karnâ</i>; to be informed <i>âgâh honâ</i>; to gain information who a person really is <i>asuli haqiqat deryâft karnâ.</i>          information <i>ittilâ' f., khabar f.</i>          informer <i>mukhabbir.</i>          ingrate <i>kâfir-ni'amat.</i>          inhabit <i>rahnâ, basnâ, bûd o bâsh k.</i>          inhabitant <i>bâshfûda,</i></p>
--	--	--

pl. *bāshindayān*,  
*rahne-wālā*.  
inheritance *tarkā*; by  
inheritance *tarke*  
*men*.  
inquiry *bāz-purs f.*;  
(in sickness) '*eyā-*  
*dat*.  
inside *andar*, *bhitar*.  
insinuate oneself *dakhl*  
*pānā*.  
inspect *mo'āyama k.*  
inspection *nigrāni*.  
instability *nā-pāedāri*.  
instance *misāl f.*  
instead, adv. *yā*.  
instead of, post. '*ewaz*.  
instigate, to *targīb*  
*denā*.  
institutions *rāh o rasm*  
*f.*, *rasm o riwāj*.  
instruction *talīm*; in-  
structions *hidāyat*,  
*hukm*, *kahā*.  
insult *tauhin*.  
insurrection *sar-kashī*;  
(minor) *holwā*.  
integrity *diyānat*.  
intellect '*aql f.*  
intelligent *zehin*, '*aql-*  
*mand*, *tez-feh'm*.  
intent *marād f.*, *niyat*.  
intention *qasd*, *irāda*;  
to give up intention  
*faskh karnā*.  
intercourse *āmad o*  
*raft f.*; want of in-  
tercourse *judū rahmā*.  
interest *sā'i o sijāris'h*;  
in your interest *tum-*  
*hāre hayq men*.  
interesting *dilchasp*,  
*maza kā*, *mazāq kā*.  
interfere, to *dastandāzi*  
*karnā*, *ta'arruz k.*  
interference *dastan-*  
*dāzi*.  
intermarry, to *āpas*  
*men shādī byāh karnā*.  
internal *andarāni*; in-

ternal tranquillity  
*amn o chain*.  
intoxicated *sharāb ke*  
*nashā men*.  
intrigue *fītrat*, *sāzish*.  
intriguer *mufsid*.  
intuition *tajārrus*, *firā-*  
*sat*.  
invade, to *charhā'i*  
*karnā*.  
invasion *charhā'o*.  
invent *ijād karnā*; to  
be invented *ijād*  
*honā*.  
inveigled, to be *dhokā*  
*khānā*.  
invite to a feast *ziyā-*  
*fat karnā*.  
iron *lohā*.  
irregularity (of con-  
duct), irregular  
courses *be-lugāmi*.  
island *jazīra*.  
isolated *julāyānū*, *judā*  
*judā*.  
issue, to (order) *sūtir*  
*k.*, int. *nikalnā*; to  
be issued *nāfiz honā*.  
item *raqam f.*

## J.

jar *gharā*.  
jeweller *jauhari*.  
jewels *jawāhir*.  
join, to *jornā*, *milnā*;  
join in *shāmīl honā*,  
*sharik honā*.  
journey *safar*.  
judgment *fahm o firā-*  
*sat*, *tamiz*; day of  
judgment *qiyāmat*.  
junction, to form with  
*mil-jānā*.  
justice *insāf*.  
just now *abhi to*. The  
idiom of 'just' in  
such phrases as

'just wait,' etc. may  
generally be trans-  
lated by *zarra to*.

## K.

keep *rakhnā*; keep  
watch *dekhtā rahnā*;  
to be kept up *hūā*  
*karnā*.  
key *kunji*, *chābi*, *tāli*.  
kill, to *mārnā*, *mār-*  
*dālnā*, *halāk k.*, *qatl*  
*k.*; to be killed (in  
battle) *kām ānā*, *khet*  
*rahnā*, *mārā jānā*.  
kind *qism f.*, *rang*,  
*tarah f.*  
kindled, to be *bharak-*  
*rahnā*.  
kindness *sulūk*, *mehr-*  
*bāni*.  
king *bādshāh*.  
kiss, to *bosa denā*.  
know, to *kisi ko kha-*  
*bar honā*, or '*ilm*  
*honā*, or *ma'lūm*  
*honā*, *jānnā*, *pah-*  
*chānnā*.  
knowingly, *jān-bnyh-*  
*kar*.  
known *ma'lūm*; made  
known *munkashif*.

## L.

labour *mehnat*.  
ladder *sirhī*.  
lady *hibi*.  
lamp *chirāg*; (collec-  
tively) *battī chirāg*.  
land *zamin f.*  
landholder *zamīndār*.  
lands *arāzi*.  
language *zabān f.*, *bolī*.  
lash out, to *dūlattī*  
*chalānā*.  
last, at *ākhir*, *ākhir*  
*kār*; last year *pār-*  
*sāl*.  
late, to be *der karnā*;

- so late in the day *itne dñ charhe*; so late at night *itni rât gâ'e*.
- laud, to *ta'rif k.*
- laugh, to *hansû*; to get oneself laughed at *apni hansî karânâ*.
- laughing. laughter *hansi*; laughing, adj. *hansi kâ*.
- law *qânûn*, pl. *qawânîn*; laws and regulations *â'in o qânûn*.
- lazy *sust.*
- lead away (deceive) *bahkânâ, buhkâ-denâ*; taking the lead. *pesh-ravî*.
- leader *sarguroh, sardâr*; hereditary leader *bâpoti-râ'is*.
- leading-rein *bâg-dorî*.
- leap, to *kodnâ*.
- learn, *sikhnâ, parhnâ*.
- leave *rukhsat, ijâzat, chhuthi*; take leave *rukhsat honâ* or *lenâ*; give leave (dismiss in interviewing) *rukhsat karnâ*.
- leave, to (start) *chhûtnâ*; trans. *chhornâ, chhor-denâ*; leave off *bâz ânâ, chhornâ*.
- left *bâji*; to be left *rah-jânâ, parnâ*; to be left on the field *khet ruhâ*.
- length *tûl, lambâ'i*.
- lengthen *barhânâ*.
- leopard, *chitâ*.
- lest *aisâ na ho ki, ki mabâlu*.
- letter *khatt, chitthi, ruq'a, nâma*.
- library *kutub-khâna* (Ar. pl. of *kitâb*).
- lie *parnâ*.
- life *jân* f., *zindaqi*; whole life *'umr bhâr*;
- to pass life *zist karnâ, basar uugât karnâ*.
- lift *uthânâ*; to lift off the feet *le-arnâ*.
- light *roshni, nûr*.
- light *halkâ, khufîf, narm*
- lightning, *bijli*.
- like, alike *yaksân, barâbar*; prep. *misl*;
- have a liking for *shang honâ (kâ), châhnâ*.
- limb *'azw, pl. u'zâ, hâth-pâ'on*.
- limit *thikânâ, hadd* f.; to be limited to *khatm houâ (men)*.
- lion *sher*.
- listen *summâ*.
- literal *luyawi*.
- little *chhotâ, thorâ*; a little *zarra, thorâ sâ, thorâ thorâ, kuchh kuchh*.
- live, to *basar uugât karnâ, zist karnâ, rahnâ*; as long as I live *jite ji*.
- liver *jigar, kalejâ*.
- load *bojh*.
- load *lâdnâ*; to be loaded *ladnâ, lut-lenâ*.
- loadstone *saug-i-miq-nâtis*.
- local *is jugah kâ, yahân ke loyon kâ*.
- lock, *quft*.
- long *darâz, lambâ*; very long *tûl-tawil*;
- long ago *kabhî kâ, kab kâ, mudhât hûi*.
- long for *mushtâq honâ, ishitiyâq rakhnâ*.
- look, look for *dekhnâ*;
- look blankly at *munh dekhnâ*;
- looking for service *mutalâshî-i-rozgar*.
- looks, good *sûrat*.
- loose *kholnâ, chhornâ*.
- lord *khudâwund*; lords spiritual and temporal *umrâe millatî o mulkî*.
- lose (game or battle) *hârnâ*.
- loss *khasârâ, nuqsân, ziyân*; a losing concern *jis men khasârâ hotâ*; at a loss, *hairân*.
- lost, to be *jâtâ rahnâ*.
- louse *jûn* f.
- love *'aziz rakhnâ, pyâr karnâ, châhnâ*; for love *barâe ishq o mahabbat*.
- loyalty *wafâdârî, khaîr-khwâhî*.
- luckily *khûsh-qismatî se, husn-ittijâq se*;
- bad luck *bad-iqbâli, bad-qismatî*.
- lull, to *phuslânâ*.
- lying and deceit *darog o duyâ*.

## M.

- made up *banâyâ hûâ*.
- magnanimity *'ali-hîm-matî*.
- Mahomedan, Moslem, or Muslim, *musul-mân, ahl-i-islâm*.
- maintenance (of treaty) *ifâ*.
- majesty, his or her *huzûr*.
- make *banânâ, karnâ*;
- make peace *suhl kar-lenâ*;
- make a noise *gul muchânâ*;
- make both ends meet *kijâyat karnâ*;
- make a clean sweep *sajâ chat karnâ, barâbar karnâ*;
- make good a deficiency *kasr nikâlnâ*.

man <i>âdmî, âdam-zâd, mard, insân</i> ; dead man <i>murda</i> ; holy man <i>buzurg, kâmil, jogî, gusâ'in</i> ; old man <i>pîr-mard, bud-dhâ</i> .	with means <i>haisiyat se</i> .	mistake <i>galati, sahv f., khatâ</i> ; even by mistake <i>bhûlkar bhi</i> .
managed, to be <i>bannâ, ban-parnâ</i> ; if I can manage it, <i>merâ bas chale, ho-sake, bane to</i> .	meaning <i>matlub, man-shâ, ma'ni</i> .	mistaken <i>galut</i> .
management <i>intizâm, tadbîr, bandobast</i> .	meanwhile <i>itne men, ix asnâ men</i> .	mix, to, tr. <i>milâ-denâ or milânâ</i> .
manager, <i>munsarim, mohtamim</i> .	mechanical, <i>kal kâ</i> .	modesty <i>'iffat, hayâ, parda</i> .
manifest, <i>roshân, âsh-kâr</i> .	melt, to <i>pighalnâ</i> .	molestation <i>taklif</i> .
mankind <i>insân</i> .	mend, to <i>marummat karnâ</i> ; wanting mending <i>marummat-talab</i> .	moment <i>dam, lamha</i> ; in another moment <i>koi dam jâtâ hai ki</i> .
manliness <i>shujâ'at, mard-âdmîyat, jawân-mardi, wardâwaqî</i> .	mention <i>tazkira, zikr</i> .	Monday <i>Pîr</i> .
many <i>bahut, bahut se, bahuterâ, aksar</i> ; many times <i>bârhâ</i> .	mentioned <i>mazkûr</i> .	money <i>rûpaya, rûpaya-paisâ</i> ; ready money <i>naql</i> .
march <i>rawâna honâ, kûch karnâ</i> .	merchant <i>saudâgar, tâjîr</i> .	monkey <i>bandar</i> ; she monkey <i>bandri</i> .
mare <i>ghori, mâdyân</i> .	mercy <i>rahm, turahhum</i> .	month <i>mahinâ, mâh</i> .
mariner <i>jahâzi, jahâz-wâlâ, uhl-i-jahâz</i> .	mere <i>nirâ</i> .	monthly <i>mâhwârî</i> .
market <i>bâzâr, gunj</i> .	mess <i>phânda, pech, hais-bais f.</i>	moon <i>chând m</i> .
marriage <i>shâdi</i> .	messenger, <i>qâsid</i> .	morning <i>subh or subuh f.</i> ; in the morning <i>savere</i> ; cool of morning <i>khunuki</i> .
marry <i>shâdi k., byâh k., shâdi-byâh karnâ</i> .	method <i>tariqâ</i> .	morrow <i>kal, jurdâ</i> .
martyr <i>shahîd</i> .	middle, midst <i>darmi-yân, bich, bich kâ</i> .	morsel (of food) <i>laqma, nivâla</i> .
master <i>mâlik, sâhib</i> ; master of the house <i>sâhib-khâna</i> .	migration <i>naql-i-makân</i> .	mortgage, to <i>girwi rakhnâ</i> .
match, to <i>milnâ (int.)</i> .	military <i>sanjdâri, jungi, sanji</i> ; military class <i>sanji jamâ'at</i> ; military devotion <i>jangi fihriyat</i> .	mother <i>mân</i> ; mother-in-law <i>sâs</i> ; being motherless <i>be-mâ-dari</i> .
materials of war <i>sâ-mân-i-harb o zarb</i> .	milk <i>dûdh</i> ; to be in milk <i>dûdh denâ</i> .	motherless <i>be-mâ-dari</i> .
mathematics <i>riyâzi</i> .	mill, <i>chakki</i> .	motive <i>niyat, bâ'is</i> .
matter <i>umr, hât</i> ; (subject) <i>bâb, bâra</i> .	mind! <i>khahardâr, zinhâr, dekho, dekh-raho</i> ; to come to a right state of mind <i>râh-i-râst par ânâ</i> .	mount, to, <i>sowâr honâ, charh-haithnâ, tr. sowâr karnâ</i> .
Maulavi <i>muulavi</i> (Mahomedan religious title).	mingling <i>âmezish</i> .	mountain <i>pahâr, koh</i> .
mean <i>past-himmat</i> .	minor <i>adnâ</i> .	mountainous region <i>kohistân</i> .
means (of) <i>wasîla, pl. wasâ'il</i> ; by means of <i>ba-zari'a</i> ; in acc.	minute information <i>mufassal hâl</i> .	mouth <i>munh</i> ; by word of mouth <i>zahâni</i> .
	miracle, a <i>kamâl</i> .	move <i>chalnâ, hîlnâ, tr. chalnâ, hîlnâ</i> .
	misapprehension <i>galut-fekmi</i> .	movement <i>horakat</i> .
	misfortune <i>khrâbi, sakhti, musibat, tang-hâli</i> .	much <i>hisyâr, bahut</i> .
	misled, to be <i>dhokâ khânâ</i> .	Munshi <i>munshî</i> (professional writer).
		murderer <i>qâtil, khûnî</i> ; (Thug) <i>phânsiyar</i> .

murrain *wobâ*.  
 mutineer *bâgi*.  
 mutiny *gadr, bagâwat*.  
 mutual *hamdigar, ek dÛsre kâ*.

## N.

name *nâm, ism*; in our name *hamârâ nâm leke, hamâri taraf se*.  
 nation *qawm f.*; foreign nation *gair qawm*.  
 national *qawmi, ek qawm kâ*.  
 native *rahnewâlâ*; natives of India *ahl-i-Hind*; native country *watan*.  
 nature *tabî'at*.  
 near *nazdik, qarib, muttasil*.  
 nearly *qarib qarib, qarib thâ ki*.  
 necessary *zarûr, lâzim*; necessities *zurûrî'ât*.  
 neck *gardan f.*  
 need *zarûrat, hâjat*.  
 needy *mohtâj, hâjat-mand*.  
 neglect *gafât, be-par-wâ'i, be-eh'tiyâti*.  
 neglect, to *be-khabar honâ, gâjil honâ, khabar na lenâ*.  
 neighbour *hamsâya*.  
 neighbourhood (environs) *gird-nawâh f., qurb-juwâr*.  
 nephew *bhatijâ, bhân-jâ*.  
 never *kabhî nahin, har-giz nahin*; never mind *kuchh parwâ nahin*.  
 new *judid, nayâ*; (rare) *anokhâ*.  
 next *aglá, ab kâ*.  
 nice *'umda, dil-pasand, dil-kushâ, pasandida*; how nice! *kyâ khûb*.

nicely *maza men*.  
 night *rât f.*; night and day *rât din*; so late at night *itnî rât gae*; to-night *âj rât*.  
 nine *nau*.  
 nineteen *unís*.  
 no, not *nah, nahin*; do not *mat*; no one *koi nahin*; no matter how, etc., see 175.  
 nonsense *pûchbâfi*.  
 noon *do puhar f.*  
 noose *phâul*; with a noose (rope) *phând-wâlâ*  
 north *uttar, shimâl*; to the north *uttar men*.  
 northern *shimâli*; n.-western *magrabi o shimâli*.  
 nose *nâk f.*  
 nothing *kuchh nahin*.  
 notify, to *ittilâ' denâ, muttalî' karnâ*.  
 notwithstanding that *bâ-wujûdeki*.  
 number *tu'dâd. F. II.* like *takrâr*.  
 numbness *sansani*.  
 numerous *kasîru 't-tu'dâd*.  
 nylghau *nîlgâo*.

## O.

object *chîz f., matlab, garz f., murâd f.*  
 object v. *'tirâz k.*  
 objection *'tirâz f.*  
 obligations of duty *lu-wâzim*.  
 oblivion *furâmoshî*.  
 observance *ta'mil*.  
 observe *dekhnâ, mulâ-haza karnâ, ta'mil karnâ*.  
 obstacle *muzâhim*; obstacle to progress *mânî'u 'l-mohimm*.  
 obtain *pânâ, hâsil k.*

obtainable *dastyâb, muyassar*.  
 occasion *martaba*; *qâbû m., mauqa'*.  
 occupation *mashgala*.  
 occupy, to *jâ-basnâ*; occupied in *masrûf, mashgûl*.  
 occur *honâ, wâqi' honâ, wuqû' men ânâ, kisi ke khayâl men ânâ, sÛjhnâ*.  
 ocean *samundar, bahr*.  
 offence *gusûr*.  
 offend (to be unpleas-  
 sant to) *pasand na ânâ*.  
 offer, to *dene laqnâ, denâ*.  
 off-hand *sar-i-dast*; in off-hand manner *be-takalluf hokar*.  
 office *serishta, 'ohdu*; (place) *daftar*; (duty) *mansab*.  
 office-people *daftar-log, 'omulâ, or 'amla*.  
 officer of government *mansablâr, 'ohda-dâr*; superior officers *hukkâm-i-bâlâ-dust*.  
 oftentimes *aksar auqât*.  
 old, *purâna, sâhiq, qadîm*; old age *bur-hâpâ*.  
 ominous (in sense of outward indication) *ûpari*.  
 omit (in writing) *qalam-andâz karnâ*.  
 once *ek daf'a, ek martaba*; at once *jald, fûrân, jhat, jhatpat, daf'atan, bât ki bât men, yakâyak*.  
 one *ek*; one or other *ek na ek*; one by one *ek ek karke*; one another *ek dusrâ*.  
 only *sirf, fuqat, khâli*.  
 ooze *nîklâ ânâ*.

- open, to, int. *khulnâ*.  
 operation *kâr-rawâ'i*.  
 opinion *dânist f.*, *râe f.*; in my opinion *mere nazdik*.  
 opponent *mukhâlif*.  
 opportunity *mauqa'*; to think it a good opportunity *ganimat samajhnâ*; as opportunity offers *waqt pure par*.  
 oppose, to *muqâbala karnâ*, *khilâf karnâ*, *mukhâlif honâ*.  
 opposition *mukhâlifiat*.  
 oppress, to *zulm karnâ*, *sitânâ*.  
 oppressed *mazlûm*, *dabâ hûâ*.  
 or *yâ*, *nahin to*.  
 order *hukm*, *tartib*; in order *tartib se*; in order to *tâ, tâki, ki tâ, is garz se ... kî*, etc.; under the orders of *zer hukm (ke)*, *mâ teht*; good order *khûsh-nuzmi*, *husn-intizâm*; lower order *adnâ darja*.  
 orderly *urdali*.  
 organization *bandobast*, *intizâm*.  
 ornaments *zawar*.  
 orphanage (state of) *yatimi*.  
 outbreak *fasâd*, *dangâ fusâd*, *halwâ*.  
 over *ûpar*, *hâlâ*.  
 overland *khushki ki râh*.  
 ox *gâo*; slaughter of oxen *gâo-kushi*.
- P.**  
 pace *châl f.*  
 pacification *amn o amân*.  
 pain *dard*; 'on pain
- of ' may be occasionally rendered by the use of *warna*.  
 pair (of horses) *jorâ*.  
 pale of forgiveness *châtâ-i-tarahhum*.  
 Pandit *Pandit* (Hindû religious title).  
 panegyrist *mudh-khwân*; warmest panegyrist *khûss mudh-khwân*.  
 panic *sahm*; panic-stricken *chhakke-chhût* (metaphor from dice).  
 Panjab *Panjâb* (five waters).  
 paper *kâguz*.  
 Paradise *jannat*.  
 paralysed, to be *hâth pân phûl-jânâ*.  
 parda *parda* (custom of veiling and secluding women).  
 pardon *'ajie*, *darguzar*, *bakhshish*, *ma'firat*.  
 pardon, v. *darguzar karnâ* or *furmânâ*, *bakhshnâ*; to get pardoned *mo'âj' karânâ*.  
 parents *mâhâp*.  
 part *hissa*; act a prominent part *pesh-dasti karnâ*.  
 partaker *sharik*; partakers in murder *shurakâ-e-qatl*.  
 particularly *khasûsan*, *khâskar*.  
 partnership *shirkat*.  
 party *furq*, *furîq*; opposite party *furîq-i-mukhâlif*; make a party among *sâzi-shen karnâ*.  
 pass (large) *dura*; (small) *ghâtî*.  
 pass, v. *guzarnâ*; pass
- (a law) *jari karnâ*, *waz' karnâ*.  
 passage *guzâr*.  
 passport *châlân*.  
 past tense *sigu-i-mâzi*, *mâzi*.  
 path (track) *pay-dundî*.  
 pathless *be-râh*.  
 patience *sabr*, *tahammul*.  
 patient *burd-bârâna*.  
 patient (noun) *mariz*, *bimâr*.  
 patrol, or parade, *gasht karnâ*.  
 pauper *khûli hâth*, *muf-lis*.  
 pay *tankhwâh f.*  
 pay, v. *adâ karnâ*; pay up *chukânâ*, *chukâ-denâ*.  
 peace and harmony *amn-châin*.  
 peaceful industry, *sannâ'i-i-sulh* (lit. arts of peace).  
 peacefully *sulh o sudûd men* (lit. in peace and rectitude).  
 pearl *moti m.*  
 peep in *jhânkâ*.  
 peg (of tent) *mekh f.*, *khonti*.  
 people *log*, *rahnewâle*, *bâshinda*, pl. *bâshindagân*, *khulâ'iq*.  
 perch, to *baithnâ*.  
 perform, to *anjâm denâ*, *adâ karnâ*.  
 perhaps *shâyud*.  
 peril (critical circumstances) *hâdisa*.  
 period *'arsa*, *zânânu*, *waqt*.  
 permission *parwânagi*, *ijâzat*.  
 permit *gawârâ karnâ*, *ijâzat denâ*.  
 perpendicular *kharâ*.  
 perplexed to be *hairân*

- houâ, hairat men*  
*houâ, hairs-bais men*  
*houâ.*  
 person *âdui, shakhs*; in  
 person *bi-zât-i-khâss,*  
*bi-zâtîhi, bi-zât-i-*  
*khûd*; some persons  
*ba'z, ba'z loj.*  
 petition 'arzi, 'arz-  
*dâst f.*  
 picked *chûnâ hûâ.*  
 piece *tukrâ*; piece of  
 cruelty *zulm*; in  
 pieces *purze purze*;  
 to be dashed in  
 pieces *chiknâ chûr*  
*ho-jânâ.*  
 pig *sûr.*  
 pitch (tent) *kharâ*  
*karnâ*; to be pitched  
*nasab honâ.*  
 pity *tars.*  
 philosophy 'ilm-i-hik-  
*mat, hikmat.*  
 physiognomist *qiyâfa-*  
*shinâs.*  
 physiognomy *qiyâfu.*  
 place *jagah f., makân,*  
*jâ f.*; (halting-place)  
*maqâm, manzil f.*  
 place, v. *rakhna, rakh-*  
*denâ*; take place  
*wuqû' men ânâ.*  
 plain *maidân.*  
 plain *zâhir, âshkâr*;  
 (simple) *be-sâkhata*;  
 plain fact *sâf bât.*  
 plaintiff *muddûi.*  
 plan *tajwiz, tadbîr.*  
 plant, to *nasab karnâ.*  
 plates and dishes  
 (crocery) *bartan.*  
 please *pasand ânâ (ko),*  
*khûsh karnâ.*  
 pleased *khûsh.*  
 pleasant *pasandila.*  
 pleasure (will) *marzî.*  
 plight *hâdisa*; in this  
 plight *yeh hâl dekh-*  
*kar.*  
 plod wearily behind
- pâon pâon ghasittâ*  
*hûâ chulnâ.*  
 pluck, to (fruit) *tornâ.*  
 plunder, to *lût-lenâ.*  
 plundering *lûterâ adj.*  
 and n.  
 poisonous *zahr-âlûda.*  
 pole (of a tent) *chobâ.*  
 police *polis, ahâl'ân-i-*  
*polis.*  
 policeman *thâna-wâlâ.*  
 police-officer *thânadâr.*  
 pomp and luxury *karr*  
*o farr.*  
 pony *tattû.*  
 poor *garib, be-châra,*  
*muftis, mohtâj.*  
 popular (customary)  
*ma'mûli.*  
 population, *âbâdi.*  
 porridge *ghûnghniyân*  
 pl.  
 portion *hissa.*  
 possession *qabzu.*  
 possible *mumkin*; if  
 possible *hosake, bane*  
*to.*  
 pot *lotâ.*  
 power *iqtidâr, ikhti-*  
*yâr, qâbu, qabzâ,*  
*bas*; to have power  
*bas chulnâ.*  
 practice (as opposed  
 to theory) 'amal;  
 (habit) 'âdat, dastûr.  
 practised, to be *hûâ*  
*karnâ.*  
 pray, to *du'â mângnâ.*  
 prayer *du'â, namâz f.*  
 prayer-mat (or carpet)  
*jâe-namâz f.*  
 precincts of village  
*bastion ki âbâdi.*  
 preconcerted *ba-itti-*  
*fâq-i-hamdigar.*  
 precursor *agwân, pesh-*  
*rau.*  
 prefer, to *muquddam*  
*samajhnâ.*  
 pregnant *gâbhin.*  
 prejudice *ta'assub.*
- preparation *tayyâri.*  
 prepare to be off, to  
*chalne laqnâ.*  
 present, *hâl, hâzir,*  
*muwjûd*; of the pre-  
 sent day *hâl kâ*; at  
 present *filhâl, bilfe'l.*  
 present, to *pesh karnâ,*  
*nizr guzrânâ*; pre-  
 sent oneself *hâzir*  
*honâ.*  
 presents *tohfa-tahâ'if*;  
 'by these presents'  
*is qirtâs ke rû se.*  
 preserve, to *mahfûz*  
*rakhnâ.*  
 preserved *mahfûz.*  
 presidency *hâtâ (ehâtâ)*  
 pressed hard (driven  
 to bay) *hârnâ.*  
 pressure (external)  
*bâhar kâ dabâo.*  
 pretext *bahâna.*  
 prevail, to *riwaj honâ,*  
*muruwaj honâ.*  
 prevent, to *rok-rakhnâ.*  
 prevention *insidâd.*  
 prey *shikâr.*  
 price *qimat, mol, dâm.*  
 pride *nakhwat.*  
 prince *wâlî, ra'is,*  
*shâhzâda.*  
 principal party *asal*  
*jum'ât.*  
 printing (type) *chhapâ*;  
 (press) *chhâpâ-*  
*khâna, matha'.*  
 prisoner *quidi*; to be  
 taken prisoner *quid*  
*ho-jânâ.*  
 privilege (leave) *rukhsat-ri'âyati.*  
 prize, to *qudr karnâ.*  
 proceed *chalnâ*; 'pro-  
 ceed through a  
 place' may often be  
 translated by *honâ.*  
 proceedings 'amal-dar-  
*âmud, kâr-rawâ'i.*  
 proclamation *manâdi*

(by voice), *ishtehâr*  
(by writing).  
 profess, to *izhâr karnâ*.  
 profession *peshâ*.  
 proficiency *muhârat*,  
*iste'dâd f.*  
 proficient, to be *mahâ-  
 rat rakhnâ*.  
 profit *nafî*, *jàida*,  
*manfa'at*.  
 prohibition *mumân'at*.  
 promise *wa'da*.  
 promise, to *wa'da kar-  
 nâ*.  
 promotion *taraqqi*.  
 prompt *ta'lim denâ*,  
*batânâ*, *butlânâ*.  
 property *mâl*; (spe-  
 cial) *khassiyat*;  
 having property  
*mâldâr*; landed prop-  
 erty *zamindârî*.  
 propitiatory offerings  
 and sacrifices *nî-  
 chhâwar aur balidân*.  
 proprietor *mâlik*.  
 prospect, to be in *dar-  
 pesh honâ*.  
 prospectus *ishtehâr*.  
 prosper, to *kisi bāt  
 men nafî' honâ (ko)*  
 prosperity *behtari*,  
*iqbâl*, *iqbâlmandî*,  
*sa'âdat*, *furâghâlî*.  
 protection *himâyat*,  
*muhâfazat*, *hifâzat*.  
 proud *magrûr*.  
 proved *sâbit*.  
 provide *mohaiyâ karnâ*.  
 provinces *mamâlik pl.*  
*of mamlakat, subajât*  
*pl. of saba*; North-  
 West Provinces *ma-  
 mâlik magrabi o shi-  
 mâli*.  
 provision *ba-ham rasi*.  
 public, the *khâss o*  
*'amm, jumhûr-i-anâm*.  
 publish, to *jâri kar-  
 denâ*.  
 published, to be *mush-*

*tahar honâ or kiyâ  
 jânâ*.  
 punishment *sazâ, sazâ-  
 yâhî, siyâsat, sarkobî*.  
 purpose *irâda, niyat*,  
*qasd*; to no purpose  
*nâ-huqq*; answer the  
 purpose *kâfî honâ*.  
 pursue, to *ta'auqub  
 karnâ*.  
 put *rakhnâ*; put the  
 hand to *hâth dâlnâ*;  
 to put a spoke in  
 wheel of *harj dâlnâ*,  
*khalul dâlnâ, pahi e  
 men ot arâ-denâ*.  
 put down *juro karnâ*,  
*bund kar-denâ*; to be  
 put down, *mauquf  
 honâ, nist o nâ-hud  
 ho-jânâ*.  
 put off *mauquf rakhnâ*.  
 put up *qiyâm karnâ*.

## Q.

quality *sifat, khâssi-  
 yat*; qualities *ausâf*  
*pl. of wasf*; noble  
 qualities *sharâfat*.  
 quarrel or quarrelling  
*jhagrâ, larâi*.  
 quarrel, to *larnâ*.  
 quarter *pâo, chahârûm*,  
 (of town) *mahalla*.  
 quarterly *seh-mâhivâr*  
 (lit. three monthly).  
 queen *malika, malika  
 mo'azzama*.  
 question *sââl*.  
 quick of resource *phur-  
 tilâ, tez, tez-fehm*,  
*zahin, zûd-fehm*,  
*hoshyâr*.  
 quiet *gurib*.  
 quieting, n. *taskin*.  
 quietly *chupke, âhista*.  
 quite *bilkull, mutlaqun*,  
*mutlaq, mahz*.  
 quote *kahnâ, bayân k.*

## R.

race, *qaum f.*  
 race along, to *daurâ  
 ânâ*.  
 rage, to *tezi karnâ*.  
 rail *rel, rel-gâri*.  
 railway travelling *rel  
 par sowar honâ, rel  
 kâ safar*.  
 rain *pâni m., menh, bâ-  
 rish*.  
 rain, to *barasnâ*.  
 rainy season *barsât f.*  
 range (of hills) *silsila*.  
 rank *rutba, darja*;  
 rank of a common  
 soldier *rutba-i-piyâ-  
 dagi*.  
 rare *kamyâb, nâdir*,  
*anokhâ*.  
 rascal *makkâr, bad-zât*,  
*bad-mu'âsh*.  
 ration *râtib*.  
 ravine *nâlâ*.  
 reach *puhunchnâ*.  
 read *parhnâ*; read  
 aloud *pukârke parh-  
 nâ*.  
 ready *tayyâr, hâzir*,  
*mohayyâ, maujûd*,  
*ânâdâ*; ready at an-  
 swering *hâzir-jawâb*.  
 real *asli*.  
 realised, to be *'amal  
 men ânâ, honâ, ho-  
 jânâ*.  
 really *huqîyat men*.  
 rear *pâlnâ*.  
 reason *sabah, wajh f.*,  
*bâ'is*; without reason  
*nâ-huqq*; for divers  
 weighty reasons *ba-  
 wujûh-i-kâmila*.  
 reason, to *hujjat karnâ*.  
 rebel *bâgi, mufsid*.  
 rebellion, open *bagâ-  
 wat-i-fâsh*.  
 rebuff, decided *sâf ja-  
 wâb*.



- receive *lenâ, qabûl k., milnâ (ko)*.  
 reception *istiqbâl*.  
 reckon *ginnâ, hisâb k.*  
 recognise, to *pahchân-nâ, pahchân-lenâ*.  
 reconciliation *safâi*.  
 recourse to arms *hath-yâr uthânâ*  
 recovery *isfâq*.  
 recruit *âram pânâ*.  
 recruit, to (military) *bhartî kar-lenâ*.  
 reduction (conquest) *taskhîr*.  
 refer, to *mansûba kar-nâ, hawâla denâ*.  
 reflect, to *sochnâ, gaur karnâ*.  
 reform *islâh f., tahzib*.  
 refuge, to take *panâh lenâ, panâhgîr honâ*.  
 refund (cost of outlay) *qimat*.  
 refusal (flat) *sâf jawâb*  
 refuse *inkâr karnâ*.  
 regard with attachment *'azîz rakhnâ*; in regard to *ba-nisbat, nazar bar ân*.  
 regent *khudîr*.  
 regiment (of foot) *pal-tan f.*; (of cavalry) *risâla*.  
 regret, to *pachhtânâ*.  
 regular *bâ-zâbita*  
 rein *bâg, f.*; leading-rein *bâg-dorî*.  
 reject, to *nafrat karnâ*.  
 rejoicing, matter of *khûshî ki bât*.  
 rejoicings *jashn*.  
 relation *rishtadâr*.  
 relation, relationship *nisbat, rishta-nâtâ, ta'alluq*.  
 relations *aqârib*.  
 reliance *'etibâr*; firm reliance *yaqîn-ikûlli*.
- religion *mazhab*.  
 religious *mazhabi*; religious mendicant *faqîr, jojî*.  
 remain *rahmâ*; to remain the same *ba-dastûr, banâ-rahmâ*; remain at post *ta'inât rahmâ*; remain subject to *mutî rah-nâ*.  
 remedy *tadbîr*.  
 remember, to *yâd rakhnâ* or *karnâ*; to be remembered *yâd-honâ, or yâd-ânâ, yâd parnâ*.  
 remembrance *yâdyârî*.  
 remove, to *hatânâ, le-jânâ*.  
 removed, to be *daf' honâ*.  
 rent *kirâya*; to pay no rent at all *kirâya kî ek kaurî na denâ*.  
 repair, to put in *marammât kar-rakhnâ*.  
 repent, to *tamba karnâ*.  
 report *kai'fiyat*; written report *tahrîrî kai'fiyat*; verbal report *zabânî kai'fiyat*; (rumour) *afwâh, f.*; false reports *jhûth müth afwâhen*.  
 represent, to *'arz karnâ*.  
 repression *sarkobî*.  
 reprimand *chashm-munâi*.  
 reputed *mashhûr*.  
 request *darkhwâst f., iltimâs*.  
 rescinded, to be *man-sûkh honâ*.  
 rescue, to *chhurânâ, chhurâ-denâ*.  
 reside *rahmâ, tashrif rakhnâ*.  
 residence *bûd o bâsh, f.*; length of residence *muddat-i-qiyâm*.
- resolve (forcibly) *irâ-da-i-musammam kar-lenâ*.  
 respect *'izzat, adab, lihâz*; with respect *bâ-adab*; with respect to *ba-nisbat*; in all respects *bahama-wujûh*.  
 respectfully *adab se*.  
 restore, to *wâpas kar-nâ*.  
 result *natîja*.  
 retail dealing *khurda-furoshî*.  
 retainer *mulâzim*.  
 retire *hatnâ*.  
 retrace one's steps, to *ulte pân phirnâ*.  
 retreat *bhâgnâ, hatnâ*.  
 retribution *tudârak*.  
 return *phirnâ, phir ânâ, lautnâ, wâpas jânâ*; return to the path of duty *rûbarâh hojânâ*.  
 return-hire *phirtâ*.  
 revenue *mâlgûzâri, mahsil pl. of mahsûl*; revenue settlement *bandobast*.  
 reverence, to *mâmmâ*.  
 revolutions *ingilâbat*.  
 reward *silâ*; best reward *pûrâ silâ*; reward (in heaven) *sawâb*.  
 rich *daulatmand, mûldâr*.  
 ride, to *sowâr honâ*.  
 right *haqq pl. huqûq, mansâb*; (in good order) *thîk, durust, ba-hâl*; (proper) *rawâ, thîk, râst*; by right of *ba-mâjîb*.  
 righteousness *bhalâi, râstî*.  
 ring *angûthî*.  
 ripe *pakkâ, lâl lâl*.  
 rise *ûthnâ*; (moon) *khet karnâ, nikalnâ*.

rise up, to <i>uth kharâ honâ</i> .	rush <i>lapaknâ</i> ; rush in, to <i>ghusnâ</i> .	scorch, to <i>jhulas-denâ</i> .
risk, or risky affair <i>jokhim f., jokhon f.</i> ; (responsibility) <i>zim-maulâri</i> .		score <i>kori</i> ; 'a good score,' <i>pûre bâis</i> , the full twenty-two, ref. to number of Imperial provinces—(proverbial).
rival <i>harif</i> .	<b>S.</b>	scratch at <i>kureduâ</i> .
river <i>daryâ m., nadi</i> .	sacred <i>muqaddis</i> .	scream out, to <i>chillânâ</i> .
river-marshes <i>daryâ ki tarâi</i> .	sacrifice, to <i>halâl kar-nâ, zabh k., qûrbân k., khudâ ki râh men denâ</i> ; to be sacrificed, <i>halâl honâ</i> , etc.	screech, to <i>chikhnâ</i> .
road <i>sarak f., râsta</i> .	safe and sound <i>sahih-salâmat</i> .	scrupulously <i>bu-kamâl chtiyât</i> .
robber (highwayman) <i>rahzan</i> .	safety <i>hifâzat</i> .	search <i>just-jû, tulâshi</i> ; to search <i>tulâsh kar-nâ, dhündhnâ</i> .
roll down, to <i>dhulkâ-denâ, lurhkanâ</i> .	sagacity <i>firâsat</i> .	second <i>dusrâ</i> .
romantic <i>fusâna-âmez</i> .	sagacity <i>firâsat</i> .	secret <i>chhipâ hûâ, po-shidu</i> .
root <i>jar f.</i>	said (aforesaid) <i>maz-kûr, mausûf</i> .	secured, to be (attained) <i>paidâ honâ</i> .
rope, skein or ring of <i>ânti, rassi ki ânti</i> .	sail <i>pâl</i> .	security <i>hifâzat, be-khutri</i> .
rough-rider <i>châbuk-sowâr</i> (lit. whip-horseman).	sail, to <i>jahâz chulânâ</i> (navigate).	seduce, to <i>wargalânâ</i> .
round (circuit) <i>pher</i> .	sailor <i>jahâzi</i> .	seem to be <i>ma'lûm honâ</i> .
round <i>gol, ba-shakl-i-kura</i> (globe-shaped).	saint <i>kâmil</i> .	seize, to <i>zabt kar-lenâ, chhin-lenâ</i> ; seize upon <i>lipat-jânâ</i> .
round, adv. <i>gird</i> ; to turn round <i>ghumnâ, mur-ânâ</i> .	salutation <i>salâm, sâhib-salâmat</i> .	select <i>chûnnâ, muntakhab karnâ, intikhâb karnâ</i> .
route <i>râsta</i> ; maritime route <i>samundar kâ râsta</i> ; direct route <i>sîdhâ râsta</i> .	salute, to <i>sâhib-salâmat kurnâ</i> .	selected <i>muntakhab</i> .
routed, to be <i>shikast khânâ</i> .	sanctioned <i>manzûr</i> .	sell <i>firokht k., bechnâ, bech-dâlnâ, bai' k.</i>
rub <i>malnâ</i> ; to have rubbed down (of a horse) <i>malwânâ</i> .	sand <i>ret, f.</i>	send <i>bhejnâ</i> ; send for <i>mangâ-bhejnâ</i> ; send word <i>kahlâ-bhejnâ</i> .
rubbish (trash) <i>khurâ-fât f., raddi</i> .	sandy, <i>rejistâni</i> .	sentence <i>faisala</i> .
rude <i>jangali</i> .	Satan <i>shaitân</i> .	separate <i>alag, alag alag, judâ, judâ judâ, alag thalag</i> .
rule <i>qâ'idâ pl. qawâ'id</i> ; rules 'aqâ'id pl. of 'aqidu; rules of honour <i>qawâ'id-i-izzat-purwari</i> ; (government) <i>hukûmat</i> .	satisfaction <i>itmînân</i> .	ser of 2 lbs <i>ser</i> .
ruler <i>hâkim</i> .	satisfied <i>râzi, ser, ser-chashm, khûsh</i> .	servant <i>naukar</i> ; servants (collectively) <i>naukar châkur, khâdim, mulâzim</i> .
ruling <i>furmân-rawâ</i> .	saucy <i>shokh</i> .	service <i>khidmat, naukari, mulâzimat</i> ; take service <i>naukari karnâ</i> ; with inten-
rumour <i>afwâh f.</i> (Ar. pl. of <i>jûh</i> 'mouth').	save, to <i>bachânâ, najât denâ</i> .	
run <i>daurnâ</i> .	say, to <i>kahnâ, kah-denâ</i> ; so to say <i>goyâ</i> ; that is to say <i>ya'ni</i> .	
	scarcity of supplies <i>qillat-i-rasad</i> .	
	scare away <i>hushkârnâ</i> ; scared, to be <i>ghabrânâ</i> ; to be scared at <i>panâh mangnâ</i> (lit. ask refuge from).	
	scattered <i>chinn bhinn hokar</i> .	
	school <i>maktab, madrasa</i> .	

- tion to take service *ba-jihat-i-mulâzimat*.  
 set on foot, to *bar-pâ kar-denâ*.  
 set upon, to *bithânâ* (make sit).  
 settle (on course of action) *sulâh karnâ*; (colonise) *âbâd karnâ*.  
 seventieth *sattarwân*.  
 several *ka'i ek, kitne ek, chand*.  
 severe *balâ kâ*.  
 severity (e.g. of heat) *shiddat*.  
 sex *jinsiyat*.  
 shade *âyâ*.  
 shake, to *hilânâ*.  
 shame (sense of) *gairat, sharm*.  
 shameless *be-hayâ*.  
 shape *shakl f., sûrat*.  
 share *hissâ*; to give a share in (work) *dukl denâ*.  
 shareholder *hissadâr*.  
 sheep *bheri*.  
 shining *tâbân*.  
 ship *jahâz*.  
 shoe *jûti*.  
 shoe, to (a horse) *na'ibandî karnâ*; to have shod *na'ibandî kar-wânâ*.  
 shoe-maker *mochî*.  
 shoot *bundûq marnâ*.  
 shop *dukân f.*  
 shore *kinâru*.  
 shoreless *be-kinâr*.  
 short, in *garz, alqissa*; *qissa mukhtasar, qissa kotâh*.  
 shout *chillânâ, pukâr-nâ, âwâz denâ*.  
 show, to *batânâ, batûdenâ*.  
 show, to keep for *kotal rakhnâ*.  
 shrine *mazâr*.  
 shudder, to *phurahri lenâ*.  
 shut up, to *band kar-denâ*.  
 sick man *bimâr, marîz*.  
 side *turaf f., jâmb f.*, on all sides *châron taraf*; both sides (Ar. dual) *turufûn*.  
 sigh, to *âh kurnâ*.  
 sight, to come in *nazar ânâ, nazar parnâ, dikhâ'i denâ*; out of sight *nazar se gâ'ib*.  
 sign (gram.) *'ulâmat*.  
 sign, to *dustkhatt karnâ*; signed, to be *dustkhatt honâ*.  
 signal *ishâru*.  
 signature *dust-khatt*.  
 silence *khâmoshi*.  
 silence, v. *chup kurâ-nâ*.  
 silent *chup-châp, khâmosh*.  
 silken *resham kâ*.  
 silver *chândî*.  
 simoon *bâd-i-samûm*.  
 simple *be-sâkhta*.  
 simplicity *sâdagî, sâdadîlî, be-sâkhtagî*.  
 simultaneously *ma'an*.  
 sin *gunâh*.  
 sine *quâ non shart f.*  
 single *ek*.  
 singular *nirâlâ*.  
 sink, to *dubonâ*; int. *dûbnâ*.  
 sinner *gunahgâr*.  
 sire *bâp*.  
 sit *baithnâ*; (of a council) *barâbar ho rah-nâ, ijlâs farmânâ*.  
 situated *wâqî'*.  
 skill *humar*; military skill *jang-âvari*.  
 slavery *golâmî*.  
 sleep *khwâb, sotâ*.  
 sleep, to *sonâ*; to go to sleep *so-rahnâ*.  
 slide, to *khisalnâ*.  
 slight (simple) *qalil*.  
 slightest, in such phrases as the slightest cause, mis-take, etc. *khâk bhî, zarra bhî, kuchh bhî*.  
 slink off, to *dabaknâ*.  
 slip, to *lagzish khânâ, khisalnâ*.  
 sloth *susti*.  
 slowly *qadam qadam*.  
 Slowpace, Mr. *miyûn sust-qadam*.  
 sluggish *bhaddâ*.  
 small *chhotâ, khurdu*; small and great *chhote bare*.  
 small-pox *chichak f.*  
 snake *sâmp*.  
 social advancement *husn-akhlâq kî tarraqqî*.  
 society *sohbat*; affairs of society *qaunimo'âmalat*.  
 solace *tashaffî, tasallî-i-khâtir*.  
 soldier *sipâhî*.  
 soldiery *sipâh*.  
 soliloquise *dil men bâten karnâ*.  
 some (pl.) *ba'z*.  
 someone *ko'i*.  
 something *kuchh*.  
 somewhere *kahîn*; somewhere or other *kahîn na kahîn*.  
 son *betâ, aulâd, furzand*.  
 songs *gît bhajan*.  
 soon *jald, thori der men*.  
 soporific *khwâbâwar*.  
 sordid *khasîb*.  
 soul *rûh f., nafs*; (human being) *âdam-zâa*.  
 south *janûb*.  
 southern *janûbî*.  
 span *bâlîsh f.*  
 speak *bolnâ*; to speak of *nâm lenâ, zikr*

karnâ; so to speak goyâ.	station, to ta'inât kar- nâ, lagânâ.	be too strong for gâlib honâ (par).
special khâss.	statement bayân, kai- fiyat.	stuff in, to thongnâ.
specially khâskar.	staunch, to be tas- fiya honâ.	sturdy hattâ-bakkâ.
specimen namânu.	steal, to chori karnâ; to be stolen chori honâ.	style 'ebârat.
spectacle tamâshâ.	steamboat dhuwân- kash.	subject matlab, pl. matâlîb; ra'iyat, pl. ra'âyâ f.
speed raftâr f.	stem (tree) durakht.	subject to ba-ri'âyat (ke), taht-i-hukûmat; subject to the equi- table demands of the state ba-shart adâ karnê mutâlaba-i-sar- kâri ke.
spend sarf k., kharch k.; to spend time at a place jâ-baithnâ.	stench gandugi.	submit sir dharnâ, sir jhukânâ; submit to authority farmân- bardâri karnâ.
spirit ji m., himnat; high spirit 'âlî him- matî.	stimulate, to taruqqi karnâ.	subsist, to jâri rahnâ.
split, to chîrnâ.	stir, to, intr. hîlnâ.	success kârbarâri, kânyâbi, iqbal.
spoil, to bigârnâ; de- spoil lûtnâ	stone, rock patthar.	succession, in quick ûpar tale.
spot dâg; central spot sadr maqâm.	stoop, to sir jhuknâ.	successor jâ-nishîn.
spread, intr. phailnâ; tr. bichhânâ, phail- ânâ; (reports) urânâ; to be spread (of news) zabânzud honâ.	stop, to, tr. band kar- nâ, maugûj k., zabt k., roknâ.	such aisâ.
spring, to lupuknâ.	story qissa, kahâni, dûstân f.	suddenly nâgûh, ekâek dûj'atam, bêt ki bêt men; (compara- tively) thore dinon men.
spring bahâr f., mau- sim-i-bahâr.	straight mustaqim; (in a direct line) sidhû.	suffer inconvenience, to taklif uthânâ.
spring harvest rabî f.	strangle, to phânsi denâ.	sufferer muhtalâe-musi- bat.
spy jâsûs.	stratagem dhab.	suggest, to salâh denâ.
squandered barbâd	straw bichhâli.	suitor mustagis, sâ il.
stability istehkâm.	stream nadi, daryâ.	summon, to talab karnâ, bulânâ.
stable istabal.	street gali, kâcha.	summoned bulâyâ hûâ.
stage (halt) mawzil f.	strength mazbûti, zor, istehkâm; (of go- vernment) iqtidâr; (grace) taufiq; at- tain strength afsûn honâ.	summons talabî, bulâ- wâ; I was not sum- moned meri talabi nahîn hûi.
stain dâg.	strengthening mazbûti (fortifying).	sun âftâb, dhûp, f.
standard jhandâ, ni- shân.	stretch out darâz karnâ.	superintendence, gene- ral bâlâ i intizâm.
standing kharâ.	strike marnâ; int. (clock) bajnâ, causal bajânâ.	superstitious pûch-pa- rust.
star sitârâ.	striking mark, 'alâmat- i-'alâniya; to be on the stroke of (clock), bajû chahnâ.	supplied, to be (of wants) raj' honâ.
stare tâknâ.	strong zabardast, zor- âwar; very strong, or so strong as to be unlimited be-hudd; to	
start, to rawâna honâ, chalâ-jânâ, chul de- nâ; to be started (set on foot) jâri honâ, burpâ honâ; at starting chalte waqt.		
starving bhûkhâ, bhûk se be-tâb hokar, bhukon mârâ, kûl kû mârâ.		
state riyâsat; (condi- tion) hâl, hâlat, ah- wâl.		

- supplies *rasad f.*, *rasad kâ sâmnâ*; control over supplies, *rasad-rasâni*.
- support, to *sambhâlenâ*.
- supposition *farz*.
- surplus revenue *bachat*, *f.*
- surprising *ta'ajjub ki bât*.
- surrender oneself, to *apne ta'in hawâla karnâ*.
- surround, to *ghernâ*; to be surrounded *ghirnâ*, *ghir-jânâ*.
- survey *paimâish*.
- suspected of *muttahim*.
- suspend, to *manquf k. band karnâ*, *mu'attal rakhnâ*.
- suspicion *gumân*; strong suspicion *gumân-i-gâlib*.
- swear, to *qasam khânâ*.
- sweat *pasinâ*.
- swell, to *phûlnâ*, *phûljânâ*.
- swerve from allegiance *munharif honâ*.
- sympathise, to *hamdardi karnâ*.
- T.**
- table *mez f.*
- Tâj (Agra), *Tâj mahall*.
- take *lenâ*; take air *hawâ khânâ*; to take warning *'ibrat pakarnâ*; to take up in arms *god men uthâlenâ*; to cause to take off *utrwânâ*.
- talent *liyâgat*.
- talk *bolnâ*, *bâten k.*, *bât-chit k.*, *gustgû k.*; to talk as much as a man pleases *lâkh kahnâ*.
- tear, to *phârnâ*; tear in pieces *phâr dâlnâ*; tear up *ukhârnâ*; tear off *bhâgnâ*; tear about *bhâgâ bhâgâ phirnâ*.
- tears *ansû*; to shed copious tears *âth âth ânsû ronâ*, *be-tahâshâ ronâ*.
- telegraph office, *târ-ghar*.
- temper *mizûj*; bad-tempered *bad-mizûj*.
- temperament *tabî'at*; natural temperament *zâti tabî'at*.
- tempest *tûsân*.
- ten *das*; ten miles off *das mil ke fâsila par*.
- tenant *kirâya-dâr*.
- tender-hearted, *narm-dîl*.
- tent *khîma*, *dehra*.
- tenth *daswân*.
- terms, on the old *bad-dustûr-i-sâbiq*.
- terrible *khûnkhwâr*, *gazab kâ*.
- territory *'âlâqa*, *qalam-rau*, *mamâlik*.
- test *shart f.*
- thanks *shukr*, *shukrguzârî*; special thanks *khâss shukariya*.
- thief *chor*, *khâ'in*; professional thief *chori-pesha*.
- thing (general sense) *bât f.*, *anr*, *chîz f.*, *shai f.*
- think *sochnâ*, *samajhnâ*, *jânnâ*; to think dear *girân ânknâ*.
- third *tisrâ*.
- thirst *tishnagî*, *pyâs f.*
- thirsty *pyâsû*; to be thirsty *pyâs laqnâ*, *pyâs ma'lûm honâ*.
- thirty *tis*, *si* (Pers.); for thirty years, *si-sâla*.
- then *phir*, *tab*, *us waqt*.
- thence *ûdhar se*, *wahân se*.
- theory (as opposed to practice) *'ilm*.
- there *wahân*, *us jagah*.
- therefore *is li'e*, *is wâste*, *is sabab se*, *lihazâ*.
- thought *khayâl*, *fikr*; thought of self *apnâ matlab*, *khûd-garzi*; thoughts of the heart *mâ-fi-zamir*.
- thousand *hazâr*; thousands *hazârhâ*, *hazâron*.
- threaded, to be *piroyâ jânâ*.
- threatening *dhamki*.
- three *tin*; all three *tinnon*.
- thrive *chalnâ*.
- thriving trade *chalti dukân*.
- throat *halq*.
- throne *takht*; dethrone *takht se utârnâ*.
- throw, to *phenknâ*.
- tie, being bound by ties *wâ-bastagî*.
- tiger *sher*.
- tillage *kheti-kiyârî*.
- time *waqt*, *zamâna*, *martaba*, *daf'a*; (occasion) *mauqa'*; once on a time *ek martaba*; in due time *ba-waqt*, *ma'mûli waqt par*; from time to time *waqt ba-waqt*; in old times *zamâna sâbiq men*; after a time, *chand muddat ke ba'd*.
- tired, to be *thaknâ*, *thak-jânâ*, *mânda honâ*.
- title *laqab*, *khitâb*.
- tobacco *tambâkû*.

to-day, <i>āj, āj ke dīn.</i>	tree, <i>darakht.</i>	make to understand <i>samjhānā.</i>
together <i>bāham, ikatthā,</i> <i>mīlkar, sāth, samet.</i>	trembling <i>ra'sha.</i>	understanding <i>samajh</i> <i>f. ; (condition) shart.</i>
toil <i>jān-kāhi, mēhnat.</i>	tremendous <i>balā kā,</i> <i>gazab kā.</i>	undoubtedly <i>be-shakk.</i>
toll (tax) <i>mahsūl.</i>	tribe <i>got f. ; members</i> <i>of tribe goti, got-wāle.</i>	unfortunate <i>kam-nasīb.</i>
tomb <i>turbat, maqbara,</i> <i>qabr f.</i>	tribute <i>khirāj.</i>	ungrateful <i>na-shukr.</i>
to-morrow, <i>kal.</i>	true <i>sach, sahih.</i>	unhappy <i>dil-shikasta.</i>
tongue <i>zabān f. ; oily-</i> <i>tongued charb-zabān.</i>	trust, to <i>itminān karnā ;</i> <i>placed in trust amān-</i> <i>atan musawwaz.</i>	<i>dil-tang, be-dil, pare-</i> <i>shān-khātir, ranjida,</i> <i>afsurda.</i>
tons of ice <i>lākhon man</i> <i>barāf.</i>	truth <i>sidq ; in truth</i> <i>fil-wāqi', sach pūchho</i> <i>to.</i>	uninstructed <i>gair-</i> <i>ta'lim-yāfta.</i>
tooth <i>dānt.</i>	try, to <i>koshish karnā,</i> <i>āzmānā.</i>	unintelligible, to be <i>samjhā'i na denā.</i>
top <i>choti.</i>	tuck in the tail, to <i>dum dabānā.</i>	united <i>munsalik.</i>
top (of trees) <i>bāg.</i>	tumult <i>fasād.</i>	unkindness <i>be-rahmī.</i>
torment, tease <i>sitānā.</i>	turban <i>pagri.</i>	unmanageable <i>nā-</i> <i>hamwār</i>
tortoise <i>kachhwā.</i>	turn <i>bāri ; in turn bāri</i> <i>bāri men.</i>	unpleasant <i>nā-pasand.</i>
toss away, to <i>phenk-</i> <i>dālnā, phenk-denā.</i>	turn <i>phirnā, phernā</i> <i>ghūmnā, murnā ; (of</i> <i>milk) bigarnā ; turn</i> <i>up or out nikal-</i> <i>nā ; to turn round</i> <i>pher-denā ; turn into,</i> <i>tr. banā-rakhnā ; to</i> <i>be turned off ni-</i> <i>kālā jānā, mauqūf</i> <i>honā, bar-taraf honā.</i>	unprotected <i>be-nawā.</i>
tour <i>daura.</i>	turning, <i>gardish.</i>	unscrupulously, unre- <i>strainedly, be-tahā-</i> <i>shā.</i>
town <i>shahr, qasba.</i>	tutor <i>ustād, mo'allim.</i>	unseen <i>ānkh bachā.</i>
trace <i>patā, surāg,</i> <i>nishān.</i>	twenty <i>bis.</i>	unwieldy <i>phappas.</i>
trackless <i>be-lik.</i>	twenty-fifth <i>pachiswīn</i> <i>tārikh.</i>	unworthy <i>qābil nahin,</i> <i>nā-qābil, nā-lāiq.</i>
trade <i>len-den.</i>	twenty-nine <i>untis.</i>	upbraid, to <i>sharminda</i> <i>karnā.</i>
trader <i>beopāri.</i>	twinkle, to <i>chhitaknā.</i>	uproar <i>yorish, khal-</i> <i>bali, sharr o fasād.</i>
tradesmen <i>ahl-i-hirfa.</i>	tyranny <i>zabardastī,</i> <i>zulm, ziyādātī.</i>	usages and customs, <i>rasm o riwāj.</i>
train <i>rel.</i>	U.	use, to <i>iste'māl karnā ;</i> <i>to be used up</i> <i>(spent) nibar-jānā.</i>
trained <i>ta'lim-yāfta.</i>	ultimately <i>ākhir.</i>	useful <i>kām kā, fā'ida-</i> <i>mand, musjid.</i>
transitive <i>muta'addī.</i>	unchanged <i>yaksān.</i>	useless <i>be-fā'ida, ni-</i> <i>kammā.</i>
traps <i>asbāb, sāmān,</i> <i>orhnā bichhonā (dress</i> <i>and bedding).</i>	unclean <i>nā-pāk.</i>	usual <i>ma'mūlī ; as</i> <i>usual, ba-dastūr,</i> <i>hasb-i-ma'mūl.</i>
traveller <i>musāfir.</i>	unconditional <i>bilā</i> <i>shart.</i>	usually <i>aksar.</i>
traverse, to <i>tai karnā.</i>	under tale, <i>niche.</i>	V.
treasure, hidden <i>dafī-</i> <i>na.</i>	undertake <i>uthānā.</i>	vacancy <i>khāli jagah.</i>
treasurer <i>khazānchī.</i>	understand <i>samajhnā ;</i>	valley <i>dara.</i>
treat (kindly) <i>sulūk</i> <i>karnā, sulūk se pesh</i> <i>ānā (sāth) ; treat</i> <i>harshly ziyādātī kar-</i> <i>nā, sakhti se pesh-ānā ;</i> <i>treat with considera-</i> <i>tion qadr-dāni fur-</i> <i>mānā.</i>		valour <i>bahāduri</i>
treatment (medical) <i>mo'ālaja.</i>		value <i>qimat.</i>
treaty 'ahd o paimān, <i>qaul o qarār, sanad</i> <i>f., 'ahd-nāma.</i>		

various *mutafarriq*.  
 vaunting *shekhi*.  
 vehemence *shiddat*.  
 venturesomeness *himmat*.  
 venture outside, to  
*qadam bâhar dharnâ*.  
 verb *fe'l*.  
 verily *wâqi'* men, *haqigat* men, *sach hai ki*.  
 very *sakht*, *khûb*, *bahut*, *barâ*.  
 vex *digg karnâ*.  
 vexation *diggat*.  
 vexed *malûl*; to be  
 vexed *malâl honâ (ko)*.  
 viceroy *gâ'im-maqâm*.  
 vicious *bad-mizâj*, *sharîr*.  
 victorious *fatehyâb*,  
*fatehmand*.  
 victory *fateh f.*, *fatehjang f.*  
 victuals and drink,  
*khâne pine kâ sâman*.  
 vigour *zor*; to lose  
 vigour, *kunzor honânâ*.  
 village *gânôn*, also  
*gânw* and *gâ'on* by  
 elision of either nasal,  
*basti*; villages  
*dihât*.  
 villain *bad-zât*, *sharîr*.  
 villainy *sharârat*.  
 vindicate, to *kisi ki tâ'id karnâ*.  
 violate (law), to *khilâf karnâ*.  
 visible, to be *dikhâ'i denâ*,  
*nazar ânâ* or *parnâ*,  
*zâhir honâ*, *âshkâr honâ*,  
*namû-dâr honâ*.  
 vision, range of *maddi-nazar*.  
 vote, to *râe denâ*.  
 vow, to *mannat mânnâ*;  
 to break a vow *bad-ahûl karnâ*;  
 to pay a vow *mannat adâ k.*

## W.

wager, to *shart bândh-nâ*.  
 waggon *chakrâ*.  
 waist *kamar f.*  
 wait, to *muntazir rah-nâ*,  
*baithnâ*, *thairnâ*; lie in  
 wait for *ghât men baithnâ*.  
 wake, or be awake  
*jâgnâ*.  
 wake up, to, *ânkh khulnî*.  
 walk, to *chalnâ*, *pâ'on pâ'on chalnâ*.  
 wall *diwâr f.*; (of tent)  
*qanât f.*; outer wall of  
 town *shahr-pânâh f.*  
 wander, to *phirnâ*.  
 want *hâjat*; want of  
 money, impecuniousness  
*tihidusti*; want of sanitation  
*nâ-sâfi*.  
 want, to *mângnâ*; I  
 want *mujhe darkâr hai*,  
*mujhko châhîe*, etc.,  
*hâjat hai*, etc.  
 wanted *darkâr*, *matlûb zarûr*.  
 war *larâ'i*.  
 warfare *jang-âwari*; species  
 of warfare *tarz-i-jang f.*  
 warlike *jang-jo*.  
 warning 'ibrat; take  
 warning 'ibrat *par-karnî*.  
 warrior *yoddhâ*.  
 wash, to *dhonâ*.  
 waste *nugsân*.  
 'waste-paper basket'  
*raddi* (lit. what is rejected).  
 watchman *chokidâr*,  
 watchman's work  
*chokidâri kâ peshâ*.  
 water *pâni*, m.  
 water-pot stand *gharonchî*.

watered, to have *pâni chhirakwânâ*.  
 way *dhab*, *dhang*, *tarah f.*,  
*taur*; by way of *ba-taur*;  
 a short way *thori dûr*.  
 weak *kamzor*, 'alil'.  
 wealth *daulat*, *mâl*.  
 wear *ornâ*, *pahnâ*.  
 wearied *thukâ mânda*.  
 weaver *julâhâ*.  
 week *hafta*.  
 weep, to *ronâ*.  
 well! *bhalâ*, *khair*.  
 well (restored to health)  
*bhalâ-changâ*.  
 well *kunwân*, *kûâ*.  
 well-known *mashhûr o ma'rûf*.  
 western *magrâbi*.  
 what *kyâ*, *kaisâ*; what's  
 o'clock? *kai baje*.  
 where? *kahân*.  
 whereas *yâ*, *bar-khilâf iske*.  
 whether . . . or? *ayâ . . . yâ*,  
*kyâ . . . kyâ*, *châhe or châho*.  
 while, long *bari der*,  
*bahut der*.  
 white (fair), *gorâ*.  
 who? *kann*; who or  
 which, correl. *jo*.  
 whose? *kiskâ*.  
 whole *tamâm*, *kull*;  
 whole family *kunbe kâ kunbâ*,  
*tamâm gharwâle*, *kull khândân*.  
 why? *kyân*.  
 wicked *sharîr*, *burâ*.  
 wife *bibi*.  
 wild with anger, *khûn josh men ânâ*.  
 wiles *dagâ-bâzi*.  
 will *marzi*.  
 win *jîtnâ* (intr.); (earn)  
*kamânâ*; to win a person's  
 goodwill *kisi ko apne se râzi karnâ*.





WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

---

Demy 8vo. Price 12s. 6d.

# TAUBATU-N-NASÛH

(REPENTANCE OF NUSSOOH).

THE HINDUSTANI TEXT OF MOULVÎ HÂJÎ  
HÂFIZ NAZÎR AHMED OF DEHLI.

EDITED, WITH NOTES AND INDEX.

---

Crown 8vo. Price 3s. 6d.

# THE REPENTANCE OF NUSSOOH,

*Translated from the Original Hindustani Tale.*

WITH AN INTRODUCTION

BY

SIR WILLIAM MUIR, K.C.S.I.

---

“This is a very remarkable little volume. . . . The tale is both interesting in itself and as a picture of the interior of Mahometan life.”—*Spectator*.

“A translation of a popular Hindustani novel, giving an insight into the details of Mahometan family life . . . a remarkable book in many ways. It supplies what is singularly wanted in the vernacular languages of India, namely, sound literature of a useful and amusing sort.”—*Literary World*.

---

London:

W. H. Allen & Co., 13 Waterloo Place. S.W.

WORKS IN THE PRESS.

---

FIRST FIVE BOOKS OF THE TAU-  
BATU-N-NASÛH. WITH MARGINAL  
ANALYSIS AND ADDITIONAL ANNOTATIONS,  
AND VOCABULARY.

---

KEY TO  
EXERCISES IN HINDUSTANI.

---

THE HINDUSTANI PART OF THE  
EXERCISES, IN LITHOGRAPH, IN VARIOUS  
STYLES, FOR PRACTICE IN READING AND  
WRITING. *[To be published in India.]*

---

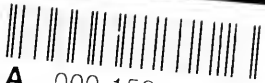
DASTÂN JAMÎLA KHÂTÛN. AN ORI-  
GINAL HINDUSTANI TALE.

*[To be lithographed in India.]*

---







**A** 000 158 144 6

